

Contents at a Glance

Part 1: The Very Basics	1
1 Why You Should Study German <i>Learn plenty of reasons to study the German language.</i>	3
2 Hitting the Books <i>See how German is particularly useful for scholars.</i>	9
3 Pronounce It Properly: Vowels <i>Learn to make the vowel sounds you will need to pronounce German words properly.</i>	17
4 Pronounce It Properly: Consonants <i>Learn to make the right consonant sounds in German.</i>	29
5 You Know More Than You Think <i>Believe it or not, you already speak more German than you think, thanks to cognates.</i>	41
Part 2: Ready, Set, Go!	53
6 Are Idiomatic Expressions for Idiots? <i>A basic knowledge of common idioms will help you to express yourself effectively.</i>	55
7 The Joy of Gender <i>All German nouns are masculine, feminine, or neuter.</i>	69
8 Fitting Form with Function <i>The German language has four cases: nominative, accusative, dative, and genitive.</i>	83
9 Click Your Heels Together and Say: There's No Place Like Deutschland <i>Conjugating weak and strong verbs is relatively simple.</i>	95
Part 3: Up, Up, and Away	111
10 Haven't We Met Before? Making Friends <i>Strike up conversations with the right introductory phrases.</i>	113
11 I'd Like to Get to Know You <i>Make introductions, express possession, and describe yourself and your family members with adjectives.</i>	125
12 Finally, You're at the Airport <i>A few key phrases will help you give and receive simple directions and get around the airport.</i>	143
13 Heading for the Hotel <i>Learn to use the transportation system and to tell time.</i>	159

14	Yippee, You've Made It to the Hotel! <i>Do you want a room with a garden view? This chapter introduces the vocabulary you'll need to make requests in a hotel.</i>	173
15	What's Your Number? <i>From money to phone numbers and addresses, learn to use numbers in German.</i>	185
Part 4: Fun and Games		195
16	A Date with the Weather <i>Talk about the weather in German and learn the days of the week, the months of the year, and the four seasons.</i>	197
17	Let's Sightsee <i>Learn to read maps and ask questions first—then go sightseeing.</i>	211
18	Shop Till You Drop <i>Learn to talk about clothes—and to ask specifically for the color, size, fabric, and design you're looking for.</i>	223
19	The Meat and Kartoffeln of a Home-Cooked Meal <i>When you go out shopping for ingredients, you'll know where to go and how to ask for what you want.</i>	239
20	Restaurant Hopping <i>You can order a delicious meal in German and express your pleasure when you're finished eating.</i>	253
21	Monkey Business <i>Learn how to ask your new German friends to participate in sports and other fun activities. Adverbs will help you brag about your many abilities.</i>	267
Part 5: Angst		283
22	Dealing with a Bad Hair Day, an Empty Camera, a Broken Watch, and Blisters <i>When you need something—including a boost—refer to this chapter for problem-specific expressions.</i>	285
23	What Does the Doctor Recommend? <i>Describe your symptoms to the doctor, understand the diagnosis, get the items you need at the drugstore, and tell your friends what you've got.</i>	301
24	I Think I Forgot Something <i>Learn to express yourself in the past tense.</i>	315

Part 6: When in Germany, Do As the Germans Do! 323

25 Getting Your Message Across	325
<i>Everything you ever wanted to know about German and phones, using the right phrases when you talk, and handling the problems that commonly arise during local and long-distance calls.</i>	
26 Where's the Nearest Post Office?	335
<i>This chapter contains the phrases you need to know when you want to send anything from a love letter to a telegram.</i>	
27 I'd Like to Rent a Castle, Please	345
<i>How to get the castle, house, or apartment you want and how to use the future and the conditional tenses.</i>	
28 Living the Expat Life	355
<i>Vocabulary and information you need if you'd like to spend an extended time in Germany, and tips on using the subjunctive case.</i>	

Appendices

A Answer Key	363
B Glossary: Linguistic Terms and Definitions	387
Index	391

Contents

Part 1: The Very Basics	1
1 Why You Should Study German	3
Should You or Shouldn't You?	3
Get Serious	4
Immerse Yourself	6
There's Nothing to Fear	7
2 Hitting the Books	9
What Are All These German Words Doing Here?.....	9
<i>When Only German Will Do</i>	10
<i>Lost in the Translation</i>	10
<i>How Much German Is Enough?</i>	11
You Could Look It Up	12
<i>Learning Parts of Speech, Inside Out</i>	13
<i>Now It's Your Turn</i>	13
Compounding Your German Vocabulary	14
The Genetic Relationship Between German and English	14
3 Pronounce It Properly: Vowels	17
Vowels Must Dress Appropriately	18
Are You Stressed?	18
Your Own Personal Accent	18
A Few Peculiarities of the German Language	19
<i>The Famous Umlaut</i>	19
<i>Capitalizing on Nouns</i>	20
Where Did All These Vowel Sounds Come From?	20
<i>Say A as in Modern</i>	21
<i>Say E as in Bed</i>	22
<i>Say I as in Winter</i>	23
<i>Say O as in Lord</i>	23
<i>Say U as in Shook</i>	24
Modified Vowels: The Long and the Short of Them	24
<i>Say Ä as in Fair</i>	25
<i>Say Ö as in Fur</i>	25
<i>Say Ü as in the French Word Sûr</i>	26

Diphthongs	26
<i>The Diphthongs el and al</i>	27
<i>The Diphthong au</i>	27
<i>The Diphthongs eu and äu</i>	28
4 Pronounce It Properly: Consonants	29
Conquering Consonants	30
<i>The Very Same Letters You Know and Love</i>	30
<i>Ex-plosives: B, D, and G</i>	30
<i>Freakin' Fricatives and Fricative's Relatives</i>	32
<i>Got a Frog in Your Throat? CH, CHS, H, J</i>	32
<i>Aw, Nuts: Z and Sometimes C</i>	34
<i>Double or Nothing: KN, PS, QU</i>	35
<i>VeRRy Vibrant: The German R</i>	35
<i>Old Smoothies: S, ß, SCH, ST, TSCH</i>	36
<i>Herbie the Love Bug: The Classic VW</i>	37
Pronunciation Guide	38
Practice Makes Perfect	40
5 You Know More Than You Think	41
Cognates: What You Already Know Can Help You	41
<i>Perfect Cognates: Identical Twins</i>	42
<i>How Much Do You Understand Already?</i>	44
<i>Close, but No Cigar</i>	45
<i>What Do You Think?</i>	47
<i>Where the Action Is: Verb Cognates</i>	48
This Is Easy.....	49
False Friends.....	50
Part 2: Ready, Set, Go	53
6 Are Idiomatic Expressions for Idiots?	55
What Are Idiomatic Expressions, Anyway?	56
More Idiomatic Expressions in German	57
<i>Off You Go</i>	58
<i>Putting Your Expressions to Use I (or How to Get There from Here)</i>	59

<i>It's Time To ...</i>	59
<i>Putting Your Expressions to Use II (or What Time Is It?)</i>	60
<i>Go Left, Right, Straight, and Then Left Again</i>	61
<i>Putting Your Expressions to Use III (or Just Getting There in One Piece)</i>	61
<i>So, What Do You Think?</i>	62
<i>Putting Your Expressions to Use IV (or What's Your Opinion?)</i>	63
<i>How Do You Feel?</i>	64
<i>Putting Your Expressions to Use V (or How Are You?)</i>	65
Saying the Right Thing	66
7 Joy of Gender	69
Determining Gender: Is It a Girl or a Boy—	
or Is It Neuter?	69
<i>Absolutely, Definitely Definite Articles</i>	70
<i>Singular Nouns</i>	71
Compound Nouns	75
When There's More Than One Noun	76
<i>Pluralities</i>	76
<i>Practice Those Plurals</i>	79
What Have You Learned About Gender?	81
8 Fitting Form with Function	83
The Four Cases in German	84
<i>Starting with the Nominative Case</i>	84
<i>What Gets the Action: The Accusative Case</i>	85
<i>Indirectly: The Dative Case</i>	85
<i>It's All Mine: The Genitive Case</i>	86
Marking Who's Doing What to Whom	86
The Case of the Definite Article	87
<i>Masculine Nouns</i>	87
<i>Feminine Nouns</i>	88
<i>Neuter Nouns</i>	88
<i>Plurals</i>	88
The Case of the Indefinite Article	89
Subject Pronouns	90
<i>Du Versus Sie—Informal Versus Formal</i>	91
<i>Er, Sie, Es?</i>	92

**9 Click Your Heels Together and Say:
There's No Place Like Deutschland 95**

What's the Subject?	95
Verb Basics	97
Verbs in Motion	97
Weak Verbs: Followers	98
<i>The Endings of Weak Verbs</i>	99
<i>Conjugation 101</i>	99
Strong Verbs	101
<i>Ch-ch-ch-Changes: My, What Strong Verbs</i>	
<i>Have to Go Through!</i>	102
<i>Conjugation 102</i>	103
Ask Me Anything	106
<i>Intonation</i>	106
<i>Nicht Wahr?</i>	106
<i>Inversion</i>	107
<i>Ask Me If You Can</i>	107
<i>And the Answer Is</i>	108

Part 3: Up, Up, and Away 111

10 Haven't We Met Before? Making Friends 113

Conversation Openers: Greetings and Salutations	114
<i>Formal Greetings and Salutations</i>	114
<i>Informal Greetings and Salutations</i>	115
What Planet Are You From?	115
To Be or Not to Be?	117
Get Nosy	120
Getting Information the Easy Way	121
Ask Away	122

11 I'd Like to Get to Know You 125

It's a Family Affair	126
Are You Possessed?	127
<i>The Genitive Case: Showing Possession</i>	127
<i>Mine, All Mine</i>	128
<i>Using Possessive Adjectives to Show Your Preference</i>	130
Let Me Introduce You	131

Breaking the Ice	133
Getting Involved in Conversation	133
<i>Express Yourself with Haben</i>	134
<i>Using Idioms with Haben</i>	135
What's He/She Like?	135
<i>Figuring Out Adjective Endings</i>	136
<i>Mary, Mary, Quite Contrary</i>	139
<i>Complete the Descriptions</i>	141
12 Finally, You're at the Airport	143
Inside the Plane	143
<i>Mainly on the Plane</i>	144
<i>Airline Advice</i>	144
On the Inside	145
<i>Finding the Right Words</i>	145
<i>Signs Everywhere</i>	146
Going Places.....	147
<i>Contractions with Gehen</i>	148
<i>How Do You Get To ...?</i>	149
Take a Left, Climb Across the Bridge	150
<i>Verbs with Separable Prefixes</i>	150
<i>Giving Commands</i>	151
<i>Take Command</i>	152
<i>Prepositions: Little Words Can Make a Big Difference</i>	152
<i>Prepositions Are Particular!</i>	153
<i>Are You Out of Your Mind?</i>	156
13 Heading for the Hotel	159
Ticket to Ride	160
<i>Buses, Trains, and Automobiles</i>	160
<i>A Means to an End</i>	160
Which (or What) Do You Prefer?	161
<i>Welcher with Singular and Plural Nouns</i>	162
<i>The Third Degree</i>	163
<i>Using What and Which</i>	163
On the Road.....	164
<i>Outside the Car</i>	164
<i>Inside the Car</i>	165
Your Number's Up	166
<i>Count Me In</i>	166
<i>What Time Is It?</i>	169

14 Yippee, You've Made It to the Hotel! 173

What a Hotel! Does It Have ...?	173
Calling Housekeeping	176
Going Straight to the Top	177
<i>The Declension of Ordinal Numbers</i>	178
<i>My Seventh? No, No—This Is My Eighth Husband</i>	180
More Action with Verbs	180
<i>Wissen and Other Ways of Expressing Knowledge</i>	180
<i>Verbs with Prefixes</i>	182
<i>Coming Apart: Verbs with Separable Prefixes</i>	182
<i>Sticking It Out Together: Verbs with Inseparable Prefixes</i>	183

15 What's Your Number? 185

Send Me a Card ... Drop Me a Line!	186
<i>Identifying International Abbreviations</i>	186
<i>Call Me</i>	186
European Countries, According to Germans	188
Clams or Cabbage? It's All the Same in Money	189
<i>Deutsche Mark oder Eurodollar?</i>	190
<i>Approximations and Oddities</i>	191
Let's Go Fly a Kite ...	191

Part 4: Fun and Games 195

16 A Date with the Weather 197

It's 20 Degrees, but They're Wearing Shorts!	197
<i>How's the Weather?</i>	199
<i>What's the Temperature?</i>	199
<i>But It Says in the Paper</i>	200
If It's Tuesday, March 21, It Must Be Spring!	201
<i>What Day Is It?</i>	202
<i>A Mouthful of Months</i>	203
<i>The Four Seasons</i>	205
You Have a Date for What Date?	206
<i>Making a Date</i>	206
<i>Time Expressions</i>	208

17 Let's Sightsee	211
What Do You Want to See?	212
May, Must, Can—What Kind of Mode Are You In?	213
<i>The Power of Suggestion</i>	216
<i>Making Suggestions</i>	218
Responding to Suggestions	218
<i>Just Say Yes, No, Absolutely Not</i>	219
<i>What Do You Think?</i>	220
<i>More Suggestions</i>	221
18 Shop Till You Drop	223
Store-Bought Pleasures.....	223
The Clothes Make the <i>Mann</i>	225
<i>Wear It Well</i>	226
<i>Colors</i>	227
<i>Material Preferences</i>	229
What's the Object?	230
<i>Position of Object Pronouns</i>	233
<i>Us, You, and Them: Using Direct Object Pronouns</i>	234
<i>To Us, to You, to Them: Using Indirect Object Pronouns</i>	234
Asking for Something	235
I'll Take This, That, One of These, and Some of Those	235
Expressing Opinions	236
What's Your Preference?	237
19 The Meat and Kartoffeln of a Home-Cooked Meal	239
Shopping Around	239
Where Are You Going?	240
Prost!	246
It's the Quantity That Counts	248
A Trip to the Market	249
Getting What You Want	250

20 Restaurant Hopping

253

Where Can I Get Something to Eat Around Here?	
(Wo kann ich denn hier etwas zu essen bekommen?)	254
<i>I Could Eat a Horse (Ich habe einen Mordshunger)</i>	254
Dining Out	255
Gimme What I Need	257
You Need What?	258
Waiter, Do You Have Any Recommendations?	258
That's the Way I Like It	260
Spice It Up	261
Special Diets	261
Send It Back, Please	262
How About Some Strudel, Sweetie?.....	263
Are You Thirsty? (<i>Hast du Durst?</i>)	264
<i>Can I Have a Doggy Bag?</i>	264
Good Morning, Say Cheese	265
It Was Delicious	265

21 Monkey Business

267

Are You a Sports Fan?	267
<i>What's Your Game?</i>	267
<i>Where to Play Your Game</i>	269
Express Your Desire with Mögen	270
<i>Extending an Invitation</i>	271
<i>Accepting an Invitation</i>	271
<i>Refusing an Invitation—Making Excuses</i>	272
<i>Showing Indecision and Indifference</i>	272
<i>Do You Accept or Refuse?</i>	273
Let's Do Something Else	273
Entertaining Options	275
<i>At the Movies and on TV</i>	275
<i>At a Concert</i>	276
<i>Expressing Your Opinion</i>	276
Adverbs: Modifying Verbs	277
<i>Adverbs That Are What They Are</i>	279
<i>Position of Adverbs</i>	280
<i>How Well Do You Do Things?</i>	280
<i>Just How Good Are You at Adverbs?</i>	281

Part 5: Angst **283****22 Dealing with a Bad Hair Day, an Empty Camera, a Broken Watch, and Blisters** **285**

My Hair Needs Help, Now!	285
<i>Beautify Yourself</i>	286
<i>Expressing Your Preferences</i>	287
I Need Help	289
<i>Help!</i>	289
<i>At the Dry Cleaner—in der Wäscherei</i>	289
<i>At the Laundromat—im Waschsalon</i>	290
<i>At the Shoemaker—beim Schuster</i>	291
<i>I Need These Shoes</i>	292
<i>At the Optometrist—beim Optiker</i>	292
<i>At the Jeweler—beim Juwelier</i>	293
<i>At the Camera Shop—beim das Fotogeschäft</i>	294
Help, I Lost My Passport!	295
Comparison Shopping	296
<i>Adverbs and Adjectives Compared</i>	296
<i>Irregular Comparisons</i>	298
Make a Comparison	299

23 What Does the Doctor Recommend? **301**

Where Does It Hurt?	301
You Give Me a Pain in the ...	303
<i>What Seems to Be the Problem?</i>	303
<i>More Symptoms</i>	305
<i>What's Wrong?</i>	306
<i>Doctor, Doctor</i>	307
How Long Have You Felt This Way?	307
From Finding Drugs to Finding Toothpaste	308
Special Needs	309
Have It on Hand	310
What Are You Doing to Yourself?	310
<i>Flex Your Reflexive Verbs</i>	311
<i>Reflexive or Not?</i>	312
<i>Reflexive Verbs in Action</i>	312
<i>Commanding Reflexively</i>	313
<i>Be Bossy</i>	314

24 I Think I Forgot Something	315
Are You Living in the Past?	315
<i>Strong Verbs</i>	316
<i>Forming the Past Participle with Weak Verbs</i>	317
<i>Forming the Past Participle with Mixed Verbs</i>	318
<i>Using Sein in the Perfekt</i>	319
<i>Don't Put Off Till Tomorrow What You</i>	
<i>Didn't Do Yesterday</i>	320
<i>Did You or Didn't You?</i>	321
<i>Forming a Question in the Past</i>	321
<i>Answering a Question Negatively in the Past</i>	322
<i>Ask Questions</i>	322
Part 6: When in Germany, Do As the Germans Do!	323
25 Getting Your Message Across	325
How the @!#%*! Do I Use This Thing?	326
<i>Your Basic German Telephone</i>	326
<i>You Need to Know to Make a Call</i>	327
<i>Phone Home</i>	328
<i>Who Is This?</i>	329
<i>Operator, I'm Having a Serious Problem</i>	329
What Did You Do to Yourself? Reflexive Verbs	
in the Past	330
Excuses, Excuses.....	331
Hey, It's the Twenty-First Century!	331
26 Where's the Nearest Post Office?	335
Will My Letter Get There?	335
<i>Getting Service</i>	337
<i>At the Post Office</i>	338
<i>I Want to Send a Telegram</i>	339
Readin' and Writin'	339
<i>Can You Read This?</i>	340
<i>Getting It Right</i>	341
Would You Please	341

27 I'd Like to Rent a Castle, Please	345
I Want to Rent a Castle	345
<i>Buying or Renting</i>	347
<i>All the Comforts of Home</i>	348
<i>Let's Buy Furniture</i>	349
There's Hope for the Future.....	349
<i>Expressing the Future</i>	350
<i>Tomorrow's Plans</i>	351
What Would You Do?	351
<i>I'm in a Subjunctive Mood</i>	352
<i>Abracadabra, You Have Three Wishes</i>	352
28 Living the Expat Life	355
Get Me to the Bank, Quick!.....	356
<i>Learning Banking Lingo</i>	356
Transactions You Need to Make	358
So You Want to Live in Germany?	360
I Need My Wheels!	360
Appendixes	
A Answer Key	363
B Glossary: Linguistic Terms and Definitions	387
Index	391

Introduction

In the last hundred years, parts of the world that we would have had to travel months by boat to reach are now just a few hours away. There are, however, many other ways of traveling. We travel in books, movies, and on the Internet, and we travel in our imaginations.

Some people believe that the soul of a culture resides in the grammatical patterns, in the linguistic intricacies, in the phonetics of its language. The authors of this book share this view. If bank robberies aren't your thing, learning German may be the next most satisfying and effective way of enriching yourself fast.

The German language reveals German books, people, and customs in ways that are lost in translation. If you plan a trip to a German-speaking country, even before you get on a plane you should have the basic tools with which to decipher the code of the culture you're about to enter. What are these tools? Traveler's checks, an elementary knowledge of the German language, and an open mind. You're going to have to get the traveler's checks and the open mind on your own; we'll help you with the German language.

Many chapters in this book are held together thematically as if you were off on an imaginary journey to a German-speaking land. In Chapter 12, "Finally, You're at the Airport," you'll learn vocabulary related to air travel and airports. In Chapter 13, "Heading for the Hotel," you'll learn how to tell your bus or taxi driver where you're going. By the end of Chapter 14, "Yippee, You've Made It to the Hotel!" you'll be able to ask the desk clerk for the kind of room you want.

Each chapter builds on the one that preceded it, expanding on what you have learned. Learning a new language is, after all, a bit like evolving rapidly from infant to adult. First you learn to crawl through the new sounds of the language, and then you learn to walk proudly through basic grammar and vocabulary. When you can keep your balance with everything you've learned, you're well on your way to jogging through conversations with patient Berliners, the Viennese, and the good folk of Düsseldorf.

The Sum of Its Parts

Part 1, "The Very Basics," starts off by outlining why German is a tremendously important language and how it will be of use to you as a student, businessperson, or tourist. Not only will you learn all about the advantages of reading German texts in the original, you'll also find out how much you already know (before you've even started learning anything). You'll also learn German consonant and vowel sounds.

Part 2, "Ready, Set, Go!" introduces you to a selection of common German idioms (expressions in which the meaning is not predictable from the usual meaning of the words that make it up) and slang. You'll get your first taste of German grammar, and you'll be able to use what you know of German through cognates. By the end of this section, you'll be engaging in and understanding simple conversations.

Part 3, “Up, Up, and Away,” introduces you to the vocabulary and grammar you’ll need to plan and take a trip to a German-speaking country. You’ll use the real greetings Germans use with each other; you’ll introduce yourself and give elementary descriptions. You’ll ask basic questions. A chapter at a time, you’ll arrive at an airport, catch a taxi or a bus, and make your way to the hotel of your choice. Most important, you’ll be able to get the room you want furnished with all those indispensable things (cable television, extra blankets, blow dryers, and so on) many of us cannot do without when we travel. Then, you’ll be able to go out and search for addresses, address a postcard, decipher a phone number, or exchange your dollars for Marks or Eurodollars.

Part 4, “Fun and Games,” furnishes you with the vocabulary you’ll need to do practically anything fun, from playing tennis to going to the opera to night clubbing. You’ll also learn how to make sense out of the weather report, whether it’s in the newspaper, on TV, or revealed to you via the aches and pains in the bones of the local baker. The chapter on food will help you understand where to buy all kinds of food in Germany and how to interpret a German menu. Finally, you’ll be introduced to the phrases and vocabulary words you’ll need to go on a shopping spree for chocolates, silk shirts, and Rolexes while the exchange rate is still high.

Part 5, “Angst,” prepares you for the inevitable difficulties that crop up when you travel. You’ll learn how to make local and long-distance phone calls from a German phone and how to explain yourself to the operator if you have problems getting through. Is your watch broken? Do you need film for your camera? Did some food stain your new shirt? You’ll be ready to take care of anything, to ask for help, and to explain what happened to your German friends or colleagues when your angst-ridden moments are (hopefully) distant memories.

Part 6, “When In Germany, Do As the Germans Do!” instructs you in the terminology you’ll need to spend, exchange, invest, borrow, and save money for an extended stay in Deutschland. By the end of this section, you should be able to buy or rent a house, an apartment, or even a castle (if extravagance appeals to you). You’ll also be able to express your needs in the future tense.

In the appendixes, the “**Answer Key**” gives you the answers to the exercises you perform in this book. The “**Glossary**” summarizes the words defined throughout the book. The “**Lexicon: English to German, German to English**” translates essential vocabulary and lists the pronunciation of each.

By the time you finish this book, you will have the basic German language skills to embark on real journeys—in books, on planes, and in conversations. Be persistent, be patient, be creative, and your rewards will speak (in German) for themselves.

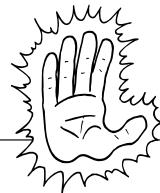
Extras to Help You Along

Besides the idiomatic expressions, helpful phrases, lists of vocabulary words, and down-to-earth grammar, this book has useful information that is provided in sidebars throughout the text. These elements are distinguished by the following icons:



Culture Shock

Culture shock elements provide facts about interesting facets of life in Germany and other German-speaking cultures. They offer you quick glimpses into the German culture.



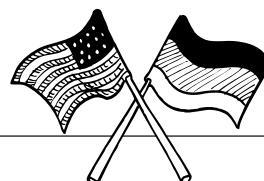
Achtung

Achtung boxes warn you of mistakes that are commonly made by those who are learning the German language and offer you advice about how to avoid these mistakes yourself.



What's What?

This box gives you definitions of grammatical terms.



We Are Family

This box tells you all about the linguistic connections between German and our own language, English.



As a Rule

As a Rule sidebars highlight or expand on some aspect of German grammar that has been touched on in the text, usually summing it up in a rule so that it's easier to remember.

Many foreign words have been adopted by the German language and still retain their foreign pronunciation. These words do not follow the German pronunciation guide included in this book.

Part 1

The Very Basics

Most people can think of a million reasons why they can't do something. In the first section of this book, you'll discover—if not a million—certainly a great many reasons why you can learn the German language. Whether you're a scholar interested in expanding your understanding of philosophy, art history, or literature or simply someone who wants to have a working knowledge of Deutsch before embarking on your dream skiing holiday, this section will help you take the plunge.





Why You Should Study German

In This Chapter

- The many virtues of the German language
- Where you can use German
- Developing a learning strategy
- Why you shouldn't be intimidated

You are looking for a copy of Goethe's collected poems in a bookstore, but the aisles are not clearly marked and you find yourself in the middle of an aisle with German-language books rising up on either side of you. The fact is, you've always wanted to learn German. You are a great fan of Goethe and of many other German writers and philosophers, *Dichter und Denker*, as you recall having heard one of your German friends refer to them. But it seems like every time you've been about to buy a language book and start to study German on your own, the person standing next to you in the bookstore has said something like, "German? Why don't you try something a little easier, like Swahili?"

Should You or Shouldn't You?

The Complete Idiot's Guide to Learning German, Second Edition catches your eye as you stand in the middle of the aisle. You take it off the shelf and ask yourself three questions: Do I have the time to learn German now? Will I stick with it? What will be the

immediate benefits of learning the basics of German? Only you can answer the first two questions. (You will make the time! You will stick to it!) Here is a list of answers for the third:

- You will be able to communicate with your Mercedes Benz in its mother tongue.
- A rich relative has given you a \$2,000 programmable German watch. After you acquire some basic German language skills, reading the owner's manual will be a piece of cake.
- You want to figure out once and for all whether that thing so many people call you when you sneeze is an insult or a compliment. You'll be able to, once you know German.
- When you do finally visit the *Bundesrepublik*, you won't have to order sauerkraut for breakfast, lunch, and dinner.
- When you go to the *Oktoberfest* in Munich, you will be able to ask one of the locals where the restroom is without having to resort to your pocket German-English/English-German dictionary. And you'll be able to understand the answer.
- You will finally have the language skills to tell your German shepherd to play dead.
- You're nuts about *Wiener Schnitzel*. After reading this book, you'll be able to travel around Germany and convince the greatest German chefs to reveal their *Wiener Schnitzel* secrets.
- You'll be able to make your tennis fantasies realities. The next time you play Boris Becker and bicker over the match point, he'll understand every word you say.

And now it's time to get serious. Why, honestly, should you learn German?

Get Serious

The following are some (more) serious reasons why you might want to study German:

- Germans aren't the only people who speak German. German is the native language of more than 100 million people. German is also spoken as the native language in Austria; Liechtenstein; much of Switzerland; South Tyrol (northern Italy); and in small areas of Belgium, France (Alsace), and Luxembourg along the German border. The German minorities in Poland, Romania, and the countries of the former Soviet Union have partly retained the German language as well.

- In the academic world, familiarity with German is a great advantage. As a student in the liberal arts, you should be familiar with Kafka, Hesse, Rilke, and Nietzsche. And what was Mac the Knife really up to? Did Wilhelm Tell really shoot the apple from his son's head? About one in 10 books published throughout the world has been written in German. In regard to translations into foreign languages, German is third after English and French, and more works have been translated into German than into any other language.
- You're a businessperson. The Federal Republic of Germany is one of the major industrial countries in the world. In terms of overall economic performance, it is the third largest, and with regard to world trade, it holds second place. Many German industrial enterprises are known throughout the world and have branches or research facilities overseas, including the carmakers Volkswagen, BMW, and Daimler-Benz; the chemical corporations Hoechst, Bayer, and BASF; the electrical equipment manufacturer Siemens; the energy groups VEBA and RWE; and the Bosch Group. Germany's importance as a location for international fairs stems from the early Middle Ages. Today, about two thirds of the 150 leading international specialized fairs are held in Germany, including the world's two largest fairs held in Hanover.
- International trade is crucial to the German economy, and its external trade is booming. One in five jobs depends on exports, with Germany's main exports being motor vehicles, machinery, chemical products, and electrical engineering products. The United States is one of Germany's most important trading partners and is the third largest market for German products. As one of the largest industrial and trading nations, the Federal Republic of Germany maintains diplomatic relations with nearly every country in the world and is an attractive region for investment. By international standards, the new federal states are now an attractive industrial location for foreign investors, represented by some 1,700 foreign firms from about 50 countries. Major U.S. companies with holdings in Germany include General Motors (automobile industry), Dow Chemical (chemical industry), and Advanced Micro Devices (computer industry).
- You are interested in the arts. Germany is home to more than 3,000 museums: state, municipal, society, and private museums; museums of local history and culture; museums of church and cathedral treasures; and residential, castle, palace, and open-air museums. German architecture set trends in the first 30 years of the twentieth century, with the strongest influence coming from Weimar and Dessau, where the Bauhaus school was founded in the 1920s and the style that bears its name evolved. From Beethoven to Anne-Sophie Mutter, from folk songs to *The Magic Flute*, music performed by 141 professional orchestras can be enjoyed at Germany's 121 state-subsidized opera houses and at more

than 100 regularly held regional and supraregional music festivals—for example, the International Beethoven Festival in Bonn, Richard Wagner’s Festival in Bayreuth, and Augsburg’s German Mozart Festival featuring concerts in a rococo ambience.

- You’re torn between the psychoanalytic tenets of Sigmund Freud and Carl Jung. You’ve read all of their books in English, and you’re already familiar with many of the untranslatable terms. But being familiar with a few German phrases isn’t enough—you want to be able read these works in the original language. Of course, it will take hours of study and dedication before you’ll be able to undertake this project, but you have to start somewhere.

Immerse Yourself

Everybody knows that the best way to learn a new language is to totally immerse yourself in it. When you buy books of German poetry, buy the ones where the German translation is given alongside the English so that your eyes can move back and forth between the two. Buy German newspapers. Sit near German tourists in restaurants and cafés and imitate the sounds they make when they speak—you should imitate these sounds to yourself, of course. You may not end up authoring faultless German grammar books, but with patience and persistence, you’ll certainly learn enough German to express yourself and to increase your appreciation of the German culture.

Here are a few more suggestions for immersing yourself in German:

- Make time—optimally, small chunks of time—throughout the day or week to devote to the study of German. Four intense and concentrated 30-minute study sessions are much more effective than a four-hour language-learning marathon. Constant repetition of previously studied material involving as many senses as possible (speaking, listening, seeing) will help you get German into your long-term memory.
- Invest in or borrow a good bilingual dictionary. A *Langenscheidt* standard dictionary costs approximately \$19.
- Rent German movies. You can understand more than you think just by listening to and watching the actors. You can learn the meaning of German phrases by scanning subtitles.
- Tune your radio station to public service programs in German. Watch German shows on your TV. Go to public libraries and listen to language tapes. Listening will help you master German pronunciation.

- Make German friends.
- Read everything you can get your hands on. Children's books are a good place to start (Janosh, for example, is an author of simple and entertaining German children's books). Read the brothers Grimm (*die Brüder Grimm*) side by side with the translation. Whenever you buy a new product, look for and read the German instructions on the side of the packet or in the instruction booklet. Bedeck (*bedecken* in German, meaning "to cover") your coffee table with German newspapers: *Frankfurter Allgemeine* and *WAZ (Westdeutsche Allgemeine Zeitung)* and German magazines: *Focus*, *Die Bunte*, and *Der Stern*, to name a few. Don't forget all the German Web sites on the Internet!

There's Nothing to Fear

Many people are afraid of studying a foreign language. Some people are downright terrified. They think it will be too much work—too many new sounds, too many new words—and that the grammar will be too difficult. Well, the only thing we can say to that is, nothing is too difficult—not if you're willing to apply yourself. We're not going to lie to you. You can't learn a new language overnight. You have to make an effort. Learning a language takes time and a certain amount of determination. One thing we can assure you of is that if you take it slowly—at your own pace—without allowing yourself to get discouraged, you can only get better. Here are a few tips to help you maintain a positive attitude:

- Don't let yourself feel bullied by the grammar. Research shows that the best language learners are willing to take risks and make mistakes. There are a lot of things to learn in any new language, but that doesn't mean you have to learn them all at once. Stick to simple grammatical constructions.
- Don't worry about mistakes. In fact, try not to think of them as out-and-out "mistakes." Instead, think of them as stepping stones to really smart mistakes that will get you closer to speaking the language correctly.
- Don't let new sounds silence you. Practice vowel sound combinations. Make rumbling sounds in the back of your throat whenever you get the chance—in cabs, subways, buses, in the shower, or at night before falling asleep. When you aren't speaking German, speak English with a German accent. And remember, many regional accents are heard in Germany—your accent will fit in somewhere!
- Don't be intimidated by Germans. They are a hospitable people and are impressed by anyone who tries to speak their language. After all, when you encounter someone who speaks English as a second language, don't you generally

discount the small errors and marvel instead that this person speaks as well as he or she does? Germans will feel that way about you when you miss an ending or use an incorrect verb tense.

- Don't be put off by the reputation the German language has for being difficult. It actually has a great deal in common with English. If you apply yourself, you will soon discover that German is easier than you thought and that it also is fun to learn.

Viel Glück! (Good luck!) *Laß uns an die Arbeit gehen!* (Let's get to work!)

The Least You Need to Know

- Everyone can find a reason to study German.
- German is a very useful language to learn.
- You can communicate even if your pronunciation and grammar are less than perfect.
- You have absolutely nothing to fear. Believe it or not, German and English stem from the same ancestral language family. Remember: The more effort you put into this project, the more your German will improve.



Hitting the Books

In This Chapter

- German words in English books
- What gets lost in translation
- Using a bilingual dictionary
- Why German and English are similar

Seems you can't pick up a textbook or even a courtroom thriller these days without bumping into German words and phrases. Say you're reading up on art history to dazzle your friends at the local brewpub and you bump into *die Wanderlust*, *die Weltanschauung*, and *der Zeitgeist*. What's an inquisitive scholar to do? Learn the basic structural differences between German and English, that's what. This chapter gives you an idea of what it takes to master frequently encountered German phrases and words.

What Are All These German Words Doing Here?

German culture has shaped certain disciplines to such a degree that, in many schools and universities, you can't get away with not taking a basic German language course if you're studying art history, psychology, chemistry, or philosophy. When you think about it, studying German makes sense. You'll have a much better understanding of these disciplines after you've studied the language and culture out of which many of the most important German, Austrian, and Swiss thinkers and creators came.

When Only German Will Do

In addition, many businesses, industries, and specialties such as medicine and science use German terms, particularly those with international markets or affiliations. So drop the golf club, the computer mouse, and the VCR remote control. Get way ahead of your colleagues: Learn German. Not only will you find it interesting and enriching—it'll probably lead you to a greater appreciation of a foreign culture and enhance your global understanding.

Lost in the Translation

You've heard over and over again how impossible it is to get the true sense of a literary work, particularly of a poem, in translation. Take a look at a stanza from the poem "Hypochondre" by Goethe to see how much of a poem can be lost in translation.

Hypochondre

Der Teufel hol das Menschengeschlecht!
Man möchte rasend werden!
Da nehm ich mir so eifrig vor:
Will niemand weiter sehen,
Will all das Volk Gott und sich selbst
Und dem Teufel Überlassen!
Und kaum seh ich ein Menschengesicht,
So hab ichs wieder lieb.

Here's the translation:

Hypochondriac

Devil take the human race! It's enough to drive you insane! I continually make firm resolutions to stop seeing people and to consign the whole nation to God and to itself and to the devil! And then I have only to see a human face and I love it again.

The English version works about as well as using a sledgehammer to slice bread. If you read the German version out loud, even if you don't understand a word of it, you'll probably feel the meter, or rhythm, of the poem. This feature is either entirely lost in translation or else recreated at the expense of much of the poem's fluidity—and sometimes even the poem's meaning.

The same goes for rhyme: the weak end rhyme of the last syllable of the words *werden* (*veR-duhn*) “to become”, *sehen* (*zey-uhn*) “to see”, and *überlassen* (*iü-buhR-IA-suhn*) “to leave it up” can’t be re-created in English.

Double meanings, which can add spice to everything from limericks to e-mail, are nearly impossible to maintain in translation: The word *das Menschengeschlecht* (*dAs men-shuhn-guh-shleHt*), for example, means “mankind” when it is taken as a whole; *Geschlecht*, however, when taken on its own, can mean “genitals.” Just think of all you’re missing from not reading this little gem in the original!

How Much German Is Enough?

Having a clear sense of why you’re learning German can help save time. Take a moment to consider your motives:

- If you’re learning German to pass your philosophy exam, you may not need to spend a lot of time on cases and grammatical paradigms. Your knowledge of grammar will remain somewhat passive, outshined by your expansive knowledge German vocabulary expressing abstractions.(If these terms are unfamiliar to you, don’t fret. You’ll learn about them in Chapter 8, “Fitting Form with Function.”)
- If music is your thing, you’ll have a head start with German musical terms such as *die Lieder* and *das Leitmotif* that pop up in music from Mozart to Madonna. And you’ll be able to fine-tune your pronunciation so that even the last row will be able to understand your rendering of *die Walküren*.
- If you’re learning German primarily to be able to read German, you may want to focus on the cognate section of this book, that is the noun and verb sections. Figuring out how German structures its sentences will help you develop the patience to wait for the verb.

If you understand what you need from the German language, you easily can tailor this book to your needs and use it to your advantage.



Culture Shock

Many medical and scientific words are easy to understand in German and hard to understand in English. The word *der Blutdruckmesser* (*deyR blewt-dRook-me-suhR*) literally translated means “blood pressure monitor.” The word for this same term in English is—ready?—*sphygmomanometer*. Try saying that three times fast!

You Could Look It Up

Whatever your particular needs are, a bilingual dictionary is as essential to your learning as doublespeak is to a lawyer. What do you need to know to use a bilingual dictionary? Be forewarned: Using a bilingual dictionary is a little tougher than using an English dictionary. For starters, don't forget to look English words up in the English section and German words up in the German section. After finding the German translation for an English word, go ahead and take a moment to look up that new German word. It may not have the meaning you were intending—in English we can “spend time and money,” but German has two different words for “to spend”: *verbringen* (*feR-bRin-guhm*), with time; *ausgeben* (*ous-gey-buhn*), with money. The next thing you should do is figure out what the abbreviations used in the definitions mean. Here are a few of them:

adj.	Adjective
adv.	Adverb
f.	Feminine noun
m.	Masculine noun
n.	Neuter noun
pl.	Plural noun
prep.	Prepositions. Prepositions are words such as <i>above</i> , <i>along</i> , <i>beyond</i> , <i>before</i> , <i>through</i> , <i>in</i> , <i>to</i> , and <i>for</i> that are placed before nouns to indicate a relationship to other words in a sentence. Or think of them in terms of “anywhere a cat can go.” We discuss prepositions further in Chapter 12, “Finally, You’re at the Airport.”
ref.	Reflexive verb. The subject of a reflexive verb acts on itself, as in “I brush my teeth.”
v.i.	Intransitive verb. An intransitive verb can stand alone, without a direct object, as <i>sing</i> does in the sentence “I sing.”
v.t.	Transitive verb. A transitive verb must be followed by a direct object, as in “I took off my glasses.” Unlike intransitive verbs, transitive verbs cannot stand on their own. Transitive verbs can be used passively, however, when the subject acts on itself, as in “I was interrupted.”

Learning Parts of Speech, Inside Out

Learning how to use a bilingual dictionary takes a little grammatical know how. For example, you should know how to use the basic parts of speech. Take the word *inside*. Do you see how the meaning of the word changes in the following sentences when it is used as various parts of speech?

I'll meet you *inside* of an hour. (adverb)

They threw the marbles *inside* the circle. (preposition)

Do you like the *inside* of the building? (noun)

We have the *inside* story on the murder. (adjective)

Change *inside* to the plural, and its meaning changes.

He could feel it in his *insides*. (colloquial, noun)

If you look up the word in an English/German dictionary, you will see something like this:

inside [insaid] 1. *adj.* inner, inwendig, Innen; (*coll.*) -information, direkte Informationen 2. *adv.* im Innern, drinnen, ins Innere; -of, innerhalb von, in weniger als. 3. *prep.* Innerhalb, im Innern (von or Gen.) 4. *n.* -s (*coll.*) der Magen.

Now It's Your Turn

Using the German definition of *inside* just given, figure out the part of speech for *inside* in each of the following sentences; then complete the translated sentences in German.

1. We will be home *inside* of two hours.

Wir sind _____ zwei Stunden zu Hause.

2. He had *inside* information on the horse race.

Er hatte _____ Informationen über das Pferderennen.

3. We go *inside* the cave.

Wir gehen ins _____ der Höhle.

4. He hides the key *inside* the box.

Er versteckt den Schlüssel im _____ der Schachtel.

5. The man's *insides* hurt.

Der _____ des Mannes schmerzt.

Compounding Your German Vocabulary

You're likely to come across German compound words in everything you read from popular fiction to political essays to letters to the editor in *Sports Illustrated*. Because the possible combinations of nouns are practically unlimited, you can actually create your own compound words pretty much as you please by linking nouns together. The ability to create words at will in German is one reason that this language has been so instrumental to many great thinkers. They have been able to express new concepts and ideas by *coining*, or making up, new words. The flip side to this flexibility is that these compound words are not easily translatable. To express the meaning of the single word *Zeitgeist* in English, for example, you have to use the cumbersome and rather spiritless phrase "spirit of the times." And this morphological process is not limited to combining two nouns to form a compound word. As in English, it's possible to combine adjectives such as *bittersweet* or verbs such as *sleepwalk* to form new words. There's even some mixing of the two languages, coupling the German preposition *über-* (üh-buhR), meaning "above," "beyond," and "super," with an English noun, as in *Übermodel* or *Überstar*.



As a Rule

Many German words in academic texts are compound words, and some of these compound words are not in the dictionary. A knowledge of basic German vocabulary will enable you to take apart those big, cumbersome compound words and look up their components one by one in a bilingual dictionary. The more you rely on and trust your powers of deduction, the easier learning a foreign language becomes!

The Genetic Relationship Between German and English

Even the casual student soon becomes aware of many similarities between German and English. Although vocabulary correspondences are perhaps the most obvious, the two languages also share structural secrets—consider the way they form the

comparative and superlative, *blond*, *blonder*, *blondst*, or the striking parallels in the verbal systems, *sing*, *sang*, *gesungen*. Although these similarities seem fortuitous to the English-speaking learner of German (you!), English and German belong to the so-called Germanic family of languages, a relationship also shared by Danish, Icelandic, Norwegian, Swedish, Frisian, Flemish, and Dutch. Once upon a time, in fact, the Germanic languages were closely related to the following *linguistic* groups: Albanian, Armenian, Baltic, Celtic, Greek, Hittite, Indic, Iranian, Italic, Slavic, and Tocharian—all members of the Indo-European language family. Indo-European, spoken more than 6,000 years ago, was the predecessor language of English and most European languages, minus Finnish and Hungarian. But it took a German, Jacob Grimm, to figure out the sound correspondences between various branches of Indo-European and Germanic languages.

The Germanic languages can be subdivided according to geographical location: north, east, and west. North Germanic languages are Scandinavian, including Icelandic, Norwegian, Faroese, Gothlandic, Swedish, and Danish; East Germanic is represented chiefly by Gothic, an extinct language preserved in a fourth-century Bible translation. The geographical grouping of West Germanic includes German, Dutch, Frisian, and English. So what happened to cause the rift between English and German? An actual shift. No, not of earth, but of consonants, which occurred in the southernmost reaches of the German-speaking lands sometime around the fifth century. “Aha!” you exclaim triumphantly. That explains why it’s *child* and *Kind*, *ship* and *Schiff*, *salt* and *Salz* (*zalts*).



What's What?

Linguistic Relates to language, and linguistics is the study of the nature and structure of human speech.



What's What?

Grimm's law Named after the discoverer of the consonant shifts in Indo-European and Germanic, Jacob Grimm. The first shift (circa 500 B.C.E.) helped separate Germanic from its Indo-European siblings (Greek: *dēka*, Germanic: *zehan*, ten); the second shift around 500 C.E. differentiated German from English.

The Least You Need to Know

- Whether you're a student, a businessperson, a musician, or an art dealer, learning the German language will give you a head start in understanding and assimilating German terms and phrases.
- The particular meter of a piece of writing, the peculiarities of rhyme, and double meanings are all aspects of writing that can be partially if not totally lost in translation.
- A bilingual dictionary can help you tremendously in your study of German!



Pronounce It Properly: Vowels

In This Chapter

- Oh, the stress of it all
- Peculiarities of the German language
- Untie your tongue

You think you have it bad with German pronunciation? Consider the baffled Italian, Spaniard, or Rumanian learning English. What is this poor learner of English to do with *threw* and *through*? And if these words aren't difficult enough, what about *rain*, *reign*, and *rein*—three words with different spellings and meanings but with identical pronunciations. You're going to have a much easier time learning German pronunciation because what you see is what you hear. German is what is called a phonetic language; German words are pronounced exactly as they are spelled. You don't ever have to wonder whether the *e* at the end of a word is silent, which it sometimes is and sometimes isn't in English. In German it is always pronounced. This rule makes it easy to spell, as well. You need simply to learn what sounds are represented by the letters in German. Before you can pronounce German words correctly, however, you'll have to learn how to say the vowels because the sounds of vowels in German are significantly different from the sounds of the same letters in English. Also, you should get comfortable enunciating every letter in a word. This chapter helps you figure out how to pronounce German vowels.

Vowels Must Dress Appropriately



What's What?

Vowel *a, e, i, o, and u* are vowels.

Umlaut The term for the two dots that can be placed over the vowels *a, o*, and *u*.

Modified or mutated vowel

A vowel that takes an umlaut is referred to as a modified vowel, incurring a mutation of sound.

Three German *vowels*—*a, o*, and *u*—can do a little cross-dressing. They are sometimes written with two dots above them. These two dots are called an *umlaut* and signal a change in the sound and meaning of a word. The sounds represented by *ö* and *o* are just as different as the English *a* versus *u*. *Schon* means “already”; *schön* means “beautiful” or “nice.” *Ich trage* means “I carry” or “I wear”; *duträgst* means “you carry” or “you wear.” This difference in sound is important. If you forget the umlaut over *schwül*, the German word for “humid,” and try to tell someone you find a city humid, you could end up making a judgement about an entire city’s sexual orientation (*schwul* means gay, or homosexual). When a vowel takes an umlaut, it becomes a *modified* or *mutated vowel*. The vowel tables in this chapter provide hints, English examples, and the letters used as symbols to represent the sounds of vowels in German words.



What's What?

Stress The emphasis placed on one or more syllables of a word when you pronounce it.

Are You Stressed?

No, stress in German isn’t what happens to you when your Mercedes breaks down on the *Autobahn*. Stress is the emphasis placed on one or more syllables of a word when you pronounce it. If you say *eether* and I say *eyether*, and you say *tomato* and I say *tomahto*, it doesn’t necessarily mean we’ll have to call the whole thing off. A general rule for determining the stressed syllable in German is: With words of more than one syllable, the emphasis is usually placed on the first syllable, as in the words *Bleistift*, *Schönheit*, and *Frag*, thanks to the accenting established in early Germanic.

Foreign words such as *Hotel*, *Musik*, and *Philosophie* that have been assimilated into the German language do not follow German rules of stress or pronunciation, although they do acquire German pronunciation of vowels.

Your Own Personal Accent

Some people have no problem pronouncing new sounds in a foreign language. They were born rolling their *R*s, courtesy of genetics, and producing throaty gutturals.

Some people spend their adolescence serving as conduits at seances for famous dead Germans, Russians, Spaniards, and Italians. Not all of us have been so lucky.

To pronounce words correctly in a new language, you must retrain your tongue. After all, hasn't your tongue—the muscle that's been making the same sounds since you first opened your mouth as a baby to utter "mama"—been wrapping itself around the particular language known as English for as long as you can remember? Those intuitive skills you used to *acquire* your first language will enable you to *learn* a foreign language. Heightening your linguistic awareness, you can teach your tongue to make new sounds the same way you would teach your muscles to make new movements if you suddenly decided to change your hobby from long-distance running to synchronized swimming.

Don't worry if you can't make the exact German sound. As an adult language learner, you are able to monitor your speech—comparing your utterances with your conscious knowledge and correcting yourself accordingly. Strive for approximate perfection—chances are, what you're trying to communicate will be understood.

A Few Peculiarities of the German Language

Believe it or not, the relationship between German pronunciation and spelling is much closer than the relationship between English pronunciation and spelling—no Great Vowel Shift or Norman Invasion to affect symbol/sound correspondences in German. After you learn how to pronounce German words correctly, reading them will be a breeze. You'll also be glad to hear that the German alphabet consists of the same 26 letters as the English alphabet, so you won't have to learn an entirely new alphabet as you would if you were studying Russian or Greek. Additionally, this same alphabet represents consistent sounds in German. There are, however, a few distinctly German language phenomena that you just can't do without.

The Famous Umlaut

Remember those versatile two dots we spoke about earlier? In German those two dots are known as an umlaut: literally, *um* ("around") + *Laut* ("sound"). The umlaut, really just a writing device to indicate another vowel sound, alters the sound of a vowel and makes a meaning change. Sometimes the change is grammatical, as in a plural form and in the comparison of an adjective, but most of the time the change is lexical—that is, it produces an entirely different word. Around the year 750, resulting from a change in word endings, the vowel *a*, formed in the back part of the oral cavity, slid forward, approximating the front vowel *i*. This phenomenon of partial assimilation is visible in the Germanization of *Attila* to *Etzel*. By the eleventh century, the umlaut had, in general, spread to include other back vowels, such as *o* and *u*, and to diphthongs. English has vestiges of the



Achtung

An umlaut can be added only to *a*, *o*, or *u*. It can never be added to *e* or *i*.

umlaut, observable in irregular forms such as *old/elder* and *foot/feet*. When you say *foot/feet*, you should be able to feel your tongue slide forward; that slide is vowel mutation!

Capitalizing on Nouns

When you see half a dozen capital letters in the middle of a German sentence, they're not typos. One of the differences between written English and written German is that German nouns are always capitalized. This convention goes back to the Reformation when Martin Luther opted to capitalize those nouns he deemed significant, such as *Glaube* (*glou-buh*), "faith" or "belief," and *Gott* (*got*), "God"—perhaps the e.e. cummings of his time!

Compare this English sentence with the translated German sentence. Don't be scared by the strange looking *S* in the German text. It's known as an *es-tset* (you'll read all about it in the next chapter). Note the capital letters in the following sentences:

Which famous German writer and philosopher said that pleasure is simply the absence of pain?

Welcher berühmte deutsche Schriftsteller und Philosoph sagte, dass das Vergnügen schlicht die Abwesenheit von Kummer sei?

The answer is Arthur Schopenhauer.

Where Did All These Vowel Sounds Come From?

When it comes to the pronunciation of vowels, keep in mind that vowel sounds are organized into three principal types. These three types of vowel sounds are referred to

throughout this book as vowels, modified vowels, and diphthongs. We've already discussed vowels and modified vowels. In German both of these groups can have long vowel sounds, which, as their name suggests, have a drawn out vowel sound (like the *o* sound in *snow*) or shorter vowel sounds, which have a shorter sound (like the *o* sound in *lot*). *Diphthongs* are combinations of vowels that are treated in German as a single vowel. They begin with one vowel sound and end with a different vowel sound in the same syllable, as in the words *wine* and *bowel* (keep in mind that the sound of a diphthong in English can often be produced by a single vowel, as in the word *rose*). Diphthongs do not have long vowel sounds but rather represent a sliding together of two vowels.



What's What?

Diphthongs Combinations of vowels that begin with one vowel sound and end with a different vowel sound in the same syllable.



As a Rule

Generally, a vowel is long when it is followed by an *h* as in *Mahl* (*mahl*), an orthographic device thought up by fifteenth century spelling reformers. A vowel is also long when it is doubled, as in *Meer* (*meyR*) and *Aal* (*ahl*), or when it is followed by a single consonant, as in *Wagen* (*vah-guhn*). The vowel *i* is made into a long vowel when it is followed by an *e*, think *Bier* (*beeR*). In general, vowels are short when followed by two or more consonants just as in English.

In the following pronunciation guide, each vowel appears in its own section. We try to give you an idea of how vowel sounds are pronounced by providing an English equivalent. Obviously, we cannot account for regional differences in either the German or English pronunciations of vowels and words. As you read this guide, remember that in English we have a tendency to glide or “diphthongize” vowels, whereas in German vowels are pure,” that is, they have a single sound. It may help to read the English pronunciation example first and then to repeat each German word out loud for practice.

Say A as in Modern

For the short *a*, assume a British accent and make the sound of the vowel in the back of your throat. Say: *cast, fast*. Now read the following German words out loud:

Mann	Stadt	Rand	lachen	Matsch
<i>mAn</i>	<i>shtAt</i>	<i>rAnt</i>	<i>lA-CHuhn</i>	<i>mAtsh</i>
man, husband	city	frame	to laugh	mush

The long *a* is a prolongation of the short *a*. Pretend you’re at the dentist’s office and say: *ahhhhhh*.

Wagen	haben	Staat	Mahl	lahm
<i>vah-guhn</i>	<i>hah-buhn</i>	<i>shtaht</i>	<i>mahl</i>	<i>lahm</i>
car	to have	state	meal	lame

German Letter	Symbol	Pronunciation Guide
a (short)	A	Close to o in <i>modern</i>
a, aa, ah (long)	ah	Say a as in <i>father</i>

Say E as in Bed

Smile while making the sound of the short stressed e, and your pronunciation will improve. This shorty is always flanked by consonants.

Bett	Dreck	Fleck	nett
<i>bet</i>	<i>dRek</i>	<i>flek</i>	<i>net</i>
bed	dirt	spot	nice

When the e is unstressed, as it will be at the end of a word, it is pronounced like the e in *mother*.

Bitte	alle	bekommen	Dame	Hose
<i>bi-tuh</i>	<i>A-luh</i>	<i>buh-ko-muhn</i>	<i>dah-muh</i>	<i>hoh-zuh</i>
request	all	to receive	lady	trousers

There is no exact equivalent of the German long e sound in English, but you can approximate it by trying to make the sound of the stressed e and ay at the same time (be careful not to produce a diphthong). Try saying these words:

Weg	Meer	Beet	Mehl	mehr
<i>veyk</i>	<i>meyR</i>	<i>beyt</i>	<i>meyl</i>	<i>meyR</i>
way	see	beet	flour	more

German Letter	Symbol	Pronunciation Guide
e (short, stressed)	e	Say e as in <i>bed</i>
e (short, unstressed)	uh	Say uh as in <i>ago</i>
e, ee, eh (long)	ey	Close to the ey in <i>hey</i>

Say I as in Winter

The short *i* is easy. It sounds like the *i* in the English words *wind* or *winter*. Try saying the following words:

Wind <i>vint</i>	Kind <i>kint</i>	schlimm <i>shlim</i>	Himmel <i>hi-muhl</i>	hinter <i>hin-tuhR</i>
wind	child	bad	heaven	behind

For the long *i*, try saying *cheeeeeeeeese* and widening your mouth!

Liter <i>lee-tuhR</i>	Tiger <i>tee-guhR</i>	ihr <i>eeR</i>	Fliege <i>flee-guh</i>	schieben <i>shee-buhn</i>
liter	tiger	her; you	fly	to push

German Letter	Symbol	Pronunciation Guide
i (short)	<i>i</i>	Say <i>i</i> as in <i>winter</i>
i, ie, ih (long)	<i>ee</i>	Say <i>ee</i> as in <i>beet</i>

Say O as in Lord

In German the sound of the short *o* should resonate slightly farther back in your mouth than the *o* sound in English.

Mord <i>moRt</i>	Loch <i>loCH</i>	kochen <i>ko-CHuhn</i>	Ort <i>oRt</i>
murder	hole	to cook	town

English does not have an exact equivalent of the German long *o*, but if you drop the *woo* sound at the end of *snow* and hold your jaw in place as the vibrations of the *o* sound come up your throat from your vocal chords, you'll be pretty darn close.

hoch <i>hohCH</i>	Boot <i>boht</i>	Ohr <i>ohR</i>	loben <i>loh-buhn</i>
high	boat	ear	to praise

German Letter	Symbol	Pronunciation Guide
o (short)	<i>o</i>	Say <i>o</i> as in <i>lord</i>
o, oo, oh (long)	<i>oh</i>	Close to <i>o</i> in <i>snow</i> (without the <i>w</i> glide)

Say U as in Shook

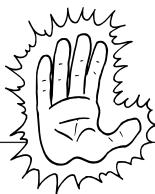
The sound of the short *u* has just a touch of the sound of the long *u* in it. If you can add a little *moon* to the sound of the short *o*, you'll be on the right track.

Mutter	Luft	Schuld	bunt	Geduld
<i>moo-tuhR</i>	<i>looft</i>	<i>shoolt</i>	<i>boont</i>	<i>guh-doolt</i>
mother	air	guild	bright	patience

Imitate your favorite cow (*Kuh*) for this long *u* sound: *mooo*.

zu	tun	Schuh	Uhr	Fuß
<i>tsew</i>	<i>tewn</i>	<i>shew</i>	<i>ewR</i>	<i>fews</i>
to	to do	shoe	clock	foot

German Letter	Symbol	Pronunciation Guide
u (short)	<i>oo</i>	Close to <i>oo</i> in <i>shook</i>
u, uh (long)	<i>ew</i>	Say <i>ew</i> as in <i>stew</i>



Achtung

Remember, the German *i* sounds like the English *e*. Usually, the German *e* is soft, like the *e* in *effort* or the *a* in *ago*.

Be careful not to run the two *us* together when pronouncing *uu* in words like *Vakuum* (*va-koo-oom*) and *Individuum* (*in-dee-vee-doo-oom*). In most cases the two letters are read as short *us* and are given equal stress. They should be treated as separate syllables, as they are in the English word *residuum*. Don't treat other vowels this way, however; this rule applies only to side-by-side *us*, not to the *a*, *e*, or *o*.

Modified Vowels: The Long and the Short of Them

In German an umlaut changes the way a vowel is pronounced. Many German words are consistently spelled with umlauts, but other words take an umlaut when they undergo some change in pronunciation and meaning. This guide treats each modified vowel separately, giving you hints to help you make the correct sounds. Focus on getting the sounds right one sound at a time.

Say Ä as in Fair

The short ä is pronounced like the short e in German.

Stärke <i>shtäR-kuh</i> strength	Männer <i>mä-nuhR</i> men	hängen <i>hän-guhn</i> to hang	ständig <i>shtän-diH</i> constantly
--	---------------------------------	--------------------------------------	---

The long ä is the same sound as the short ä, only with the sound prolonged—a quantitative rather than qualitative alteration.

ähnlich <i>ahn-liH</i> similar	Mähne <i>mäh-nuh</i> mane	Bär <i>bähR</i> bear	prägen <i>pRäh-guhn</i> to coin
--------------------------------------	---------------------------------	----------------------------	---------------------------------------

German Letter	Symbol	Pronunciation Guide
ä (short)	ä	Say <i>ai</i> as in <i>fair</i>
ä, äh (long)	äh	Say <i>a</i> as in <i>fate</i>

Say Ö as in Fur

This sound does not have an exact English equivalent. Round your lips and say *ew* sound while tightening the muscles at the back of your throat.

Öffnung <i>öf-noong</i> opening	möchten <i>möH-tuhn</i> would like to	Hölle <i>hö-luh</i> hell	Löffel <i>lö-fuhl</i> spoon
---------------------------------------	---	--------------------------------	-----------------------------------

Keep the long ö sound going for twice as long, just as you did the short ö sound.

hören <i>höh-Ruhn</i> to hear	schön <i>shöhn</i> pretty	fröhlich <i>fRöh-liH</i> happy	Störung <i>shtöh-Roong</i> disturbance
-------------------------------------	---------------------------------	--------------------------------------	--

German Letter	Symbol	Pronunciation Guide
ö (short)	ö	Close to <i>u</i> in <i>fur</i>
ö, öh (long)	öh	Close to <i>u</i> in <i>hurt</i>

Say Ü as in the French Word Sûr

This *ü* sound does not have an English equivalent. If you speak French, though, you're in luck: The *ü* is very close to the *u* sound in the French word *sûr*. If, on the other hand, you've never spoken a word of French in your life, say *ee*, hold your jaw and tongue in this position, and then round your lips as if you were pronouncing *u*.

Glück	Mücke	Rücken	Rhythmus
<i>glük</i>	<i>mük-uh</i>	<i>Rü-kuhn</i>	<i>Rüt-moos</i>
luck	mosquito	back	rhythm

The long *ü* or *y* is the same sound, just held for a longer interval of time.

röhren	führen	Lüge	Pseudonym
<i>Rüh-Ruhn</i>	<i>füh-Ruhn</i>	<i>lüh-guh</i>	<i>psoy-doh-nühm</i>
to stir	to lead	lie	

German Letter	Symbol	Pronunciation Guide
ü, y (short)	ü	Close to <i>oo</i> in <i>food</i>
ü, üh, y (long)	üh	Close to <i>oo</i> in <i>food</i>



As a Rule

If you've read through this pronunciation guide thoroughly, you may have already noticed a certain correlation between the spellings of words and their pronunciation. For example, a vowel or modified vowel is short when followed by two consonants. When either a vowel or modified vowel is followed by an *h* and another consonant, however, or even by a single consonant, the vowel is long.

Diphthongs

Diphthongs are not a provocative new style of bikini. In English we tend to diphthongize vowels in words like *sky*, where the *y* is pronounced *ah-ee*, and *go*, where the *o* is pronounced *oh-oo*. Following the pattern of German diphthong formation, the *o* and

u in the English word *about* come together to create the diphthong *ah-oo*. You've seen diphthongs in vowels positioned back to back, as the *o* and the *e* are in the word *Noel* or the *a* and the *e* in the word *daemon*. Whatever form they take, diphthongs are always made up of two different vowel sounds that change in the same syllable. How do you recognize a diphthong? Listen. The first vowel sound glides or "dips" into the next vowel sound. In German they are vowels that travel in pairs.

Here are the diphthongs most frequently used in German. For other diphthongs, each vowel should be pronounced the same way it would be if pronounced separately: *Kollision* (*ko-lee-zeeohn*), *Familie* (*fah-mee-leeuh*).



Achtung

Don't confuse *ie*, which is pronounced like *ee* in *feet*, with the diphthong *ei*, which is pronounced like the English word *eye*. Think *Bier* (*beeR*) versus *Wein* (*vayn*).

The Diphthongs *el* and *al*

To make the sound of these diphthongs, start with your mouth halfway open, end with your mouth almost—but not quite—closed. Practice with these words:

Bleistift	Mai	vielleicht	klein	fein
<i>blay-shtift</i>	<i>may</i>	<i>fee-layHt</i>	<i>klayn</i>	<i>fayn</i>
pencil	May	maybe	small	fine

German Letter(s)	Symbol	Pronunciation Guide
ei, ai	ay	Say <i>y</i> as in <i>cry</i>

The Diphthong *au*

Let's suppose that you've been trying so hard to pronounce these new sounds correctly that you bite your own tongue by mistake. You knit your eyebrows together and cry out in pain: Ow! That's precisely the sound of this next diphthong. Try making this *ow* sound as you say these words:

Haut	Braut	schauen	verdauen	Sauerkraut
<i>hout</i>	<i>bRout</i>	<i>shou-uhn</i>	<i>feR-dou-uhn</i>	<i>sou-eR-kRout</i>
skin	bride	to look	to digest	sauerkraut

German Letter(s)	Symbol	Pronunciation Guide
au	ou	Say <i>ou</i> as in <i>couch, mouse</i>

The Diphthongs eu and äu

Try saying this: “Boy oh boy oh boy oh boy oh boy.” If you managed that without too much trouble, chances are you have the sound of this diphthong down.

heute	Reue	neu	Schläuche	Häute
<i>hoy-tuh</i>	<i>Roy-uh</i>	<i>noy</i>	<i>shloy-Huh</i>	<i>hoy-tuh</i>
today	regret	new	hoses	skins

German Letter(s)	Symbol	Pronunciation Guide
eu, äu	oy	Say <i>oy</i> as in <i>toy</i>

All right, you can breathe a sigh of relief now. We’re through with vowels. If you had a little trouble getting your mouth to do what you wanted it to, don’t worry. You’ll need a little time to get used to making sounds you’ve never made before. German friends (or, in the absence of live, German-speaking human beings, German tapes from your local library) would come in handy now. You should try to listen to native German speakers, particularly because many of the modified vowel sounds do not have English equivalents. At this point, concentrate on getting the sounds right. If worse comes to worse, try calling the German consulate and playing the caller instructions in German over and over again (just don’t say we told you to)!

The Least You Need to Know

- Untie your tongue. Hiss, growl, coo. Start making vowel sounds way back in your throat. Before you know it, you’ll be pronouncing words like *Bratwurst* and *Fahrvergnügen* correctly.
- After you learn the basic pronunciation of German vowels, you will be able to read some German without too much difficulty.
- Umlauted vowels are only slightly different from pure vowels, but this difference significantly alters the meanings of words. Practice making the umlauted vowel sounds, just as you would any new sound.



Pronounce It Properly: Consonants

In This Chapter

- Consonants that sound the same
- Consonants to clear your throat
- Worthwhile combos
- Hissing and Grrring in German

By now you should be able to make the correct sounds of vowels in German. But what good are all the vowel sounds you learned in Chapter 3, “Pronounce It Properly: Vowels,” without consonants? What good is Astaire without Rogers; Penn without Teller; hamburgers without catsup, lettuce, a tomato slice, and a pickle? The bottom line is, say *oo* or *ee* as often as you like: It won’t get you a Big Mac at a Berlin McDonald’s or a seat at the Vienna Opera without the help of a few consonants.

The good news is, the sounds of German consonants are not going to be as unfamiliar as many of the sounds you tried in the previous chapter. German consonants are either pronounced like their English counterparts or are pronounced like other consonants in English. The only German consonant sounds you won’t encounter in English are the two sounds represented in this book by the symbol *H* (the *ch* in *ich*) and the symbol *CH* (the *ch* in *LoCH*).

In written German, you’ll also come across a new letter: the consonant *ß* (pronounced *es-tset*). It’s a combination of the letters *s* and *z* and is considered a single consonant. When people can’t find the *es-tset* key on their word processor, they often write the *es-tset* as a double *s* (*ss*). In either case, it should be pronounced like an *s*. And it gets



What's What?

Consonants All the letters in the alphabet *other than a, e, i, o, and u*. Consonants are best described as involving some obstruction of the air stream, whereas vowels do not have any sort of obstruction.

simpler! In August 1998, Germany decided to implement a spelling reform. Regarding when to spell with the es-tset and when to use a double *s*, the es-tset is used after long vowels (a concept introduced in the last chapter). Until August 2005 some latitude will exist with the acceptance of both spellings the former *daß* ("that") must then appear written with two *s*'s—*dass*—as the *a* in this word (followed by a double consonant) is short.

Conquering Consonants

Before you start stuttering out *consonants*, we should probably tell you a little about how this section works. The consonants in the following tables are not given in alphabetical order. They are grouped according to pronunciation type. You should read the pronunciation guide carefully from beginning to end so that you'll know where to look later if you need to locate a specific consonant. For each letter, we provide English examples of how German consonants are pronounced along with the symbols used throughout this book to represent the sounds. Keep in mind that the symbols (consonants or combinations of consonants, lowercase or uppercase) are not the standard ones used in the dictionary. We've tried to choose symbols that correspond closely to the sounds they represent and are easy for English speakers to recognize at a glance.

Reading through these tables may seem like crossing a muddy field—progress is slow, each step requires effort, and at times it doesn't feel as if you're getting anywhere—but it's worth the effort: You want to speak German, don't you?

The Very Same Letters You Know and Love

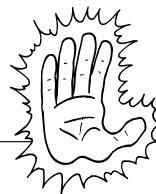
Many consonants are pronounced the same way in German and in English. When you see these letters, just go ahead and pronounce them the way you do in English words.

German Letter(s)	Symbol	Pronunciation Guide
f, h, k, l, m, n, p, t, x	The same as English letters	Pronounced the same as in English

Ex-plosives: B, D, and G

Let's take a look at the letters *b*, *d*, and *g*. They are called *plosives* because of the way their sounds are articulated: with small explosions of air. At the beginning of a word

(word initial) or when followed by a vowel, these sounds involving a stoppage of air utilize the vocal cords. Utter a *b* sound with a hand on your throat (where your vocal box is). You should feel vibrations. Its counter sound articulated at exactly the same place in the mouth, in exactly the same way, but not involving the vocal cords is a *p*. Whisper, and you will not feel the vibrations in your vocal cords. This sound is heard in German at the end of a word yet is orthographically (spelling-wise) represented with a *b*. For example, at the beginning of a syllable, *b* is pronounced the same way as it is in English: *Bleistift* (*blay-sh-tif*) “pencil,” *braun* (*bRoun*) “brown,” and *aber* (*ah-buhR*) “but.” When *b* occurs at the end of a syllable, however, it is pronounced like a *p* (without use of the vocal cords): *Laub* (*loup*) “foliage” or *Korb* (*koRp*) “basket.”



Achtung

The German *L* is not articulated in precisely the same place in the mouth as the English *L*. The English *L* is dark, formed with the tongue more relaxed. The German *L*—light, nearly as vibrant as the German *R*—is formed with the tip of the tongue just behind the upper front teeth.

German Letter	Symbol	Pronunciation Guide
<i>b</i>	<i>b</i>	Say <i>b</i> as in <i>big</i>
<i>b</i> at the end of a syllable	<i>p</i>	Say <i>p</i> as in <i>pipe</i>

At the beginning of a syllable, the *d* is pronounced like an English *d*: *Dach* (*dACH*) “stream,” *denken* (*den-kuhn*) “to think,” or like the first *d* in *Deutschland* (*doytsh-lAnt*) “Germany.” At the end of a syllable, the *d*, like its friend the *b*, loses its vocalization and is pronounced like a *t*: *Leid* (*layt*) “sorrow” or like the last *d* in *Deutschland* (*doytsh-lAnt*).

German Letter	Symbol	Pronunciation Guide
<i>d</i>	<i>d</i>	Say <i>d</i> as in <i>dog</i>
<i>d</i> at the end of a syllable	<i>t</i>	Say <i>t</i> as in <i>tail</i>

At the beginning of a syllable, *g* is pronounced the same as it is in English: *Gott* (*got*) God. At the end of a syllable, *g* is pronounced like *k*: *Weg* (*veyk*) “way.” But you already deduced that, didn’t you?!? The consonant *g* has yet another pronunciation, thanks to foreign infiltration. In certain words, usually ones that have been assimilated into the German language from other languages—namely, French, pronounce the *g* as in *Massage* (*mA-sah-juh*).

German Letter	Symbol	Pronunciation Guide
g	g	Say <i>g</i> as in <i>God</i>
g at the end of a syllable	k	Say <i>k</i> as in <i>kitchen</i>
g in foreign language words	j	Say <i>j</i> as in <i>jeans</i>



As a Rule

When the letters *-ig* occur at the end of a word, they are pronounced the way *ich* is pronounced in the German word *ich*: *traurig* (*tRou-RiH*). But check it out! We have the same word-building suffix in English, derived from Old English into Middle English *-lic*, meaning like, as in childlike. Eventually, this same suffix doubled its purpose and became the standard way to form an adverb as in the Present Day English friendly or homely.

Freakin' Fricatives and Fricative's Relatives

Fricatives are consonants articulated when the air stream coming up the throat and out of the mouth meets an obstacle, causing—you guessed it—friction.

Got a Frog in Your Throat? CH, CHS, H, J

There's no exact English equivalent to the *ch* sound in German, but when you say words like *hubris* and *human*, the sound you make when you pronounce the *h* at the very beginning of the word is very close to the correct pronunciation of the German *ch* in *ich* (this *ch* sound being one of the most difficult sounds, we might add, for English speakers learning to speak German). If you can draw out this *h* sound longer than you do in these two English words, you should have very little trouble pronouncing the following words accurately: *ich* (*iH*) “I,” *manchmal* (*mAnH-mahl*) “sometimes,” *vielleicht* (*fee-layHt*) “maybe.”

The second *ch* sound is articulated at the same place in the back of the throat as *k*, but the tongue is lowered to allow air to come through. To approximate this sound (represented in this book by the symbol *CH*), make the altered *h* sound you just

learned farther back in your throat—a little like gargling. Can you pronounce Johann Sebastian Bach's name correctly? Give this a shot: *Yoh-hAn zey-bAs-tee-ahn bahhhh* (gargle and hiss like a cat simultaneously at the end). Once you can do this, you have nothing to worry about: You've mastered this second *ch* sound. Practice by reading the following words aloud: *Buch* (*bewCH*) “book,” *hoch* (*hohCH*) “high,” *Rache* (*RA-CHuh*) “revenge.” Take heart, however, as you don't have to be conscious of the variation between *H* and *CH*; you will automatically produce the one prompted by the preceding vowel. That is to say, if the vowel coming before the *ch* sound is produced in the front part of the oral cavity (linguistic term for “mouth”) as in *ich*, the *ch* will come out less guttural than the *ch* after a back vowel, as the *a* in *Bach*.

In general, when *ch* occurs at the beginning of a word, it is pronounced like a *k*: *Chaos* (*KA-os*), *Charisma* (*kah-ris-mah*). Exceptions occur, however, as in *China*, where the *ch* may be pronounced the same way it is in *ich*.

The *ch* has a fourth pronunciation: *sh*. This pronunciation is usually used only for foreign words that have been assimilated into the German language: *Chef* (*shef*) “boss,” *Chance* (*shahn-suh*).

German Letter(s)	Symbol	Pronunciation Guide
ch	H	Close to <i>h</i> in <i>human</i>
	CH	No English equivalent
	k	Say <i>k</i> as in <i>character</i>
	sh	Say <i>sh</i> as in <i>shape</i>

You won't have any trouble at all with the *chs* sound. Say: *Fuchs* (*foox*) “fox,” *Büchse* (*büxe*) “box.”

German Letter(s)	Symbol	Pronunciation Guide
chs	x	Say <i>x</i> as in <i>fox</i>

The *h* is silent when it follows a vowel to indicate that the vowel is long: *Stahl* (*shtahl*) “steel”—remember those spelling reformers of the fifteenth century? In some cases, *h* is silent when it follows a *t*, as in *Theater* (*tey-ah-tuhR*). Otherwise, the *h* is pronounced very much like the English *h*—just a little breathier. Think of an obscene phone caller breathing heavily on the other end of the line and try the following: *hallo* (*hA-loh*).

German Letter	Symbol	Pronunciation Guide
h	h	Say <i>h</i> as in <i>house</i>



As a Rule

The English *th* sound does not exist in German. Either the *h* is silent, or both *t* and *h* are pronounced separately, as in the compound words *Stadthalle* (*shAt-hA-luh*) “town hall” and *Misthaufen* (*mist-hou-fuhn*) “dung heap,” both of which are “divided” by a glottal stop between the syllables. You produce glottal stops all the time, believe it or not, whenever you disagree, shake your head, and utter: *uh-uh*. That tiny pause between the syllables is referred to as a glottal stop!

Whenever you see a *j* in German, pronounce it like an English *y*: *Ja* (*yah*) “yes,” *Jaguar* (*yah-gew-ahR*).

German Letter	Symbol	Pronunciation Guide
<i>j</i>	γ	Say <i>y</i> as in <i>yes</i>

Aw, Nuts: Z and Sometimes C

The *z* sound is made by combining the consonant sounds *t* and *s* into one sound: *zu* (*tsew*) “to,” *Zeug* (*tsoyk*) “thing,” *Kreuz* (*kRoyts*) “cross.” Although this sound may seem new to you, English has the exact same sound—merely in a different position—word final, as in *cats*.

German Letter	Symbol	Pronunciation Guide
<i>z</i>	<i>ts</i>	Say <i>ts</i> as in <i>nuts</i>

In German you will rarely run into a *c* that isn’t followed by an *h*, but when you do, that *c* should be pronounced *ts* whenever it occurs before *ä*, *e*, *i*, or *ö*: *CäsaR* (*tsäh-zahR*), or like the first *c* in *circa* (*tseeR-kah*). Otherwise, it should be pronounced like a *k*: *Creme* (*kReym*) “cream,” *Computer* (*kom-pew-tuhR*), or the last *c* in *circa* (*tseeR-kah*).

German Letter	Symbol	Pronunciation Guide
<i>c</i>	<i>ts</i>	Say <i>ts</i> as in <i>nuts</i>
	<i>k</i>	Say <i>k</i> as in <i>killer</i>

Double or Nothing: KN, PS, QU

The combinations of consonants in this section are pronounced together—that is, one after another.

In English, the *k* is silent in words like *knight* and *knot*. In German, however, both *k* and *n* are pronounced: *Kneipe* (*knay-puh*) “pub,” *Knie* (*knee*) “knee.”

German Letter(s)	Symbol	Pronunciation Guide
kn	kn	Say <i>k</i> as in <i>kitchen</i> and <i>n</i> as in <i>now</i>

As in English, the consonants *ph* are pronounced *f*: *Photograph* (*foh-toh-gRahf*), *Physik* (*füh-sik*).

In the other consonant combinations in this chart, both letters are pronounced: *Pfeife* (*pfaɪ-fuh*) “whistle,” *Pferd* (*pfeRt*) “horse,” *Pseudonym* (*psoy-doh-nühm*), *Schlinge* (*shlin-guh*) “snare.”

German Letter(s)	Symbol	Pronunciation Guide
pf	pf	No English equivalent
ph	f	Say <i>ph</i> as in <i>photo</i>
ps	ps	Say <i>ps</i> as in <i>psst</i>

The *qu* sound in German is a combination of the consonant sounds *k* and *v*: *Quantität* (*kvAn-tee-täht*), *Qual* (*kvahl*) “torment,” *Quatsch* (*kvAtsh*) “nonsense.”

German Letter(s)	Symbol	Pronunciation Guide
qu	kv	No English equivalent

VeRRy Vibrant: The German R

If you thought you were tongue tied the first time you asked a girl (or guy) for a kiss, wait till you try the German *R*. Think of it as a fun challenge for any tongue. The sooner you master it, the sooner you'll be talking (practically) like a native.

Position your lips as if you are about to make the *r* sound but then make the gargling sound you made for the German sound represented in this book by the symbol *CH*. The sound should come from somewhere in the back of your throat. The *r* sound can be soft, as in the words *Vater* (*fah-tuhr*) “father” and *Wasser* (*vA-suhr*) “water,” or harder, as in the word *reich* (*ReyH*) “kingdom.” The distinction between these sounds is a subtle one. This book uses the same symbol (*R*) for both sounds.

German Letter	Symbol	Pronunciation Guide
r	R	No English equivalent

In southern Germany (München and Stuttgart), the *R* is rolled on the tip of the tongue, whereas in the north (Hamburg and Bremen), the *R* is pronounced deep at the back of the throat. This “uvular” pronunciation of the *R* is the most frequently used, but if you can’t master it, try rolling your *Rs* (if someone asks about your accent, say you studied German in Stuttgart). Speaking of Hamburg, that accent is remarkably recognizable by its “sharp” *s*—instead of *Spitze* (*shpit-suh*) “point,” you’ll hear *spit-suh*.

Old Smoothies: S, β, SCH, ST, TSCH

The *s* is similar to the English *z* when followed by a vowel or surrounded by vowels: *Sohn* (*zohn*) “son,” *Seife* (*zay-fuh*) “soap,” *Rose* (*Roh-zuh*). At the end of a word, however, *s* is pronounced like the English *s*: *Maus* (*mous*), *Glas* (*glahs*)—note: no vowel following these ess’s!

German Letter	Symbol	Pronunciation Guide
s	z	Say <i>z</i> as in <i>zero</i>
	s	Say <i>s</i> as in <i>house</i>

The letter β (es-tset) and the letters *ss* are both pronounced like an unvoiced (no vocal cords in use) *s*: *nass* (*nAs*) “wet,” *dass β* (*dAs*) “that,” *Maße* (*mah-suh*) “measure,” *Rasse* (*RA-suh*) “race,” *Klasse* (*kLA-suh*) “class,” *müssen* (*müs-uhn*) “to have to.” According to the recently instated spelling reforms in German, the double *s* is used instead of β after or between two short vowels.

German Letter	Symbol	Pronunciation Guide
β , ss	s	Say <i>s</i> as in <i>salt</i>

The consonants *sch* are pronounced *sh*: *Scheibe* (*shay-buh*) “slice,” *Schatten* (*shA-tuhn*) “shadow,” *schießen* (*shee-suhn*) “to shoot.”

German Letter(s)	Symbol	Pronunciation Guide
<i>sch</i>	<i>sh</i>	Say <i>sh</i> as in <i>shape</i>

In German *sp* is a combination of the *sh* sound in *shake* and the *p* sound in *pat*. Try saying “ship” without the *i*. Now practice with these words: *Spiel* (*shpeel*) “game,” *Spanien* (*shpah-nee-uhn*) “Spain.”

The word-initial *st* sound is a combination of the *sh* sound in *shake* and the *t* sound in *take*. Try saying “shot” without the *o* sound. Practice by saying the following words out loud: *steigen* (*shtay-guhn*) “to climb,” *Straße* (*shtRah-suh*) “street,” *Stuhl* (*shtewl*) “chair.”

The *st* sound is pronounced the same way as it is in English when it occurs within a word or word-final in German: *Meister* (*may-stuhR*) “master,” *Nest* (*nest*).

German Letter(s)	Symbol	Pronunciation Guide
sp	<i>shp</i>	No English equivalent
st	<i>sht</i>	Say <i>shot</i> without the <i>o</i>
	<i>st</i>	Say <i>st</i> as in <i>state</i>

Four consonants in a row! Don’t panic. It’s easier to read than it appears. *Tsch* is pronounced *tch*, as in the word *witch*. See? A breeze, right?: *Matsch* (*mAtch*) “sludge,” *lutschen* (*loo-tchuhn*) “to suckle,” *deutsch* (*doytch*) “German.”

German Letter (s)	Symbol	Pronunciation Guide
tsch	<i>tch</i>	Say <i>tch</i> as in <i>switch</i>

Herbie the Love Bug: The Classic VW

In most cases the *v* is pronounced like an *f*: *Vater* (*fah-tuhR*) “father,” *Verkehr* (*feR-keyR*) “traffic,” *viel* (*feel*) “many,” but in some cases, particularly with words that have been assimilated into the German language from other languages such as French, the *v* is pronounced *v*: *Vampir* (*vAm-peeR*), *Vase* (*vah-zuh*). You will readily recognize these, as English has borrowed them from French, as well!

German Letter	Symbol	Pronunciation Guide
v	<i>f</i>	Pronounced as the <i>f</i> in <i>father</i>
	<i>v</i>	Sometimes as the <i>v</i> in <i>voice</i>

The *w* is pronounced like a *v*: *wichtig* (*viH-tiH*) “important,” *Wasser* (*vA-suhR*) “water,” *Wurst* (*vuRst*) “sausage.”

German Letter	Symbol	Pronunciation Guide
w	<i>v</i>	Say <i>v</i> as in <i>vast</i>

Pronunciation Guide

When you are further along in this book, you may not have time to flip through page after page looking for the letter or the symbol you want to pronounce. The following table is an abbreviated pronunciation guide of vowels, modified vowels, diphthongs, and consonants that differ in pronunciation from English consonants.

Abbreviated Pronunciation Guide

Letter(s)	Symbol	English Example	German Example
Vowels			
a (short)	A	Close to modern	Mann
a (long)	ah	father	Lage
e (short, stressed)	e	bed	Bett
e (short, unstressed)	uh	ago	Bitte
e (long)	ey	Close to <i>hey</i>	Weg
i (short)	i	wind	Wind
i (long)	ee	see	wir
o (short)	o	lord	Ort
o (long)	oh	Close to snow	Verbot
u (short)	oo	shook	Mutter
u (long)	ew	stew	Versuch
Modified Vowels			
ä (short)	ä	fair	Stärke
ä (long)	äh	Close to fate	Bär
ö (short)	ö	Close to fur	Löffel
ö (long)	öh	Close to hurt	schön
ü (short)	ü	Close to food	Glück
ü (long)	üh	Close to food	lügen
Diphthongs			
ai, ei	ay	I	Bleistift
au	ou	couch	Frau
äu, eu	oy	toy	heute
Consonants That Differ from English			
b	b	big	Bleistift
	p	pipe	obwohl

Letter(s)	Symbol	English Example	German Example
Consonants That Differ from English			
c	ts	bats	Cäsar
	k	killer	Computer
ch	H	Close to <i>human</i>	ich
	CH	No equivalent	suchen
	k	<i>character</i>	Character
	sh	<i>shape</i>	Chef
chs	x	fox	Fuchs
d	d	dog	Dach
	t	time	Wand
g	g	good	groß
	k	kitten	Weg
	j	jeans	Massage
h	h	house	Heimat
j	y	yes	ja
kn	kn	No equivalent	Kneipe
pf	pf	No equivalent	Pfeife
ph	f	photo	Photo
ps	ps	<i>psst!</i>	Pseudonym
ng	ng	sling	Schlinge
qu	kv	No equivalent No equivalent	Quatsch reich
s	z	zero	Suppe
	s	mouse	Glas
β, ss	s	salt	Straße, Masse
sch	sh	<i>shape</i>	Schatten
sp	shp	No equivalent	spielen
st	sh ^t	No equivalent	Sturm
	st	state	Last
tsch	tch	<i>snitch</i>	deutsch
v	f	father	Vater
	v	voice	Vase
w	v	vast	wichtig
z	ts	cats	Zeug

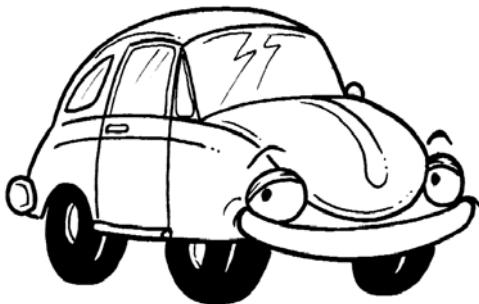
Practice Makes Perfect

Have you practiced all these new sounds? If you have, we are willing to bet that you have succeeded in making most if not all of the sounds you will need to pronounce German words correctly. Now, practice some more by reading the following sentences out loud.

German	English
Guten Tag, mein Name ist ...	Good day, my name is ...
Ich komme aus den Vereinigten Staaten.	I'm from the United States.
Ich spreche Englisch.	I speak English.
Ich habe gerade begonnen Deutsch zu lernen.	I just started to learn German.
Die Aussprache ist nicht so schwer.	The pronunciation isn't so difficult.
Deutsch ist eine schöne Sprache.	German is a beautiful language.

The Least You Need to Know

- With some exceptions, German consonants are pronounced like their English equivalents.
- German is a phonetic language, in that every letter represented in orthography will be heard in its pronunciation. So, once you link a letter with a sound, you can pronounce a word 18 syllables long!
- Read whatever you can get your hands on that has been written in German; remember that the Internet is an invaluable resource for this! What seems peculiar in written German will soon become familiar to you, and soon—particularly if you listen to the German being spoken on a tape or by a native speaker—you will begin to associate letters with their corresponding sounds.
- Speaking of the Internet, there exist numerous Web sites that offer pronunciation guides using breakthrough software. Just click on a sound or word and hear it produced.



You Know More Than You Think

In This Chapter

- Cognates will help you understand German
- German words in the English language
- Beware of false friends

Chances are, you've been speaking German for years without even knowing it! *Kitsch*, *Wind*, *Mensch*, *Angst*, *Arm*, *blond*, *irrational*—the list of German words you already know is longer than you think. The reason you know so much German is because many words in German are similar to or exactly like their English counterparts. These words are called cognates. In addition, many German words have been used so much by English speakers that they have been swallowed whole, so to speak, into the English language to become a part of our vocabulary. Many other German words are so similar to English words that you can master their meanings and pronunciations with little effort. By the end of this chapter, you should be able to put together simple but meaningful sentences in German.

Cognates: What You Already Know Can Help You

You've been invited to an art opening by an artist-friend you haven't seen in years. She has been living and teaching in Berlin for as long as you can remember, and so you are surprised when you find the invitation in your mailbox. You have a thousand questions you want to ask her. What has it been like living in Berlin? Has she learned to speak German yet?



What's What?

Cognates Words in German that are similar to (near cognates) or exactly like (perfect cognates) their English counterparts—similar in form and in meaning.

When the day of the show arrives, you go to the address on the invitation. Shortly after you push the door open and step into a noisy, crowded room, you conclude that something must be wrong. Everyone around you is speaking in tongues. Just as you are about to turn and leave, your friend pushes through the crowd and grabs you by the arm. You have not, she assures you, been kidnapped, drugged, and carried in someone's luggage to Berlin. You are in the right place. Almost all of her admirers are Berliners, she explains, and what you are hearing is German.

You stay close to your friend all night. You listen to the conversations she carries on with other people—*auf Deutsch* (*ouf doytsh*). What surprises you most is not how well your friend speaks the language—it's

how well you, having as little knowledge of it as you do, understand what is being said. You are able to pick up on certain words: *interessantes Objekt*, *gute Freundin*, *phantastische Party*, *modern*, *blau*, *braun*. Clearly, a new language—a hybrid, perhaps, of German and English—is being spoken, possibly even invented by this sophisticated crowd. How else would you be able to make sense of so many words?

The fact is, German and English are not just kissing cousins—they're sisters. Both languages like to borrow words from the same places—namely, Greek, Latin, and other Romance languages. Because both English and German are members of the Germanic family of languages, they share a lot of “genetic material”—cognates, for one thing. Another readily visible similarity is their word-building strategies—that is to say, add a little something to a noun or verb to make it an adjective: *child + ish = childish* in English; likewise, *Kind + isch = kindisch* auf Deutsch! But back to words that have the same meaning and similar form—the really great part about cognates is that they have the same meanings in German and in English. Pronunciation does vary, of course, but most of the time, these words are familiar to us. And don't forget the American influence on Germany. Since the late '40s, thanks to postwar reconstruction and increasing globalization, the German language has taken many words from English without changing them at all, for example, *team*, *fitness center*, *aerobics*, *style*, and *camping*.

Perfect Cognates: Identical Twins

The following table lists by article *perfect cognates*—words that are exactly the same in English and German. If you really want to get ahead of the game, use the pronunciation guide in Chapter 2, “Hitting the Books,” to pronounce these words the way a German would.



As a Rule

In English, we have only one definite article, indicating specificity—a certain something is familiar and recognized in the referred to situation: *the*. German has three definite articles:

- *der* is for masculine singular nouns
- *die* is for feminine singular nouns
- *das* is for neuter singular nouns

We call this *grammatical gender*, as opposed to *biological gender*, because the noun following the article doesn't have to represent something male, female, or sexless. *Mädchen* (*mäht-Huhn*), for example, which means girl, takes the neuter article *das*. Grammatical gender is arbitrary—unpredictable, in fact!

Remember: In German all nouns are capitalized.

(Nouns and their definite articles are explained in greater detail in Chapter 7, "Joy of Gender.")

Perfect Cognates

Adjectives	<i>Der</i>	<i>Die</i>	<i>Das</i>
ambulant <i>Am-boo-lAnt</i>	Alligator <i>A-li-gah-toR</i>	Adaptation <i>A-dAp-tA-tsion</i> Chaos <i>kah-os</i>	Auto <i>ou-to</i>
blond <i>blont</i>	Arm <i>ARm</i>	Bank <i>bAnk</i>	Element <i>eh-leh-ment</i>
elegant <i>e-le-gAnt</i>	Bandit <i>bAn-deet</i>	Basis <i>bah-zis</i>	Folk <i>folk</i>
formal <i>foR-mahl</i>	Bus <i>boos</i>	Hand <i>hAnt</i>	Hotel <i>hoh-tel</i>

continues

Perfect Cognates (continued)

Adjectives		Nouns	
	<i>Der</i>	<i>Die</i>	<i>Das</i>
international <i>in-teR-nA-tsio-nahl</i>	Café <i>kA-fe</i>	Inspiration <i>een-spee-RA-tsion</i>	Museum <i>mew-zey-oom</i>
irrational <i>ee-RA-tsio-nahl</i>	Chef <i>shef</i>	Isolation <i>ee-zo-lA-tsion</i>	Nest <i>nest</i>
	Film <i>film</i>		
irrelevant <i>ee-Re-le-vAnt</i>	Hamburger <i>hAm-boor-guhr</i>	Negation <i>ney-gA-tsion</i>	Optimum <i>op-tee-moom</i>
modern <i>moh-deRn</i>	Jaguar <i>yah-gooahr</i>	Olive <i>ohlee-vuh</i>	Organ <i>oR-gahn</i>
nonstop <i>non-shtop mA</i>	Moment <i>moh-ment</i>	Pause <i>pou-suh</i>	Panorama <i>pA-no-Rah-</i>
parallel <i>pA-rA-lehl</i>	Motor <i>moh-tohr</i>	Religion <i>rey-lee-geeohn</i>	Photo <i>foh-to</i>
permanent <i>peR-mA-nent</i>	Name <i>nah-muh</i>	Situation <i>zee-too-A-tseeohn</i>	Pseudonym <i>psoy-doh-ühm</i>
total <i>toh-tahl</i>	President <i>pRey-zee-dent</i>	Tiger <i>ee-guhr</i>	System <i>süs-teym</i>
warm <i>vahRm</i>	Wind <i>vint</i>	Taxi <i>ta-xee</i>	
wild <i>vilt</i>	Tennis <i>ten-is</i>		

How Much Do You Understand Already?

Now you could probably go back to your friend's art opening, or to some other gathering of Germans, and carry on a simple conversation in German (with a very patient German). Let's imagine that you are walking arm in arm with an attractive German beau or belle and making comments about the subject matter of the paintings. How do we recommend that you practice pronouncing these new words? If you haven't already developed the habit of talking to yourself, start talking now. (Note: *Ist* expresses *is* in German.)

Example: You might say of a painting of a tiger in a jungle ...

Tiger/wild: *Der Tiger ist wild.*

1. You might say of a painting of a cowboy in the Wild West ...
Bandit/blond
2. You might say of a painting of the inside of a futuristic bank ...
Bank/modern
3. You might say of a painting of George Washington ...
President/elegant
4. You might say of the breeze coming in through the open window of the art gallery ...
Wind/warm
5. You might say of an abstract-expressionistic piece of art hung upside down ...
Chaos/irrational

*Did you remember to lead your noun with the grammatically correct form of the? (*der*, *die*, *das*!)

Close, but No Cigar

The following table lists *near cognates*, words that are spelled almost—but not quite—the same in English and German. Although their spellings differ, their meanings are the same. Now would be a good time to recall the consonant shift that led to the separation and distinction of English from German. Consider, for example, the correspondence between the German *t* and English *d*. There's *taub* for “deaf,” *tief* for “deep,” *die Flut* for “flood,” *Bett* for “bed,” *hart* for “hard.” If you vocalize both sounds, you will realize that both *t* and *d* are made in the same location in the mouth, in the same manner—the only difference is the utilization of the vocal cords. Practice pronouncing the German words correctly. Don't forget to gargle those *CHs* and *Rs*!

Near Cognates

Adjectives	<i>Der</i>	<i>Die</i>	<i>Das</i>
akademisch <i>AkA-dey-mish</i>	Aspekt <i>As-pekt</i>	Adresse <i>A-dRe-suh</i>	Adjektiv <i>Ad-yek-teef</i>
akustisch <i>Akoos-tish</i>	Autor <i>ou-tohR</i>	Realität <i>Rey-ah-lee-tät</i>	Ballett <i>bA-let</i>
amerikanisch <i>Amey-Ree-kah-nish</i>	Bruder <i>bRew-duhR</i>	Bluse <i>blew-zuh</i>	Blut <i>blewt</i>
äquivalent <i>eh-kvee-vah-lent</i>	Charakter <i>kA-Rak-tuhR</i>	Energie <i>eh-neR-gee</i>	Buch <i>bewH</i>

continues

Near Cognates (continued)

Adjectives		Nouns	
	<i>Der</i>	<i>Die</i>	<i>Das</i>
attraktiv <i>AtRAk-teev</i>	Detektiv <i>de-tek-teef</i>	Existenz <i>ex-is-tents</i>	Ding <i>ding</i>
blau <i>blou</i>	Disput <i>dis-pewt</i>	Familie <i>fA-mee-lee-uh</i>	Ende <i>en-duh</i>
direkt <i>dee-Rekt</i>	Doktor <i>dook-tohr</i>	Gitarre <i>gee-tA-Ruh</i>	Glas <i>glahs</i>
dumm <i>doom</i>	Elefant <i>ele-fAnt</i>	Haare <i>hah-Ruh</i>	Gras <i>gRahs</i>
durstig <i>door-stiH</i>	Fuß <i>fews</i>	Jacke <i>yA-kuh</i>	Haus <i>hous</i>
frei <i>fRay</i>	Kaffee <i>kA-fey</i>	Kassette <i>kA-se-tuh</i>	Herz <i>heRts</i>
freundlich <i>froynt-liH</i>	Markt <i>mARkt</i>	Lampe <i>lAm-puh</i>	Licht <i>liHt</i>
gut <i>gewt</i>	Muskel <i>moos-kuhl</i>	Liste <i>lis-tuh</i>	Medikament <i>meh-dee-kah-ment</i>
	Nudel <i>Noo-duh</i>		
interessant <i>in-tuh-Re-sAnt</i>	Onkel <i>on-kuhl</i>	Logik <i>loh-gik</i>	Ding <i>ding</i>
jung <i>yoong</i>	Organismus <i>oR-gah-nis</i>	Medizin <i>meh-dee-tseen op-yekt</i>	Objekt <i>op-yekt</i>
-moos			
kalt <i>kAlt</i>	Ozean <i>ohtse-ahn</i>	Methode <i>me-toh-duh</i>	Papier <i>pah-peeR</i>
kompetent <i>koom-puh-tent</i>	Pfennig <i>pfe-nik</i>	Musik <i>moo-zeek</i>	Paradies <i>pA-RA-deez</i>
lang <i>lAng</i>	Preis <i>pRays</i>	Nationalität <i>nA-tseeo-nä-lee-tät</i>	Parfüm <i>pAR-füm</i>
mystisch <i>mühs-tish</i>	Salat <i>zA-laht</i>	Natur <i>nA-tewR</i>	Phänomen <i>fäh-noh-men</i>
	Nummer <i>Noo-muh</i>		
nervös <i>neR-vöhs</i>	Schock <i>shok</i>	Optik <i>op-tik</i>	Prinzip <i>pRin-tseep</i>
	Schuh <i>Schew</i>	Oper <i>O-puh</i>	

Adjectives	<i>Der</i>	<i>Die</i>	<i>Das</i>
passiv <i>pA-seef</i>	Skrupel <i>skRew-puhl</i>	Qualität <i>kvah-lee-tät</i>	Produkt <i>pRoh-dookt</i>
perfekt <i>peR-fekt</i>	Stamm <i>shtAm</i>	Rhetorik <i>Reh-toh-Rik</i>	Programm <i>pRo-gRAm</i>
platonisch <i>plah-toh-nish</i>	Strom <i>shtRom</i>	Skulptur <i>skoOl-p-tewr</i>	Resultat <i>Reh-zool-taht</i>
populär <i>poh-pew-lähr</i>	Supermarkt <i>zew-peR-maRkt</i>	Theorie <i>te-oh-Ree</i>	Salz <i>zAlts</i>
primitiv <i>pRee-mee-teef</i>	Wein <i>vayn</i>	Tomate <i>toh-mah-tuh</i>	Schiff <i>shif</i>
sozial <i>zoh-tsee-ahl</i>	Wille <i>vi-luh</i>	Universität <i>Ew-nee-veR-zee-tät</i>	Skelett <i>skeh-let</i>
sportlich <i>shpoRt-liH</i>	Zickzack <i>tsik-tsAk</i>	Walnuß <i>wAl-noos</i>	Telefon <i>teh-luh-fohn</i>
tropisch <i>tRo-pish</i>			
typisch <i>tüP-ish</i>			
weis <i>veis</i>		Warnung <i>VaR-noong</i>	Zentrum <i>tsen-tRoom</i>

What Do You Think?

You have just boarded a sleeper train from Köln to München. Only one other person is sharing your compartment, a very attractive traveler, you are pleased to see—who alternates between reading a book and staring dreamily out of the window. You were tired when you boarded the train, but now sleeping is the farthest thing from your mind. Use the adjective and noun cognates and near cognates you have learned to engage your neighbor in conversation.

1. The weather is good.
2. Is the book interesting?
3. The author is popular.
4. The perfume is attractive.
5. The wind is warm.

6. The character is primitive.
7. The heart is wild.
8. *The salt is white.

*You think to yourself, “Did I really mean to say that?”

Where the Action Is: Verb Cognates

It's time now to take a look at verb cognates in their infinitive forms. The *infinitive form* of a verb does not refer to a grammatical ghost that floats around in German sentences for all eternity. They end, and when they do, it is usually with an *-en*, as in the words *helfen* (*hel-fuhn*) “to help,” *lernen* (*leR-nuhn*) “to learn,” and *machen* (*mA-CHuhn*) “to do,” although sometimes an infinitive ends in a simple *-n*, as in *sammeln* (*zam-muhln*) “to collect.” (In English, *to be* is an infinitive.) The following table is a list of verbs that are near cognates in their infinitive form.

Verb Cognates

German	Pronunciation	English
backen	<i>bA-kuhn</i>	to bake
baden	<i>bah-duhn</i>	to bathe
beginnen	<i>buh-gi-nuhn</i>	to begin
binden	<i>bin-duhn</i>	to bind
brechen	<i>bRe-Huhn</i>	to break
bringen	<i>bRin-guhn</i>	to bring
finden	<i>fin-duhn</i>	to find
fühlen	<i>füh-luhn</i>	to feel
haben	<i>hah-buhn</i>	to have
halten	<i>hAhl-tuhn</i>	to hold
helfen	<i>hel-fuhn</i>	to help
kochen	<i>kO-Huhn</i>	to cook
kommen	<i>ko-muhn</i>	to come
können	<i>kö-nuhn</i>	can
kosten	<i>kos-tuhn</i>	to cost
machen	<i>mA-Huhn</i>	to make
müssen	<i>mü-suhn</i>	must
öffnen	<i>öf-nuhn</i>	to open
packen	<i>pA-kuhn</i>	to pack

German	Pronunciation	English
parken	<i>paR-kuhn</i>	to park
planen	<i>plah-nuhn</i>	to plan
reservieren	<i>Rey-zeR-vee-Ruhn</i>	to reserve
rollen	<i>Ro-luhn</i>	to roll
sagen	<i>zah-guhn</i>	to say
schwimmen	<i>shvi-muhn</i>	to swim
senden	<i>zen-duhn</i>	to send
singen	<i>zin-guhn</i>	to sing
sinken	<i>zin-kuhn</i>	to sink
stinken	<i>shtin-kuhn</i>	to stink
sitzen	<i>zi-tsuhn</i>	to sit
spinnen	<i>shpi-nuhn</i>	to spin
telefonieren	<i>tey-ley-foh-nee-Ruhn</i>	to telephone
trinken	<i>tRin-kuhn</i>	to drink

This Is Easy

This isn't so bad, is it? You can probably already read and understand the following fun and fanciful German sentences:

1. Der Präsident und der Bandit backen Tomaten.
*deyR pRä-zee-dent oont deyr bAn-deet bAk-uhm
toh-mah-tuhn*
2. Der Onkel trinkt Wein.
deyR on-kuhl tRinkt vayn
3. Der Tiger und der Elefant schwimmen in dem Ozean.
*deyR tee-guhR oont deyr ey-ley-fahnt shvi-muhn
in deym oh-tsey-ahn*
4. Der Film beginnt in einem Supermarkt.
deyR film buh-gint in ay-nuhm zu-peR-mArkt
5. "Religion oder Chaos? Ein modernes Problem," sagt der junge, intelligente Autor.
*Rey-lee-geeohn o-duhr kah-os? Ayn moh-deR-nuhs
pRo-bleym, zAkt deyR yoon-guh, in-tey-lee-gen-
tuh ou-toh*



What's What?

Infinitive form The unconjugated form of a verb. In German the infinitive form of verbs end in *-en* or, in some cases, simply *-n*. Verbs are listed in the dictionary in the infinitive form. The English equivalent is *to + verb*. We utilize this infinitive form when using helping verbs such as *had*.



Achtung

When you look up a verb in a dictionary, it's important that you look it up under its infinitive form—that is, under its unconjugated form—just as you would if you were looking up a verb in English. Otherwise, you'll have trouble finding the verb, because many German verbs change significantly (as do many English verbs) after they are conjugated, changed to reflect logical (grammatical) agreement with the subject, as in *I like; she likes*.

6. Das Baby liegt in den Armen der Mutter.
dAs bÄ-bee leegt in deyn AR-muhn deyR moo-tuhR
7. Mein Bruder hat eine Gitarre.
mayn bRew-duhR hAt ay-nuh gee-tA-Ruh
8. Der Aligator kostet \$10,000.
deyr ah-lee-gah-toR kos-tet \$10,000

False Friends

No shortcut is without its pitfalls. Now that you've mastered the art of using words you already know to figure out words in German you didn't know you knew, we must warn you about false friends, or *falsche Freunde* (*fAl-shuh fRoyn-duh*). In language as in life, false friends are misleading. What are false friends in language? They are words spelled the same or almost the same in German and in English that have different meanings. If you drink *Bier* (*beeR*) for two weeks straight at the Oktoberfest in München, for example, you may end up destroying your liver and lying on a *bier* shortly after your return to the United States. As you can see, these two words, which are spelled exactly the same, have totally different meanings. A word of caution: Cognates can be of help to you in

learning German, but false friends can trip you up. Don't assume you already know the meaning of *every* German word that looks like an English word. It's not always that simple. The following table lists some common false friends.

False Friends

English	Part of Speech	German	Part of Speech	Meaning
after	adverb	der* After <i>Af-tuhR</i>	noun	anus
also	adverb	also <i>Al-zoh</i>	conjunction	so, therefore
bald	adjective	bald <i>bAlt</i>	adverb	soon
blaze, blase	noun	die* Blase <i>blah-zuh</i>	noun	bladder, blister, or bubble
brief	adjective	der Brief <i>bReef</i>	noun	letter, official document

English	Part of Speech	German	Part of Speech	Meaning
chef	noun	der Chef <i>shef</i>	noun	boss
closet	noun	das* Klosett <i>kloh-zet</i>	noun	toilet bowl
gift	noun	der Gift <i>gift</i>	noun	poison
sympathetic	adjective	sympathisch <i>zYm-pah-tish</i>	adjective	nice
kind	adjective	das Kind <i>kint</i>	noun	child
knack	noun	der Knacker <i>knA-kuhR</i>	noun	old fogey
lusty	adjective	lustig <i>loos-tik</i>	adjective	funny
most	adjective	der Most <i>most</i>	noun	young wine
note	verb	die Note <i>noh-tuh</i>	noun	grade
see	verb	der See <i>zeY</i>	noun	lake
sin	noun	der Sinn <i>zin</i>	noun	sense

**der* is pronounced *deyR*, *die* is pronounced *dee*, and *das* is pronounced *dAs*

The Least You Need to Know

- By using cognates, you can express yourself in German with very little effort.
- Many German words and expressions are in use every day in English.
- Beware of false friends. Don't let them trick you into saying things you don't mean.

Part 2

Ready, Set, Go!

Now that you can pronounce German, it's time for some more vocabulary and a little structure. Even if you're not a glutton for grammar, a little reintroduction to some grammatical principles will take you a long way in sounding like a German. In this section of the book, you'll acquire not only the basics—nouns, verbs, sentence structure—but you'll also learn how to express yourself more colorfully.





Are Idiomatic Expressions for Idiots?

In This Chapter

- ▶ Idiomatic expressions
- ▶ Expressions of time, location, direction, and weather
- ▶ Expressions you can use to get your opinion across
- ▶ Saying it right with German sayings

It's raining cats and dogs, and you're bored to tears so you sit down to hit the books and study a little German. Today you're going to focus on common expressions in German, many of which are idioms. What are idioms? They are the peculiarities of a given language, and a lot can happen if you don't learn them.

Let's say you fall in love with a German politician and have a hasty wedding. He's anxious for you to meet his mother, and the two of you fly to Köln after your honeymoon. Unfortunately, he's called away suddenly on a top-secret mission. He arranges for you to have breakfast at the hotel with his mother the following morning. That night you're so worried about your *Mann* (*mAnn*) that you are unable to sleep. You read a few children's stories to yourself, something that has always soothed and relaxed you, and soon you fall asleep. The following morning at breakfast your mother-in-law asks you how you managed to get through the night without her son. You have a working knowledge of German, and you know that *Bett* (*bet*) means "bed" and that *Geschichte* (*guh-shih-tuh*) means "story," so you say, "*Mit einer Bettgeschichte.*" Your mother-in-law goes pale, rises from her chair and stumbles from the room. Without realizing it, you have used the German idiom for having a one-night stand.

What Are Idiomatic Expressions, Anyway?

The German expression for being lucky is *Schwein haben* (*shvayn hah-buhn*), which, literally translated, means “to have pig.” Don’t be too quick to take offense at something that sounds like an insult; it may be an idiomatic expression. *Idiomatic expressions* are speech forms or expressions that cannot be understood by literal translation—they must be learned and memorized along with their meanings. Most differ greatly from their English counterparts in meaning as well as in construction, but perhaps an even greater number differ only slightly. In English you say, “I’m going home.” In German you say, “*Ich gehe nach Hause*,” or “I’m going *to* home.” Because prepositions in general are idiomatic, it helps to learn them with certain expressions.

Idioms make a language colorful. Idiomatic expressions tend to be culturally specific because the lexical items a certain language relies on to express nonliteral meanings generally have significance in that culture. For example, the German expression *seinen Senf dazugeben* (*zain-uhn zenft da-tsU-gay-buhn*) literally means “to give his mustard to something.” Huh? Well, mustard *does* play a rather prominent culinary role in German, so take a guess. Exactly—it means to give one’s opinion—adding one’s *two cents*. After all, would you rather have some mustard to go along with your *Wurst*, or two pennies?

To help you get a clearer idea of what idiomatic expressions are, here are a few in English:

sell down the river	haul over the coals
let one’s hair down	put one’s foot in one’s mouth
snap out of it	bite your tongue
hit it off	eat your heart out

The following table lists some German idiomatic expressions that correspond, more or less, with their English equivalents.

Related German Idiomatic Expressions

Idiom	Pronunciation	Meaning
nicht in Frage kommen	<i>niHt in frah-guh ko-muhn</i>	to be out of the question
große Augen machen	<i>gRo-suh ou-guhn mA-Chuhn</i>	to be wide-eyed
vor die Hunde gehen	<i>for dee hun-duh gE-uhn</i>	to go to the dogs
Ende gut, alles gut	<i>en-duh gut A-luhs gut</i>	all’s well that ends well

More Idiomatic Expressions in German

You probably won't be using too much German slang at hotels and restaurants, but you will certainly find it useful to learn and memorize *idiomatic expressions*, which are expressions that cannot be literally translated without forfeiting some or all of their true meaning. As they tend to be frozen in form, they tend not to change, and hence are very much worth learning. You'll sound rather native and express yourself clearly by employing German idioms. The following table lists a few commonly used German idiomatic expressions, their corresponding English meanings, and their origins—the premise here being that knowing the source of these idioms will help you remember them.



What's What?

Idioms Fixed phrases whose meaning cannot be inferred from the meanings of the individual words. They tend to be frozen in form and thus do not readily enter into other combinations or allow the word order to change.

Common German Idiomatic Expressions

Idiom	Pronunciation	Meaning
reinen Tisch machen	<i>Ray-nuhn tiH mA-CHuhn</i>	to clear the air (Origin: The picture is of a table having been cleared of dishes—a “fresh start.”)
mit der Tür ins Haus fallen	<i>mit deyR tüR inz hous fA-luhn</i>	to come straight to the point (Origin: The picture is of someone in such a hurry to get into a house that he pushes the door off its hinges and then falls on top of it.)
jemandem auf den Zahn fühlen	<i>yeY-mand-uhm ouf deyn tsahn fih-luhn</i>	to give someone a grilling (Origin: By feeling a horse’s teeth, an expert can establish its age and value.)
nach Strich und Faden	<i>naH striH unt fah-duhn</i>	good and proper (Origin: from weaving, referring to the two directions of the thread—warp and woof.)
in die Binsen gehen	<i>in dee bin-zuhn gey-uhn</i>	to go up in smoke (Origin: a hunting term—a wild duck took refuge from the hunter by hiding in the rushes (Binsen) of a pond or lake.)

continues

Common German Idiomatic Expressions (continued)

Idiom	Pronunciation	Meaning
wie am Schnürchen laufen	<i>vee am schnüR-Hen lou-fuhn</i>	to go like clockwork (Origin: Die Schnur is the string from which a puppet is suspended and manipulated. Hence this idiom implies “perfect control.”)
den Bock zum Gärtner machen	<i>deyn bok tsum gäRt-nuh mA-CHuhn</i>	to be asking for trouble (Origin: The picture is of a goat given freedom to roam in a well-tended garden. The goat’s owner is obviously asking for trouble, since goats will eat garden plants and trample on flower beds.)

Off You Go

Let’s say you live in Wisconsin and you’re going away for the weekend to your parents’ farm in Vancouver, Canada. One of your new German friends (who doesn’t speak any English) asks you how you’re getting there. You are at a loss for words. The truth is that you’ll be traveling by plane to Vancouver, then by car from the airport to the lake on the other side of your parents’ house, and then you’ll be traveling by boat across the lake to the dock where a horse will be waiting for you, which you will then ride to the house—but how in the world are you going to start explaining this? What you need are some expressions for travel and transportation. Look at the following table for some suggestions.

Expressions for Travel and Transportation

Expression	Pronunciation	Meaning
mit dem Bus	<i>mit deym boos</i>	by bus
mit dem Fahrrad	<i>mit deym fah-RAt</i>	by bicycle
mit dem Flugzeug	<i>mit deym flewk-tsoyk</i>	by plane
mit dem Motorrad	<i>mit deym moh-toh-RAt</i>	by motorcycle
mit dem Schiff	<i>mit deym shif</i>	by boat
mit der Straßenbahn	<i>mit deyr shtraH-suhnbahn</i>	by streetcar
mit dem Zug	<i>mit deym tsewk</i>	by train
mit den Rollerblades	<i>mit deyn Rol-luhR-blazdz</i>	by rollerblades
mit der U-Bahn	<i>mit deyR ew-bahn</i>	by subway
mit einem Auto	<i>mit ay-nuhm ou-toh</i>	by car

Expression	Pronunciation	Meaning
mit einem Pferd/zu Pferd zu Fuß	<i>mit ay-nuhm pfeRt/tsew pfeRt tsew fews</i>	on a horse by foot

Putting Your Expressions to Use I (or How to Get There from Here)

Now it's time to practice what you've learned. Use the preceding table to fill in the blanks of the following sentences with the correct German expressions.

1. Ich fahre _____ von Wisconsin nach Vancouver. (I travel _____ from Wisconsin to Vancouver.)
2. Ich fahre _____ vom Flughafen zum See. (I travel _____ from the airport to the lake.)
Ich fahre _____ über den See. (I go _____ over the lake.)
4. Ich reite _____ zum Hause meiner Eltern. (I ride _____ to my parents' house.)
5. Ich gehe _____ an die Universität. (I walk _____ to the university.)



Culture Shock

Literally translated, the German slang expression *Das ist mir Wurst* (*dAs ist meeR vooRst*) means "That's sausage to me." Although a great many Germans appear to love their sausage, this expression is used to show indifference. The idiomatic equivalent is *Das ist mir egal* (*das ist meeR ey-gahl*), which means "It's the same to me."

It's Time To ...

We've all benefited from—and suffered from—the vagaries of time expressions. What do people mean when they say, "I'll see you soon," or "I'll see you later"? It's hard to say. Sometimes it means tomorrow, sometimes in 10 years. Many time expressions have a wide range of interpretations, whereas others are more grounded and specific. The following table has a few time expressions you should know.

Time Expressions

Expression	Pronunciation	Meaning
am Ende von	<i>m en-duh fon</i>	at the end of
auf Wiedersehen	<i>ouf vee-deR-zey-huhn</i>	goodbye

continues

Time Expressions (continued)

Expression	Pronunciation	Meaning
bis bald	<i>bis bAlt</i>	see you soon
bis heute Abend	<i>bis hoy-tuh ah-buhnt</i>	see you this evening
bis Morgen	<i>bis moR-guhn</i>	see you tomorrow
bis später	<i>bis shpäh-tuhR</i>	see you later
(zu) früh	<i>(tsew) fRüh</i>	(too) early
früher	<i>fRüh-uhR</i>	earlier
(zu) spät	<i>(tsew) shpäht</i>	(too) late
später	<i>shpäh-tuhR</i>	later
gleichzeitig	<i>glayH-tsay-tiH</i>	simultaneously
guten Tag/Abend	<i>gew-tuhn tahk/ah-buhnt</i>	good day/evening
hallo	<i>hA-loh</i>	Hello
heute	<i>hoy-tuh</i>	today
in einer Weile	<i>in ay-nuhR vay-luh</i>	in a while
jeden Tag	<i>yay-duhn tAk</i>	every day
jetzt	<i>yetst</i>	now
monatlich	<i>moh-nAt-liH</i>	monthly
plötzlich	<i>plöts-liH</i>	suddenly
pünktlich	<i>pükt-liH</i>	punctually
regelmäßig	<i>rey-guhl-mäh-siH</i>	regularly
sofort	<i>zoh-foRt</i>	immediately
täglich	<i>tähk-liH</i>	daily
von morgens bis abends	<i>fon moR-guhns bis ah-buhnts</i>	from morning till night
von Tag zu Tag	<i>fon tahk tsew tahk</i>	from day to day
von Zeit zu Zeit	<i>fon tsayt tsew tsayt</i>	from time to time
wöchentlich	<i>vö-Hent-liH</i>	weekly
zur gleichen Zeit	<i>tsewR glay-Huhn tsayt</i>	at the same time

Putting Your Expressions to Use II (or What Time Is It?)

What German idioms of time would you use in the following situations?

- When your partner leaves on a business trip for the weekend, you say:
- When you say goodbye to a friend you will be seeing later that evening, you say:
- If the movie begins at 5 P.M. and you arrive at 5 P.M., you arrive:

4. If the movie begins at 5 P.M. and you arrive at 7 P.M., you arrive:
5. If the movie begins at 5 P.M. and you arrive at 4 P.M., you arrive:
6. If you watch TV every now and then, you watch it:
7. You should brush your teeth:
8. If you follow a ritual every Friday:

Go Left, Right, Straight, and Then Left Again

Some of the most useful vocabulary you can learn, particularly if you plan to travel through Germany, are the words for expressing location and direction. To use many of these expressions, you need to know about cases in German (see Chapter 9, “Click Your Heels Together and Say: There’s No Place Like Deutschland”). The following table focuses on simple terms to help you get to wherever you’re going.

Expressions Showing Location and Direction

Expression	Pronunciation	Meaning
Draußen	<i>dRou-suhn</i>	outdoors
entlang	<i>ent-lAng</i>	along
gegenüber	<i>ge-geyn-ü-buhR</i>	opposite, facing
geradeaus	<i>gey-Rah-duh-ous</i>	straight ahead
hinter	<i>hin-tuhR</i>	behind
(nach) links	<i>(nACH) links</i>	(to the) left
(nach) rechts	<i>(nACH) ReHts</i>	(to the) right
neben	<i>ney-buhn</i>	beside
seitlich	<i>zayt-liH</i>	at the side
über	<i>iuh-buhR</i>	over, across
unter	<i>oon-tuhR</i>	beneath, below, under
vor	<i>fohr</i>	in front of

Putting Your Expressions to Use III (or Just Getting There in One Piece)

Now you can get anywhere, right? Here’s a simplified map of a street. See if you can fill in the blanks correctly by following directions in German.

Getting around on a German street.

**der
Spielplatz**



die Post



das Café

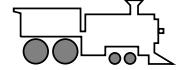


die Bäckerei



der Parkplatz

der Bahnhof



das Hotel



das Museum



Example: Rechts neben dem Café ist die Bäckerei.

1. Gegenüber der Post ist _____.
2. Vor dem Museum ist _____.
3. Links neben dem Hotel ist _____.
4. Hinter dem Café ist _____.
5. Die Bäckerei ist gegenüber _____.

So, What Do You Think?

Opinions—who doesn't have them? Some of us seem to have more of them than most people. Why? We express them. We tell you how the food tastes. We tell you whether we liked the movie. We tell you what we think of the government in our country and of the governments in other countries and of governments that don't even exist yet but should. Now it's your turn: Express yourself—*auf Deutsch, bitte (ouf doytch, bi-tuh)*. (See the following table.)

Expressing Your Opinions

Expression	Pronunciation	Meaning
Mir geht es ähnlich.	<i>Meer geyt es ähm-liH.</i>	I feel similarly.
bestimmt	<i>buh-shtimt</i>	certainly
Das ist mir egal.	<i>dAs ist meeR ey-gahl</i>	That's all the same to me.
Das macht nichts.	<i>dAs maHt niHts</i>	It doesn't matter.
genau	<i>guh-nou</i>	exactly
Ich habe keine Ahnung.	<i>iH hA-buh kay-nuh ah-noong</i>	I have no idea.
Ich weiß nicht.	<i>iH vays niHt</i>	I don't know.
natürlich	<i>nah-tüR-liH</i>	of course
offensichtlich/klar/ einleuchtend	<i>of-en-siHt-liH/klAR/ ayn-loyH-tend</i>	obviously
ohne Zweifel/zweifellos	<i>oh-nuh tsvay-fuhl/ tsvay-fuhl-lohs</i>	without a doubt; doubtless
Du/Sie hast/haben recht.	<i>Dew/zee hAst/ hah-buhn ReHt.</i>	You are right.
Selbstverständlich	<i>selbst-feR-shtänt-liH</i>	self-evident
Das ist falsch.	<i>dAs ist fAlsh</i>	That is wrong.
Das ist viel besser.	<i>dAs ist feel be-suHr</i>	That's much better.
Das ist völlig richtig.	<i>dAs ist fö-liH riH-giH</i>	That's entirely right.
Das finde ich gut/schlecht.	<i>dAs fin-duh iH gewt/shleHt</i>	That's good/bad.
Das ist eine tolle/ schlechte Idee.	<i>dAs ist ay-nuh to-luh/shleH-tuh ee-dey</i>	That's a good/bad idea.
danke	<i>dAn-kuh</i>	Thanks.
keine Ursache	<i>kay-nuh ooR-zah-CHuh</i>	No need. (no problem)

Putting Your Expressions to Use IV (or What's Your Opinion?)

Imagine this: You're spending the weekend with a friend. She (or he) suggests ways for the two of you to spend the afternoon. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate German suggestions and the English meanings.

Your friend: Heute scheint ein schöner Tag zu sein. Denkst du dass es regnen wird? (Today looks like a beautiful day. Do you think it will rain?)

You: _____. Ich habe den Wetterbericht nicht gelesen.
(_____. I haven't read the weather report today.)

Your friend: Hast du Lust heute Nachmittag schwimmen zu gehen? (Do you feel like going swimming this afternoon?)

You: _____. Ich schwimme gern! (_____.
I love swimming!)

Your friend: Vielleicht sollten wir zunächst den Wetterbericht lesen. Das Wetter könnte sich ändern. (Maybe we should read the weather forecast first. The weather may change.)

You: _____. Das ist mir schon oft passiert.
(_____. It's happened to me before.)

Your friend: Welche Zeitung sollen wir kaufen? (Which newspaper should we buy?)

You: _____. Ich glaube in jeder Zeitung finden wir einen Wetterbericht. (_____. I think that we can find a weather report in any newspaper.)

Your friend: Gehen wir ins Kino? (Should we go to a movie?)

You: _____. Ich will den neusten Arnold Schwarzenegger Film sehen!

How Do You Feel?

Many physical and emotional conditions in German can be expressed with the verb *sein* (zayn), which means "to be," just as they would be in English: I am sad, I am happy, and so on. To express many other conditions, however, you must use the verb *haben* (hA-buhn) "to have." For example, in German you would say *Ich habe Angst* (iH hah-buh Angst); literally, "I have fear." To express certain physical conditions, you can use both *sein* and *haben*. It's important to memorize the German expressions that clearly deviate from the English ones, as you might create an embarrassing misunderstanding otherwise. Feelings that are expressed with the verb *haben* are followed by a noun. Feelings that are expressed with the verb *sein* are followed by an adjective. Chapter 9 discusses these verbs and how their form changes to *agree* with the subject. For now, concentrate on expressing how *you* feel: *ich bin* (iH bin) for expressions with *sein*; *ich habe* (iH hah-buh) for expressions with *haben*. (See the following table.)

Physical Conditions

Expression	Pronunciation	Meaning
... Jahre alt sein	<i>... yah-Ruh Alt zayn</i>	to be ... years old
Angst haben (vor)	<i>Ankst hah-buhn (foR)</i>	to be afraid (of)
ärgerlich sein	<i>äR-guhR-liH zayn</i>	to be angry
beleidigt sein	<i>buh-lay-diHt zayn</i>	to be offended
beschämkt sein	<i>buh-shämkt zayn</i>	to be ashamed (of)
besorgt sein/Sorgen haben	<i>buh-zoRkt zayn/zoR-guhn hah-buhn</i>	to be worried/to have worries
durstig sein/Durst haben	<i>dooR-stiH zayn/dooRst hah-buhn</i>	to be thirsty
fertig sein	<i>feeR-tiH zayn</i>	to be finished
fit sein	<i>fit zayn</i>	to be in shape
glücklich sein	<i>glük-liH zayn</i>	to be happy
häßlich sein	<i>häs-liH zayn</i>	to be ugly
hungrig sein/Hunger haben	<i>hun-griH zayn/hun-guhR hA-buhn</i>	to be hungry
Mir ist kalt.	<i>meeR ist kAlt</i>	I am cold.
Mir ist heiß.	<i>meeR ist hayS</i>	I am hot.
müde sein	<i>müh-duh zayn</i>	to be tired
schlapp sein	<i>schlAp zayn</i>	to be worn out
Schmerzen haben	<i>shmeR-tsuhn hah-buhn</i>	to have an ache, to be in pain
schön sein	<i>shöhn zayn</i>	to be beautiful
traurig sein	<i>tRou-RiH zayn</i>	to be sad
verliebt sein	<i>feR-leepT zayn</i>	to be in love

Putting Your Expressions to Use V (or How Are You?)

Express how you feel, using the expressions in the preceding table.

1. Ich bin _____. (I am tired.)
2. Mir ist _____. (I am cold.)
3. Sie weint. Sie ist _____. (She cries. She is sad.)
4. Ich bin _____, daß das Wetter gut ist. (I'm happy that the weather is good.)



Achtung

If you say, “I am hot” in German, you are certain to be misunderstood. *Ich bin heiß* (*iH bin hays*) expresses the speaker’s level of sexual arousal. To express that you are hot physically, you would say, *Mir ist heiß*” (*meeR ist hays*)—literally, “It’s hot to me.”

5. Mein Magen knurrt. Ich bin _____. (My stomach is growling. I’m hungry.)
6. Ich bin _____. (I’m in love.)
7. Ich kann nicht mehr! Ich bin _____ (I just can’t do anymore! I’m finished.)
8. Ich trainiere jeden Tag und mache Bodybuilding. Ich _____. (I train every day and do bodybuilding. I am in shape.)

Saying the Right Thing

You know the saying “The early bird gets the worm.” Do you know what it means? Neither do I. Still, sayings are everywhere in language, embodying familiar truths and generally accepted beliefs in colorful, expressive language. Here are a few German sayings and their English counterparts.

Sayings

German Saying	Pronunciation	English Equivalent
Wer zuerst kommt, mahlt zuerst.	veyR tsew-eRst komt, mahlt tsew-eRst	The early bird gets the worm.
Was ich nicht weis, macht mich nicht heiß.	vas iH niHt vays, mAHT miH niHt hays	What I don’t know can’t hurt me.
Wer zuletzt lacht, lacht am Besten.	veyR tsew-letst lAHt, lAHt Am bes-tuhn	He who laughs last, laughs best.
Wer lügt, der stiehlt.	veyR lühkt, deyR shteekt	He who lies, steals.
Iss, was gar ist, trink, was klar ist, sprich was wahr ist.	is, vAs gahR ist, tRink, vAs klahR ist, shpriH vAs vahR ist	Eat what is cooked, drink what is clear, speak what is true.
Ein Unglück kommt selten allein.	ain un-gliük kOmt zel-tuhn uh-layn	It never rains, but it pours.
Wer wagt, gewinnt.	VeR vAkt, guh-vint	Nothing ventured, nothing gained.
Kommt Zeit, kommt Rat.	komt tsait, komt Rat	Time will tell.

The Least You Need to Know

- Every language has idiomatic expressions that are specific to it. Such colorful expressions help personalize and individualize a language—rendering it culture-specific.
- Certain terms, phrases, and expressions in German will be useful when you want to express location or direction.
- The verbs with the highest frequency in both English and German are “to have” and “to be.” Start learning them and express your opinions and feelings.
- When you use popular sayings, don’t translate from English to German. Although the sense may be the same in both languages, they use different words. Your best bet is to learn these sayings and be proud to sound like a real German!



Joy of Gender

In This Chapter

- How to determine the sex of words
- Sex changes
- Pluralities

Think a girl is female (*das Mädchen*)? Think your female baby-sitter is female (*der Babysitter*)? Think your infant girl is female (*der Säugling*)? Not to a German. In this chapter you'll learn everything you need to know about the sex of German nouns.

Determining Gender: Is It a Girl or a Boy—or Is It Neuter?

If you have taken any French or Spanish, you have already dealt with nouns that have two genders. In German it's more complex: German nouns have *three* distinct genders. Believe it or not, the English language used to share this fixation on gender with its German cousin. But very early on, even before Chaucer was writing his bawdy *Canterbury Tales*, English speakers were quite politically correct. We began referring to everything as a genderless *the*. If you've been reading this book carefully, you've probably already noticed that German nouns are preceded by three distinct *definite articles*: the



What's What?

Definite article The masculine (*der*), feminine (*die*), or neuter (*das*) article that precedes German nouns and corresponds with “the” in English. Unlike the English *the*, these articles show the gender and number of a noun, but both English and German definite articles indicate specificity.

masculine article *der* (*deyR*), the feminine article *die* (*dee*), or the neuter article *das* (*dAs*). All plural nouns are preceded by the plural article *die* (*dee*).

Although the natural, or biological, gender of the noun and the grammatical gender of the definite article may work the way you’d expect them to—*Herr* (*heR*), for example, the noun for “man,” takes the masculine article *der* (*deyR*)—determining gender can be tricky. Grammatical gender is arbitrary, unpredictable—basically, a matter of rote memorization.

Don’t expect to get the article for a noun just by looking at it. Walk on the noun, shake it, turn it upside down, throw it against the wall and still you will be no closer to uncovering its gender. (It would, of course, be quicker and more effective to look up the noun in a dictionary; masculine nouns are followed by *m.*, feminine nouns by *f.*, and neuter nouns by *n.*) Scholars have come up with many theories about why some nouns take certain definite articles, but the truth is that in German there are no simple rules or explanations for determining gender.

Why is the meat you eat at dinner neuter (*das Fleisch*), the potato feminine (*die Kartoffel*), and the cauliflower masculine (*der Rosenkohl*)? Your guess is as good as ours.

The only fail-safe way of ensuring that you are about to use the correct gender of a German noun is to learn the gender and plural of a noun along with the noun itself. The gender of a noun affects its relationship to other words in a sentence, and if you learn the definite articles along with the nouns, it will be easier for you to form sentences correctly later. Nevertheless, a few tricks can help you determine the gender of certain nouns as well as alter the gender of certain other nouns, as in English when you change the word *waiter* to *waitress*. We’ll share them with you later in this chapter. Keep reading!

Absolutely, Definitely Definite Articles

Before you get into German nouns, you must take into account one little diversion: the noun marker that precedes most singular nouns. We use the term *noun marker* to refer to an article or adjective—something that indicates the gender of the noun—whether it is masculine (m.), feminine (f.), neuter (n.), singular (s.), or plural (p.) The most common noun markers, shown in the following table, are definite articles expressing “the” and indefinite articles expressing “a,” “an,” or “one.”

Singular Noun Markers

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
the	der	die	das
one, a, an	ein	eine	ein



As a Rule

The noun marker for plural nouns (*die*) should not be confused with the feminine singular definite article (*die*). Although on the surface they share the same form (as you'll find with several grammatical forms in German), their function is different. Because of this homophony in form, only the singular noun markers (*der, die, das*) clearly indicate the grammatical gender of a noun.

Singular Nouns

The nouns in the following table are easy to remember. An obvious correspondence exists between the grammatical gender of the noun marker and the natural, biological gender of the noun. Even the different types of mothers remain predictably feminine, while the different types of fathers are masculine in gender. Later in this chapter, you'll learn how to predict the gender of compound nouns. But for now, become acquainted with family terms.

Gender-Obvious Nouns

Masculine			Feminine		
Noun	Pronunciation	English	Noun	Pronunciation	English
der Bruder	deyR bRew-duhR	the brother	die Schwester	dee shves-tuhR	the sister
der Kousin	deyR koo-zin	the cousin	die Kousine	dee koo-zee-nuh	the cousin
der Freund	deyR fRoynt	the friend	die Freundin	dee froyn-din	the friend
der Onkel	deyR on-kuhl	the uncle	die Tante	dee tAn-tuh	the aunt

continues

Gender-Obvious Nouns (continued)

Masculine Noun	Pronunciation	English	Feminine Noun	Pronunciation	English
der Opa	deyR oh-pah	the grandfather	die Oma	dee oh-mah	the grandmother
der Vater	deyR fah-tuhR	the father	die Mutter	dee moo-tuhR	the mother
der Stiefvater	deyR shteef-fah-tuhR	the step-father	die Stiefmutter	dee shteef-moo-tuhR	the step-mother
der Schwieger-mutter	deyR shvee-guhR-moo-tuhR	mother-in-law	die Schwieger-vater	dee shvee-guhR-vater	father-in-law
ein Mann	ayn mAn	the man	eine Frau	ay-nuh fRou	the woman
ein Sohn	ayn zohn	the son	eine Tochter	ay-nuh toCH-tuhR	the daughter



As a Rule

Nouns referring to male persons, their professions, and their nationalities—*der Deutsche* (deyR doy-tschuh)—are clearly masculine. Most nouns ending in **-en** are also masculine—*der Garten* (deYr gahR-tuhn)—as are the names of all seasons, months, days of the week, and most times of the day—*der Montag* (deyR mohn-tahk), *der Januar* (deyR yah-new-ahR), *der Sommer* (deyR zo-muhR), and so on.

Even in a world where hardly anything is what it seems, you can still determine the gender of certain kinds of nouns even if you haven't memorized their definite articles. For example, nouns referring to male persons (*der Mann*, *der Sohn*), nouns of professions ending in **-er**, **-or**, **-ler**, or **-ner** (*der Pastor*, *der Bäcker*), and most nouns referring to male animals of a species (*der Fuchs*, *der Löwe*) take the article *der*. But don't worry about gender equality, as you'll soon learn a sure-fire way to effeminate masculine persons and animals! The following tables group endings that will help you to identify the gender of nouns.

Masculine Nouns

Masculine Endings	Example	Pronunciation	English Meaning
-ich	der Strich	deyR shtRiH	the line
-ig	der Honig	deyR hoh-niH	the honey
-ing	der Ring	deyR Ring	the ring
-ling	der Sträfling	deyR shtRähf-ling	the prisoner

Exception: das Ding (*dAs ding*), the thing

Even if you aren't a botanist, it may be helpful to keep in mind that most trees and flowers take the feminine article: *die Tulpe* (*dee tool-puh*), *die Rose* (*dee Roh-suh*), *die Eiche* (*dee ay-Huh*). Generally, two-syllable nouns ending in -e, such as *Sonne* (*zo-nuh*) and *Blume* (*blew-muh*), take the feminine article *die*.

Feminine Nouns

Feminine Endings	Example	Pronunciation	English Meaning
-ei	die Malerei	dee mah-ley-Ray	the painting
-heit	die Gesundheit	dee gey-soont-hayt	the health
-keit	die Leichtigkeit	dee layH-tiH-kayt	the lightness
-schaft	die Gesellschaft	dee gey-zel-shAft	the company
-ung	die Wanderung	dee vAn-dey-Rung	the walking tour

Das Berlin, *das Deutschland*, *das Paris*—countries, towns, and cities all take the neuter article *das*. So do the letters of the alphabet: *das A*, *das B*, *das C*, *das D*, and so on. So will most “borrowed” words: *das Hotel*, *das Poster*, and so on.

Neuter Nouns

Neuter Endings	Example	Pronunciation	English Meaning
-lein	das Büchlein	dAs büCH-layn	the little book
-chen	das Kätzchen	dAs käts-Huhn	the kitty
-nis	das Ergebnis	dAs eR-gep-nis	the result
-tel	das Drittel	dAs dRi-tuhl	the third
-tum	das Eigentum	dAs ay-gehn-tewm	the property

Exceptions: *der Irrtum* (*deyR iR-tewm*) “the error,” *der Reichtum* (*deyR RayH-tewm*) “the wealth,” *die Erlaubnis* (*dee eR-loup-nis*) “the permission,” and *die Erkenntnis* (*dee eR-kent-nis*) “the knowledge.”

Certain German nouns never change gender, regardless of whether they refer to a male or a female person or animal. Here are a few of them.

German	Pronunciation	English
das Kind	<i>dAs kint</i>	the child
das Model	<i>dAs moh-del</i>	the model
das Individuum	<i>dAs in-dee-vee-doo-oom</i>	the individual
der Flüchtling	<i>deyR flüHt-ling</i>	the refugee
das Opfer	<i>dAs op-feR</i>	the victim
das Genie	<i>dAs jey-nee</i>	the genius
die Person	<i>dee peR-zohn</i>	the person

In most cases making nouns feminine is as easy as dropping the vowel (if the noun ends in a vowel), adding *-in* to the masculine noun, and, if the noun contains an *a*, an *o*, or a *u*, modifying this vowel: *der Koch* (*deyR koCH*), for example, becomes *die Köchin* (*dee kö-Hin*). This convention makes sense if you just think back to what an *umlaut* is all about: When the *-in* suffix is added to the noun, the *i* sound, produced in the front of the mouth, coaxes the back vowels of *a*, *o*, or *u* to slide a little forward, as well—hence, sound change! The following table lists some common nouns that can undergo sex changes.

Sex Changes

Masculine Ending	Pronunciation	Feminine Ending	Pronunciation	Meaning
der Lehrer	<i>deyR ley-Ruhr</i>	die Lehrerin	<i>dee ley-Ruh-Rin</i>	the teacher
der Schüler	<i>deyR shüh-luhr</i>	die Schülerin	<i>dee shüh-luh-Rin</i>	the schoolboy/girl
der Arzt	<i>deyR aRtst</i>	die Ärztin	<i>dee äRts-tin</i>	the doctor
der Bauer	<i>deyR bou-uhr</i>	die Bäuerin	<i>dee boy-eyR-in</i>	the farmer
der Löwe	<i>deyR löh-wuh</i>	die Löwin	<i>dee löh-vin</i>	the lion
der Anwalt	<i>deyR An-vAlt</i>	die Anwältin	<i>dee An-väl-tin</i>	the attorney

Compound Nouns

Meeresgrundforschungslaborauswertungsbericht—pronounced *mey-Ruhs-gRoont-foR-shoonts-lah-bohRous-veR-toonks-buh-RiHt*—what in the world, you may ask, is that? Believe it or not, *that* is a word—a compound noun, to be exact. It means “sea-floor research lab evaluation report.” Some English words, such as *nightgown*, have also been formed out of more than one noun, but compound nouns of the cargo-train variety are a German phenomenon. Don’t let these words frighten you. If you can recognize the individual nouns, adjectives, or verbs within the longer word, you should have no trouble figuring out the meaning. In the first table of this section, you learned that *die Mutter* means “the mother” and *der Vater* means “the father.” It didn’t take you long to figure out that the particle *Stief* adds a layer of meaning—“step”—and that *Schwieger* adds “in-law.” You also noticed that ALL forms of mothers were feminine, that is to say, they took the feminine marker, *die*. Hmm... is a pattern emerging here? Why, yes! German looks to the right end of a noun to determine its gender. Another way to think of it is that the (directional) right end governs the entire noun. And, after all, government likes to tell us how to do things, and nouns must abide by these very same rules!

See whether you can put the following words together to form compound nouns:

Example:

die Zeit (“time”) + der Geist (“spirit”) = *der Zeitgeist*

1. das Hotel (“hotel”) + die Kette (“chain”) =
2. die Musik (“music”) + das Geschäft (“store”) =
3. das Geschenk (“gift”) + das Papier (“paper”) =
4. die Telefon (“telephone”) + die Nummer (“number”) =
5. der Brief (“letter”) + der Kasten (“box”) =
6. Schwer (“heavy”) + die Kraft (“power”) =
7. Treff (“to meet”) + der Punkt (“point”) =

An *n* or an *s* is sometimes used between nouns to connect them:

die Tomate (“tomato”) + der Saft (“juice”) = *der Tomatensaft*

die Liebe (“love”) + die Erklärung (“declarations”) = *die Liebeserklärung*



What's What?

Noun marker Any of a variety of articles, such as *der*, *die*, *das*, or *die* (the equivalent of “the” for plural nouns), *ein* the equivalent of “a” for masculine or neuter nouns, or *eine*, the equivalent of “a” for feminine nouns.

When There's More Than One Noun

In English, talking about more than one thing is relatively easy—usually, you just add an *s* to a word. But there are plurals that stump learners of our language. How many *childs* do you have, or rather *children*? Are they silly little *gooses*, uh, *geese*? And what about those *fishes* in the deep blue sea—are they *fish*? German plurals seem to be confusing, too, but there is a method to the madness. The German language has rules about forming plurals, stemming from the time when every German noun fit into a “class” of nouns and took many different endings. As this system of *inflecting* nouns declined in the eleventh and twelfth centuries, some of the features of these classes were retained as plural endings! This historical curiosity is what makes forming plurals in German such a challenging experience. Nonetheless, when a noun becomes plural in German, the noun marker becomes plural with it and the articles *der*, *die*, and *das* all become *die* in their plural forms.

Pluralities

Everybody knows that if you have more than one cat, you have cats (and a year’s supply of kitty litter); if you buy more than one red Corvette, you have Corvettes (and a serious midlife crisis). In German, however, it’s a little trickier. When nouns become plural in German, the noun may remain unchanged (*Mädchen*, for example, remains *Mädchen* in the plural); may take an ending such as *-e*, *-er*, *-n*, *-en*, or *-s*; or may undergo a vowel modification. Altering the vowel this way reflects such a noun’s history; we can deduce that many hundreds of years ago, an *-i* or *-ja* ending coerced the vowel to shift to the front. Rest assured, there are rules for forming plurals in

German, and with enough attention and devotion, you will develop a feel for them, a type of *Sprachgefühl*. For now, the best way to be sure that you are forming the plural of a noun correctly is to memorize it along with the noun and the article. The following tables give you some basic rules on how to form plurals.



What's What?

Inflection In German and in English, a suffix that signals a grammatical relationship—for example, case and tense, as in *girl's* and *walked*.

When the nouns in the following two tables become plural, they take either *-n* or *-en*. A majority of German nouns fall into this group, including most feminine nouns. The nouns in this group never take an umlaut in the plural; but if they already have one in the singular, it is retained.

When the nouns ending in *-e*, *-el*, and *-er* in the following table become plural, they take *-n*.

Plural Nouns: Group I

German Noun Singular	Pronunciation	German Noun Plural	Pronunciation	English Meaning
das Auge	<i>dAs ou-guh</i>	die Augen	<i>dee ou-guhn</i>	eye(s)
der Bauer	<i>deyR bou-uhR</i>	die Bauern	<i>dee bou-uhRn</i>	farmer(s)
der Junge	<i>deyR yoon-guh</i>	die Jungen	<i>dee yoon-guhn</i>	boy(s)
der Name	<i>dyeR nah-muh</i>	die Namen	<i>dee nah-muhn</i>	name(s)
die Gruppe	<i>dee gRoo-puh</i>	die Gruppen	<i>dee gRoo-puhn</i>	group(s)
die Kartoffel	<i>dee kAR-to-fuhl</i>	die Kartoffeln	<i>dee kAR-to-fuhln</i>	potato(es)
die Schüssel	<i>dee shü-suhl</i>	die Schüsseln	<i>dee shü-suhln</i>	bowl(s)
die Steuer	<i>dee shtoy-uhR</i>	die Steuern	<i>dee shtoy-uhRn</i>	tax(es)

Most of the nouns in the following table that take the ending *-en* in the plural are feminine nouns ending in *-ung*, *-ion*, *-keit*, *-heit*, *-schaft*, and *-tät*. All nouns referring to female persons or animals ending in *-in* double the *n* in the plural form before adding the plural *-en*. This convention keeps the *i* sound short—no mutation here, my friend!

Plural Nouns: Group II

German Noun Singular	Pronunciation	German Noun Plural	Pronunciation	English Meaning
das Herz	<i>dAs heRts</i>	die Herzen	<i>dee heR-tsuhn</i>	heart(s)
das Ohr	<i>dAs ohR</i>	die Ohren	<i>dee oh-Ruhn</i>	ear(s)
der Mensch	<i>deyR mensh</i>	die Menschen	<i>dee men-shuhn</i>	human being(s)
die Freiheit	<i>dee fRay-hayt</i>	die Freiheiten	<i>deef Ray-hay-tuhn</i>	liberty(ies)
die Königin	<i>dee köh-nee-gin</i>	die Königinnen	<i>dee köh-nee-gi-nuhn</i>	the queen(s)
die Löwin	<i>dee löh vin</i>	die Löwinnen	<i>dee löh-vi-nuhn</i>	the lioness(es)
die Mannschaft	<i>dee mAn-shAft</i>	die Mannschaften	<i>dee mAn-shAf-tuhn</i>	crew(s), team(s)
die Möglichkeit	<i>dee mö-kliH-kayt</i>	die Möglichkeiten	<i>dee mö-kliH-kay-tuhn</i>	possibilities
die Qualität	<i>dee kvah-lee-täh</i>	die Qualitäten	<i>dee kvah-lee-täh-ten</i>	quality(ies)

continues

Plural Nouns: Group II (continued)

German Noun Singular	Pronunciation	German Noun Plural	Pronunciation	English Meaning
die Religion	<i>dee Rey-lee-gee-ohn</i>	die Religionen	<i>dee Rey-lee-gee-oh-nuhn</i>	religion(s)
die Zeit	<i>dee tsayt</i>	die Zeiten	<i>dee tsay-tuhn</i>	time(s)
die Zeitung	<i>dee tsay-toong</i>	die Zeitungen	<i>dee tsay-toon-guhn</i>	newspaper(s)

The nouns in the following table take no ending in their plural form. Some of the masculine nouns in the group undergo a vowel modification (as they have since lost their ending), as do the only two feminine nouns in this group. The neuter nouns don't change.

Plural Nouns: Group III

German Noun Singular	Pronunciation	German Noun Plural	Pronunciation	English Meaning
das Mittel	<i>dAs mi-tuhl</i>	die Mittel	<i>dee mi-tuhl</i>	the mean(s)
das Zimmer	<i>dAs tsi-muhR</i>	die Zimmer	<i>dee tsi-muhR</i>	the room(s)
das Fenster	<i>dAs fen-stuhR</i>	die Fenster	<i>dee fen-stuhR</i>	the window(s)
der Garten	<i>deyR gAR-tuhn</i>	die Gärten	<i>dee gÄR-tuhn</i>	the garden(s)
der Lehrer	<i>deyR ley-RuhR</i>	die Lehrer	<i>dee ley-RuhR</i>	the teacher(s)
der Vater	<i>deyR fah-tuhR</i>	die Väter	<i>dee fäh-tuhR</i>	the father(s)
die Mutter	<i>dee moo-tuhR</i>	die Mütter	<i>dee mü-tuhR</i>	the mother(s)
die Tochter	<i>dee toCH-tuhR</i>	die Töchter	<i>dee töH-tuhR</i>	the daughter(s)

When the nouns in the following table become plural, they take the ending *-e*. All neuter and feminine nouns that end in *-nis* double the *s* in the plural form before adding *-e*, again, ensuring that the *i* sound remains short.

Plural Nouns: Group IV

German Singular	Pronunciation	German Plural	Pronunciation	English Meaning
das Ereignis	<i>dAs eR-ayk-nis</i>	die Ereignisse	<i>dee eR-ayk-ni-suh</i>	the event(s)
das Gedicht	<i>dAs gey-diHt</i>	die Gedichte	<i>dee gey-diH-tuh</i>	the poem(s)
das Jahr	<i>dAs yahR</i>	die Jahre	<i>dee yah-Ruh</i>	the year(s)

German Singular	Pronunciation	German Plural	Pronunciation	English Meaning
das Pferd	<i>dAs pfeRt</i>	die Pferde	<i>dee pfeR-duh</i>	the horse(s)
der Baum	<i>deyR boum</i>	die Bäume	<i>dee boy-muh</i>	the tree(s)
der Brief	<i>deyR bReef</i>	die Briefe	<i>dee bRee-fuh</i>	the letter(s)
der Zusam- menhang	<i>deyR tsew-sA- men-hAng</i>	die Zusam- menhänge	<i>dee tsew-sA- men-hän-guh</i>	the connection(s)
die Kenntnis	<i>dee kent-nis</i>	die Kenntnisse	<i>dee kent-ni-suh</i>	the knowledge
die Kunst	<i>dee koonst</i>	die Künste	<i>dee küns-tuh</i>	the art(s)
die Wand	<i>dee vAnt</i>	die Wände	<i>dee väñ-duh</i>	the wall(s)

The plurals of the nouns in the following table end in *-er*. Wherever possible, vowels are modified. When they cannot be modified, as in the noun *das Bild* (the vowels *e* and *i* never take an umlaut in German—they’re already “front” vowels!), the word takes the *-er* ending. Note that all the words that follow have only one syllable.

Plural Nouns: Group V

German Singular	Pronunciation	German Plural	Pronunciation	English Meaning
das Bild	<i>dAs bilt</i>	die Bilder	<i>dee bil-duhR</i>	the painting(s)
das Buch	<i>dAs bewCH</i>	die Bücher	<i>dee büü-HuhR</i>	the book(s)
das Land	<i>dAs lAnt</i>	die Länder	<i>dee län-duhR</i>	the country(ies)
der Geist	<i>deyR gayst</i>	die Geister	<i>dee gay-stuhr</i>	the ghost(s)
der Mann	<i>dyeR mAn</i>	die Männer	<i>dee mäñ-nuhR</i>	the man (men)

Practice Those Plurals

You are spending your first day in Berlin. Practice telling people what you’re looking for in the plural.

Example: You need some peace and quiet. You are looking for **parks**.

Ich suche die Parks.

1. You need to have your wisdom tooth removed. You ask someone where you can find *dentists* in Berlin. Tell this person that you need the *names* of a few dentists.

Wo finde ich _____? Ich brauche die _____einiger Zahnärzte.

2. You want to relax somewhere and drink a cup of coffee. Ask someone where some nice *cafés* are in Berlin.
Wo finde ich einige schöne _____ in Berlin?
3. You're looking for the *brothers* of a friend in a café. You've never met them before. Ask two men sitting at a table if they're your friend's brothers.
Sind Sie die _____ von Marc?
4. You're curious to find out what the weather will be like tomorrow. Stop at a kiosk and ask the man at the counter if all German *newspapers* have weather forecasts.
Haben alle Deutschen _____ einen Wetterbericht?
5. You've heard that Berlin has many *gardens*. Ask where you can find them.
Wo finde ich die _____ in Berlin?
6. You enter the lobby of a hotel. Ask the receptionist for the room rates.
Wie teuer sind Ihre _____?



As a Rule

Compound nouns combine two or more nouns into one. They are written as one word in German and take the gender of the last noun in the compound. Likewise, compound nouns, being governed by the right end of things, take the plural form of the last noun. *Der Zahnarzt* (deyR tsahn-ARtst), for example, is made up of the two words *der Zahn* and *der Arzt* (deyR ARtst). Because *Arzt* comes last, it is the only part of the compound noun that becomes plural.

German Singular	German Plural	English Meaning
der Zahnarzt deyR tsahn-ARtst	die Zahnärzte dee tsahn-äRts-tuh	the dentist(s)
der Weisheitszahn deyR vays-hayts-tsahn	die Weisheitszähne dee vays-hayts-tsäh-nuh	the wisdom tooth (teeth)

What Have You Learned About Gender?

In the following ads, which employers are seeking male employees? Which are seeking female employees? Which ads are open to applicants of both sexes?

1. Deutsche Rockband sucht englischsprachige Sängerin. Unsere Musikrichtung ist völlig gemischt und reicht von Billie Holiday bis Janis Joplin. Alle Bewerberinnen sollten Gitarre spielen können.
2. Das Knappaufschlagskrankenhaus sucht dringend Pfleger und Pflegerinnen, welche ab sofort mit ihrer Tätigkeit beginnen können. Eine Ausbildung in diesem Bereich ist erforderlich. Bitte kontaktieren Sie uns für weitere Informationen.
3. Wir suchen zu baldmöglichem Antritt eine freundliche Apothekerin (Vollzeit). Wir bieten eine eigenständige und verantwortungsvolle Arbeit in einem kleinen, freundlichen Team.
4. Sekretär/in gesucht! Deutsche Muttersprache/gute Englischkenntnisse/PC-Erfahrung (Internet)/bis 40 Jahre/Gehalt nach Vereinbarung.
5. Restaurant sucht Koch zur Aushilfe. Wir betreiben ein Apfelweinlokal in Frankfurt und suchen umgehend einen Aushilfskoch. Gehalt nach Absprache.



Achtung

Some nouns in German are used only in their plural forms. These are worth noting, particularly because you don't have to worry about whether the articles preceding them are masculine, feminine, or neuter. They always take the plural article *die*.

German	English
die Ferien	vacation
die Geschwister	brothers and sisters
die Leute	people
die Eltern	parents

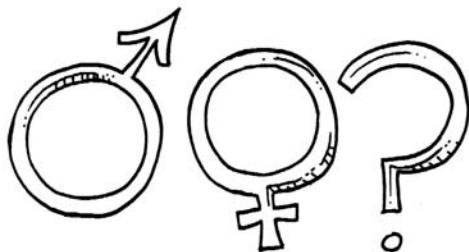


As a Rule

A few nouns in German (usually words ending in *a*, *i*, or *o*) take an *-s* to form the plural, as in *das Lotto* (*die Lottos*). In addition, add “*s*” in the plural for nouns of foreign origin, such as *die Kamera* (*die Kameras*), *das Café* (*die Cafés*), *das Büro* (*die Büros*). German abbreviated nouns also add an *s* in the plural: *der/die Azubi* (*die Azubis*), being an abbreviation for *der/die Auszubildende*, a type of student undertaking further education.

The Least You Need to Know

- The only sure-fire way to know a noun’s gender is to memorize the definite article with the noun.
- Most nouns referring to male persons and animals become feminine nouns when *-in* is added.
- Compound nouns in German are easy to formulate and instantly increase your vocabulary power. Figuring out their gender or their plural form won’t be a problem, since gender and plural forms of even the longest compound words are always determined by the rightmost constituents.
- There are many exceptions to rules about forming plurals. Plural forms of nouns should be learned along with the noun and the definite article. If you think of nouns in terms of a triangle—one point being the noun; one, its gender; and the third, its plural form—you’ll be learning three parcels of information for the price of one!



Fitting Form with Function

In This Chapter

- Cases in German
- Definite articles
- An introduction to subject pronouns
- Formality issues

Before we start, we should probably warn you that this chapter introduces some new grammatical concepts and that it just might take some time before you fully understand them. More understanding will come with time and exposure to the language. We all know that learning grammar can be about as exciting as watching grass grow, but lots of people have done it and are now happy, German-speaking individuals.

Now that you have familiarized yourself with nouns, it's time to start forming sentences. In English, once you have the subject, the verb, and the direct object, forming a sentence is easy enough; you put the words in the right order and start talking. It doesn't work this way in German, however. Word order—the position of words in a sentence—isn't as crucial in German as it is in English because German has retained many of the inflections that English dropped along the way. German nouns, pronouns, articles, adjectives, and prepositions are inflected; that is to say, they have overt markings showing grammatical relations.

The Four Cases in German

You don't have to be Sherlock Holmes to figure out cases in German. Cases are the form articles, adjectives, pronouns, and a few nouns take in a sentence depending on their function. When we speak of cases and nouns, we are speaking of their articles, since the article that precedes a noun is the primary indicator of its gender, number, and—you guessed it—*case*. German uses four cases to express grammatical relations between sentence parts: nominative, accusative, dative, and genitive. By altering the form of *the*, you can figure out what's happening to whom no matter where the nouns are in the sentence. So don't be put off. Although at first you might scowl at such grammatical-sounding terms, you figured all this out intuitively when you *acquired* English—you just didn't have to label grammatical relations as you do when you *learn* a foreign language. In a nutshell, the nominative case indicates the subject of a sentence, the accusative case indicates the direct object of a sentence, and the dative case indicates the indirect object of a sentence. The genitive case shows possession, as in the phrase *the fish's tail*.

Subject	Verb	Direct Object	Indirect Object
The girl	eats	the tail	of the fish



What's What?

Case The form articles, adjectives, pronouns, and a few nouns in German take depending on their grammatical function in a sentence.

In German, cases enable you to vary the order of nouns and pronouns without changing the overall meaning of the sentence, allowing you to place focus on whatever element of the sentence you like!

Das Mädchen isst den Fisch.

Den Fisch isst das Mädchen.

Although the second sentence might make you think that the fish is eating the girl, it isn't, thanks to the cases taken by the nouns *das Mädchen* (nom.) and *den Fisch* (acc.). Despite the position of the nouns, the noun markers remain the same in both sentences, clearly indicating that the fish is being eaten by the girl, and not that the girl is being eaten by the fish.

Starting with the Nominative Case

Nominative is the case of the *subject* of the sentences—that is, of the noun or pronoun performing the action (or undergoing the state of being) of the verb. Think of the nominative case as “naming” who or what is performing the action in the sentence.

Nominative (Subject)	Verb
Ich (I)	trinke (drink)

What Gets the Action: The Accusative Case

The accusative case is used with the direct object. The *direct object* tells you to whom or what the action of the verb is being directed. You also use the accusative case with time and measuring data that specifies how short, how soon, how often, how much, how old, and so on. Some varieties in English still express the accusative case (in English it's called the *objective case*) by using the alternative form of who: *whom*. Think of the accusative case as expressing whom or what is being "accused" by the verb.

Nominative (Subject)	Verb	Accusative (Direct Object)
Er (he)	schickt (sends)	ein Paket (a package)

Indirectly: The Dative Case

The dative case can be used instead of a possessive adjective with parts of the body and after certain verbs, prepositions, and adjectives. It is used primarily to indicate the indirect object, however.

The *indirect object* is the object for whose benefit or in whose interest the action of the verb is being performed. Think of giving, helping, pleasing, and such—an animate object is receiving the action, and usually something else (the direct object), to boot! As English lost most of its inflectional endings reflecting this case, it relies on *word order* and prepositions, such as *to* and *for* to express the dative function.



What's What?

Word order The position of words in a sentence contributing to the meaning or *sense* of a sentence.

Nominative (Subject)	Dative Verb	Accusative (Indirect Object)	(Direct Object)
Er (he)	schickt (sends)	seinem Bruder (his brother)	ein Paket (a package)



What's What?

Declension The pattern of changes occurring in articles, adjectives, pronouns, and a few nouns in each of the four cases.

It's All Mine: The Genitive Case

The genitive case indicates possession. Whereas English uses an 's—the neighbor's yard—or the preposition *of*—the yard *of* the neighbor—to express possession, German can use either an *-s* after a person's name or the German prepositional equivalent, *von*. Most of the time, however, German marks possession on both the noun marker (the article or adjective preceding the noun) *and*, with neuter and masculine nouns, after the noun with *-(e)s*. Although this construction might seem confusing at first, think of it in terms of the word *possessive*; look at all of those *-s*'s. Why not latch on to that idea in German?!?

Nominative (Subject)	Dative (Verb)	Genitive (Indirect Object)	Accusative (Possessive)	Direct Object
Er (he)	schickt (sends)	der Frau (the wife)	seines Bruders (of his brother)	ein Paket (a package)

Marking Who's Doing What to Whom

If you've been exposed to Latin or a Slavic language such as Polish or Russian, you might have heard about *declension*, the term used to talk about the changes occurring in a word to indicate different cases.



What's What?

Paradigm A grammatical chart, organized in a regular way so that new information may be plugged in and easily assimilated.

Declension refers to the patterns of change followed by different groups of words in each case. Declension in German is pretty much limited to articles and a few instances of nouns. True, adjectives take an ending, but it is readily and simply determinable from the word preceding the noun (if there is one). In addition, pronouns change form according to their function, but this change is very similar to English: *he* versus *him*, and such. Be sure that when you are looking up a noun, you look for it under its base form—not its plural or possessive form. The nominative singular is the form under which nouns appear in the dictionary.

The Case of the Definite Article

German has four possible declensions for each definite article (remember, definite articles are used when you are speaking about a particular person or thing). In addition, the plurals of *der*, *die*, and *das* have separate declensions. Commit this chart to memory, rewrite it on a card, use a different color for each case, do anything and everything to help yourself conceptualize the case system. This system is your springboard, and you won't be able to dive in if you don't learn this *paradigm*. In addition, you will be able to plug in new information as you go along.

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
Nom.	der	die	das	die
	<i>deyR</i>	<i>dee</i>	<i>dAs</i>	<i>dee</i>
Acc.	den	die	das	die
	<i>deyn</i>	<i>dee</i>	<i>dAs</i>	<i>dee</i>
Dat.	dem	der	dem	den
	<i>deym</i>	<i>deyR</i>	<i>deym</i>	<i>deyn</i>
Gen.	des	der	des	der
	<i>des</i>	<i>deyR</i>	<i>des</i>	<i>deyR</i>

Masculine Nouns

Using the same paradigm—the same setup of cases in descending order of nominative, accusative, dative, followed by genitive—we can plug in actual masculine nouns. Notice the noun endings in the genitive case and with the monosyllabic noun in the dative case. Although we discussed the issue of the *-e* in the dative case with monosyllabic masculine nouns, you'll observe that the same monosyllabic noun gets an *-e* before its genitive *-s*. Nothing like a little consistency, eh?

Case	Noun	Pronunciation	Noun	Pronunciation
Nom.	der Fall	<i>deyR fAI</i>	der Vater	<i>deyR fah-tuhR</i>
Acc.	den Fall	<i>deyn fAI</i>	den Vater	<i>deyn fah-tuhR</i>
Dat.	dem Falle	<i>deym fA-luh</i>	dem Vater	<i>deym fah-tuhR</i>
Gen.	des Falles	<i>des fA-luhs</i>	des Vaters	<i>des fah-tuhRs</i>

Remember those antiquated noun classes that tried really hard to die out? Well, another leftover occurs with a few masculine nouns that take an *-(e)n* ending in all cases except the nominative. These are usually referred to as *weak nouns* because they're too weak to stand on their own. Because they get an *-(e)n* in the genitive, you don't need to add that usual *-(e)s*. This group includes many nouns of foreign origin that are accented on the last syllable, such as *der Assistent*, *der Demokrat*, *der Polizist*, *der Präsident*,

der Tourist; masculine nouns that end in an unstressed *-e*, such as *der Löwe* (“lion”); *der Kunde* (“customer”); and in a few monosyllabic nouns, such as *der Mensch* (“human being”), *der Held* (“hero”), *der Herr* (“man”), *der Junge* (“boy”).

Case	Noun	Pronunciation	Noun	Pronunciation
Nom.	der Student	<i>deyR shtew-dent</i>	der Junge	<i>deyR yoon-guh</i>
Acc.	den Studenten	<i>deyn shtew-den-tuhn</i>	den Jungen	<i>deyn yoon-guhn</i>
Dat.	dem Studenten	<i>deym shtew-den-tuhn</i>	dem Jungen	<i>deym yoon-guhn</i>
Gen.	des Studenten	<i>des shtew-den-tuhn</i>	des Jungen	<i>des yoon-guhn</i>

Feminine Nouns

Fair's fair, so here are a few feminine nouns plugged into our paradigm. Notice that feminine nouns, unlike the masculine ones, do not need endings. They remain unchanged.

Case	Noun	Pronunciation	Noun	Pronunciation
Nom.	die Lust	<i>dee loost</i>	die Blume	<i>dee blew-muh</i>
Acc.	die Lust	<i>dee loost</i>	die Blume	<i>dee blew-muh</i>
Dat.	der Lust	<i>deyR loost</i>	der Blume	<i>deyR blew-muh</i>
Gen.	der Lust	<i>deyR loost</i>	der Blume	<i>deyR blew-muh</i>

Neuter Nouns

And now for the neuter nouns. Just like the masculine ones, the monosyllabic neuter noun takes that vestigial *-e* ending in the dative and *-(e)s* in the genitive case.

Case	Noun	Pronunciation	Noun	Pronunciation
Nom.	das Jahr	<i>dAs yahR</i>	das Licht	<i>dAs liHt</i>
Acc.	das Jahr	<i>dAs yahR</i>	das Licht	<i>dAs liHt</i>
Dat.	dem Jahre	<i>deym yah-Ruh</i>	dem Licht	<i>deym liHt</i>
Gen.	des Jahres	<i>des yah-Ruhs</i>	des Lichts	<i>des liHts</i>

Plurals

Coming now to the right side of the original paradigm, we can plug in the plural nouns for *father* and *child*, only augmenting them with an *n* in the dative case. If the plural form already ends in an *-n*, as in *Katzen* (“cats”), you've nothing to worry about!

Case	Plural	Pronunciation	Plural	Pronunciation
Nom.	die Väter	dee fäh-tuhR	die Kinder	dee kin-duhR
Acc.	die Väter	dee fäh-tuhR	die Kinder	dee kin-duhR
Dat.	den Vätern	deyn fäh-tuhRn	den Kinder	deyn kin-duhR
Gen.	der Väter	deyR fäh-tuhR	der Kinder	deyR kin-duhR

The Case of the Indefinite Article

The English equivalent for the indefinite article is *a* or *an*. *Indefinite articles* are used when you are speaking about a noun in general, not about a specific noun. Only three declensions are possible for the indefinite article because indefinite articles do not occur in the plural—just as in English, it's not possible or logical to talk about *a books*. Again, we're using that original paradigm and plugging in this *new* information that really isn't all that *new*. If you compare this chart of indefinite articles with the definite article chart, you'll see that all the feminine endings exactly resemble the ends of the feminine definite articles: *die, eine; die, eine; der, einer; der, einer*. Now look for correspondences in the masculine and neuter. Sure enough, only three new bits of information are actually on this chart, provided you've done your homework and learned the other paradigm: masculine and neuter nominative and neuter accusative indefinite articles (*ein*) don't take an ending. See? German *is* simple, after all!



What's What?

Indefinite article Articles used when you are speaking about a noun in general, not about a specific noun. The indefinite article is used to introduce a topic into discourse.

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
Nom.	ein <i>ayn</i>	eine <i>ay-nuh</i>	ein <i>ayn</i>	none
Acc.	einen <i>ay-nuhn</i>	eine <i>ay-nuh</i>	ein <i>ayn</i>	none
Dat.	einem <i>ay-nuhm</i>	einer <i>ay-nuhr</i>	einem <i>ay-nuhm</i>	none
Gen.	eines <i>ay-nuhs</i>	einer <i>ay-nuhr</i>	eines <i>ay-nuhs</i>	none

Subject Pronouns

Before you can form sentences with verbs in German, you have to know something about subject pronouns. A subject pronoun is, as its name suggests, the subject of a sentence—the who or what that performs the action. The verb must agree with the subject pronoun (grammatically speaking, that is, in person and number—we all know verbs don't have opinions of their own). You can link this bit of information to what you already know about cases. The case of the subject is nominative, so you can also think about these pronouns as nominative personal pronouns. The German subject pronouns in the following table have a person (first person is I, second person is you, third person is he, she, or it) just as subject pronouns do in English, and a number (singular or plural). If you've ever studied literature, you may recall discussing narrators' perspectives: first-person omniscient or limited was told by the narrator, using *I*; third-person objective had the narrators talking about the story and characters, using *he* and *she*. So what is second person all about? It involves directly addressing someone—talking to someone.

Subject Pronouns

Person	Singular	English	Plural	English
First	ich <i>iH</i>	I	wir <i>veer</i>	we
Second	du <i>dew</i>	you	ihr <i>eer</i>	you
Third	er, sie, es <i>eR, zee, es</i>	he, she, it	sie Sie <i>zee</i>	they (formal) you



As a Rule

It used to be considered polite in German society to use the third-person plural to refer to someone you were talking to. One speaker would look directly at another and use "they" when referring to that person! Hence, the German formal pronouns are *exactly* the same as the third-person plural pronouns. Less to learn!

Du Versus Sie—Informal Versus Formal

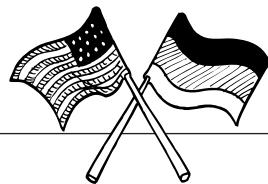
When was the last time you got up from your seat on a crowded bus, turned to someone, and said, “Would thee like to sit down?” Today the only place you’re going to come across *thee* is in Shakespeare (“Shall I compare thee to a summer’s day?”) In German, however, *Sie* (the polite form for “you”) is still very much a part of the German vocabulary. Generally, *Sie* is used with people you don’t know or to indicate respect. *Du*, the informal “you,” is used more casually: with your peers or with those you know well. See whether you can figure out which of the following questions you would address to your teacher and which you would use to initiate a conversation with a fellow student.

Wie heißt du? What's your name?
vee hayst dew

Wie heißen Sie? What's your name?
vee hay-suhn zee

What would happen if pronouns were outlawed? “So, Beate, is it true that Beate is going to the Oktoberfest with Maria and Bob? Are Maria and Bob meeting Beate at the Oktoberfest, or are Maria and Bob meeting Beate later?” If you had to speak this way, a revolution to reinstate the pronoun would occur in a matter of days so that people could once again say, “So, Beate, is it true that you are going to the Oktoberfest with Maria and Bob? Are they meeting you there, or are you meeting them later?”

Pronouns streamline your speech. You’ll note from the following examples that the gender of the pronoun must correspond to the gender of the noun; as in English, the same “they” (*sie*) is used to refer to more than one person, be they of mixed company, all feminine, or all masculine.



We Are Family

Stepping back into the not-so-mythical linguistic past, both English and German used to decline nouns. Our English possessive *-s* is a remnant. All nouns in German and English used to take an ending. You may thank your lucky stars that in present-day German, only trace vestiges of this complex system remain. In the fifth century, neuter and masculine monosyllabic nouns were members of the same class of nouns, and reflective of this history, an *-e* ending remains with neuter and masculine monosyllabic nouns in the dative case. This practice of declension is gradually falling by the wayside, yet fossilized in such fixed expressions as *im Jahre*, *zu Hause*.

Noun(s)	Pronouns
Stefan	er
Katrin	sie
Mattias und Frank	sie
Tania und Anne	sie
Julia und Klaus	sie

You can also use pronouns to replace the name of a common noun referring to a place, thing, or idea. Whereas in English we use the blanket pronoun *it* to refer to anything inanimate, the gender of the pronoun in German must correspond to the gender of the noun.

Noun	Pronunciation	Pronoun	Meaning
das Restaurant	<i>dAs Res-tou-Rant</i>	es	the restaurant
die Bank	<i>dee bAnk</i>	sie	the bank
das Café und das Kino	<i>dAs kah-fey oont</i> <i>dAs kee-noh</i>	sie	the café and the movie theater
der Hafen und das Schiff	<i>deyR ha-fuhn</i> <i>oond dAs shif</i>	sie	the harbor and the ship
die Straße und die Kirche	<i>dee ShtRah-suh</i> <i>oond dee KeeR-Huh</i>	sie	the street and the church
das Geschäft und die Schuhe	<i>dAs guh-shäft</i> <i>oond dee shew-huh</i>	sie	the store and the shoes

Er, Sie, Es?

Imagine that your boss marries a woman young enough to be his granddaughter. You attend the wedding reception with your best friend. Toward the end of the *Feier* (*fay-uhR*), his ex-wife barges in and takes a hatchet to the wedding cake. Eventually, she is subdued and escorted to the door. The guests recover their poise, and the festivities continue. You and your friend don't get a chance to talk about this scandalous turn of events until you are in the elevator on your way to the parking lot. You don't know exactly who is in the elevator with you, so you try to keep your use of people's

names to a minimum. Which pronouns would you use to talk about the in-laws? the bride? the groom? Which pronoun would you use to talk about the hatchet? the party? the hotel? the other people in the elevator?

Example: Der Ehemann küsst seine Frau.

Answer: Er küsst seine Frau.

1. Die Schwiegereltern tanzten.
2. Die Musik war heiter.
3. Die Mutter des Ehemanns weinte.
4. Der Onkel der Ehefrau war betrunken.
5. Das Kind der neuen Frau ist 1 Jahr alt.



Don't confuse the singular *sie* (she) with the plural *sie* (they). The verb indicates whether the pronoun *sie* is being used as third-person singular or third-person plural. The formal *Sie* (pronoun) is always capitalized.

The Least You Need to Know

- The function of German nouns and pronouns in a sentence is indicated by their case, which can be nominative, accusative, dative, or genitive.
- The declension of articles and some nouns is the pattern of changes a word undergoes to express various grammatical functions, as represented by the four cases.
- Subject (nominative) pronouns streamline your speech. The gender of the pronoun must correspond to the gender of the noun.
- Because you're probably accustomed to the largely uninflected English language, these concepts might take a little getting used to. Refer to this chapter, or to the cards you've artistically created, as you work through this book and try to assimilate the basic concepts of cases and declensions gradually.



Click Your Heels Together and Say: There's No Place Like Deutschland

In This Chapter

- Understanding subject pronouns
- Conjugating weak and strong verbs
- Using common weak and strong verbs
- Learning how to ask questions

In the preceding chapter you learned about determining the gender, number, and case of nouns, and you were introduced to German pronouns. Now it's time to move on to verbs. Verbs, the Arnold Schwarzeneggers of the language set, convey action in a sentence. To communicate, you must have a basic understanding of verbs. In this chapter you'll be introduced to weak and strong verbs, thereby acquiring the tools to set the world in motion!

What's the Subject?

You sign up for a special travel package to Germany that includes hotel accommodations and airfare. What this package also includes—and this becomes clear to you as you are on the airplane listening to others who have signed up for this deal—is that you'll be spending your week of vacation with 10 other people, each with his or her



What's What?

Imperative form The form a verb takes to express a command, request or directive. This form is easily deduced from the conjugated second-person verb. In the imperative form, the understood subject is always you.

own agenda. *You* want to take quiet, relaxing strolls through churches and parks. The woman to your left wants the group to spend three days shopping in Zürich. The mother and daughter team sitting in the row ahead tell you that *they* intend to hang out at nightclubs to experience what they refer to as “the real Germany.” The tour guide is standing in the aisle looking at all of you and rolling his eyes.

To express what people want to do, you need verbs, and verbs, of course, require a subject:

You want to take quiet, relaxing strolls through churches and parks.

The woman wants to spend three days shopping in Zürich.

When a sentence takes the *imperative form*, the form of a command, the subject (you) is understood:

Go shopping!

Subjects can be either nouns or pronouns that replace nouns:

The man ate the entire pizza.

He ate the entire pizza.



As a Rule

Unlike German nouns, which are capitalized no matter where they appear in a sentence, most pronouns take a capital letter only when they begin a sentence. This makes a lot of sense if you think of personal pronouns as representing nouns—not quite achieving noun status, and thus not attaining upper-case orthographic status. The only exception to this rule is the pronoun *Sie* (the polite form for *du* and *ihr*), which is capitalized no matter where it appears in a sentence. The upper-case spelling of the formal *Sie* helps distinguish it from its lower-case twins, *sie* and *sie*. Furthermore, don’t let yourself be influenced by the capitalization of the English *I*, whose German equivalent is the lower-case *ich*.

Verb Basics

It's easier to understand how a plane takes off if you know something about its parts. The same is true of verbs. Here are some basic things you should know about verbs before you start using them.

The *stem* of a verb refers to what you get when you remove the ending *-en* from the German infinitive. The *stem vowel* refers to the vowel within this stem. In English, for example, when you conjugate the verb run (I run, you run, she runs), it retains the same stem vowel throughout the conjugation, marking the third-person singular with the addition of the inflectional suffix *-s*. *Conjugation* refers to the changes the verb undergoes, internally and externally (by the addition of inflectional endings), which keep the verb in agreement with the subject.



What's What?

Conjugation The changes of the verb that occur to indicate who or what is performing the action (or undergoing the state of being) of the verb and when the action (or state of being) of the verb is occurring: in the present, the past, or the future.

Verbs in Motion

If you were given a week of absolutely commitment-free time, what would you do with it? Would you go scuba diving? Would you chase butterflies? Or would you ride through Italy on a tandem bicycle?

No matter what you do, you need verbs to express action, motion, or states of being. When you acquired English, you very readily discerned the difference between being able to add a little something to a verb to express yesterday, as in *pushed* and *pulled*, and changing the verb internally: *sing*, *sang*, *sung*. Little did you know it then, but you were differentiating between two classes of verbs: *weak* and *strong*. Perhaps you learned to refer to them in school as *regular* and *irregular*. In German as well, the most common way of grouping verbs is weak (*schwach*), strong (*stark*), or mixed (*schwark*). When verbs are conjugated, a relatively predictable pattern of endings is attached to the stem of weak verbs, as occurs in English (-*ed* in the past tense). Strong verbs have a relatively predictable pattern of endings when they are conjugated in the *present tense* (the form a verb takes to indicate that action is occurring in the present), but the stem undergoes a sound change in the past tense. Mixed verbs have features of both weak and strong verbs, hence the term *schwark*. The rest of this chapter examines *schwach* and *stark* verbs in the present tense. Mixed (*schwark*) verbs are discussed in Chapter 24, "I Think I Forgot Something."

Weak Verbs: Followers

In Chapter 5, “You Know More Than You Think,” you learned about the infinitive, or unconjugated, form of verbs. Weak verbs are verbs that, when conjugated, follow a set pattern of rules and retain the same stem vowel throughout. Think of them as being too weak to alter the patterns they follow. Let’s follow the weak English verb *fly* through its full conjugation.

Person	Singular	Plural
First	I fly	we fly
Second	you fly	you fly
Third	he/she flies	they fly

Most German verbs fall into the category of *schwach* verbs (see the following table). But *schwach* or *stark*, the present-tense inflectional endings remain the same. Only one paradigm to learn, lucky you!

Your first step is to determine the stem of the verb. That’s right, lop off the *-en* of the infinitive. Second, add a little something to this stem, as in adding the *-s* in English third-person singular.

Conjugation of a Weak Verb I: Leben

Person	Singular	English	Plural	English
First	ich lebe <i>iH ley-buh</i>	I live	wir leben <i>veeR ley-buhn</i>	we live
Second	du lebst <i>dew leybst</i>	you live	ihr lebt <i>eeR leybt</i>	you live
Third	er, sie, es lebt <i>er, zee, es leybt</i>	he, she, it lives	sie leben <i>zee ley-buhn</i>	they live
Formal (sing. and plural)	Sie leben <i>zee ley-buhn</i>	you live		

Verbs whose stem ends in *-d*, *-t*, or *-l* or verbs that contain a consonant with *-n* or *-m* add an *-e* after the stem throughout the conjugation except in the *ich* form, as you’d have one too many *-es* (see the following table). Why add that *-e*? A simple matter of lingual practicality—without it, your tongue would get tangled and you’d end up tripping. So what’s your first step in conjugating these verbs? Righto! Free that stem from the infinitive, add an *-e* to that stem, and then go wild (with those *same* inflectional endings you used with *leben*).

Conjugation of a Weak Verb II: Reden

Person	Singular	English	Plural	English
First	ich rede <i>iH Rey-duh</i>	I talk	wir reden <i>veeR Rey-duhn</i>	we talk
Second	du redest <i>dew Rey-dest</i>	you talk	ihr redet <i>eeR Rey-duht</i>	you talk
Third	er, sie, es redet <i>eR, zee, es Rey-duht</i>	he, she, it talks	sie reden <i>zee Rey-duhn</i>	they talk
Formal (sing. and plural)	Sie reden <i>zee Rey-duhn</i>	you talk		

The Endings of Weak Verbs

Think of weak verbs as timid, law-abiding creatures that would never cross the street when the light is red. The great thing (for those of you who want to learn German) about weak verbs is that they obey grammar laws and follow a predictable pattern of conjugation. Once you've learned this pattern (and the few exceptions to this pattern), you should be able to conjugate weak verbs in German without too much difficulty. To conjugate weak verbs, drop the *-en* from the infinitive and then add the endings shown in the following table. Here's your verb paradigm to be *memorized* and written out on a card!

Person	Singular	Ending	Plural	Ending
First	ich	-e	wir	-en
Second	du	-(e)st	ihr	-(e)t
Third	er, sie, es	-(e)t	sie	-en
Formal (singular and plural)	Sie	-en		

Conjugation 101

Now it's time to practice a little of what you've learned. See whether you can use the correct form of the verbs in the following sentences. Remember, the verb must agree with the subject!

1. (suchen) Ich _____ das Museum.
2. (reservieren) Klaus _____ ein Hotelzimmer.



What's What?

Weak verbs Verbs (*schwach*) that follow a set pattern of rules and retain the same stem vowel throughout their conjugation. Compare this pattern with the English verbs that form their past tense with the addition of *-ed*.

3. (warten) Sie (Anne und Otto) _____ auf den Bus.
4. (mieten) Ihr _____ ein Auto.
5. (fragen) Wir _____ nach der Adresse.
6. (lernen) Ich _____ Deutsch.
7. (reisen) Ich _____ nach Hamburg.
8. (brauchen) Er _____ ein Taxi.
9. (telefonieren) Du _____ deine Mutter.
10. (bestellen) Tina _____ ein Glas Wein.
11. (tanzen) Frau Schmitt, Sie _____ gut!
12. (arbeiten) Der Professor _____ jeden Tag.
13. (öffnen) Die Professorin _____ das Fenster.
14. (kosten) Die Pizza _____ nur 10 DM.

In the following table, you will find some of the most commonly used weak verbs in German. Read the list a few times and try to commit these verbs to memory.

Common Weak Verbs

Verb	Pronunciation	Meaning
antworten	<i>Ant-voR-tuhn</i>	to answer
arbeiten	<i>AR-bay-tuhn</i>	to work
bestellen	<i>buh-shte-luhn</i>	to order
blicken	<i>bli-kuhn</i>	to look, glance
brauchen	<i>bRou-Chuhn</i>	to need
danken	<i>dAn-kuhn</i>	to thank
fragen	<i>fRah-guhn</i>	to ask
glauben	<i>glou-buhn</i>	to believe
kochen	<i>ko-Chuhn</i>	to cook
kosten	<i>ko-stuhn</i>	to cost, to taste, to try
heiraten	<i>hay-rA-tuhn</i>	to marry
lernen	<i>leR-nuhn</i>	to learn, to study
lieben	<i>lee-buhn</i>	to love
machen	<i>mA-CHuhn</i>	to make, to do
mieten	<i>mee-tuhn</i>	to rent
öffnen	<i>öf-nuhn</i>	to open
rauchen	<i>Rou-CHuhn</i>	to smoke

Verb	Pronunciation	Meaning
regnen	reyk-nuhn	to rain
reisen	ray-suhn	to travel
reservieren	ruh-seR-vee-Ruhn	to reserve
sagen	sah-guhn	to say, to tell
schicken	shi-kuhn	to send
sehen	zey-huhn	to see
spielen	shpee-luhn	to play
studieren	shew-dee-ruhn	to look over, to be enrolled
suchen	zew-Huhn	to look for
schwänzen	shvän-tsuhn	to skip class
tanzen	tAn-tsuhn	to dance
telefonieren	tey-ley-foh-nee-Ruhn	to telephone
weinen	vay-nuhn	to cry
warten	vAR-tuhn	to wait
wohnen	voh-nuhn	to reside
zeichnen	tsayCH-nuhn	to draw
zeigen	tsay-guhn	to show, to indicate

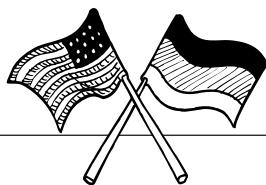


As a Rule

Studieren refers to enrollment at a college or university: *Bernadette studiert an der Universität Mainz*. To indicate a student's major: *Gretchen studiert Germanistik*. *Ich studiere die Liste* means "look over carefully." *Lernen* means "to study" in the sense of studying for a test or learning specific skills: *Sie lernen Deutsch!*

Strong Verbs

Verbs don't, of course, lift weights or have muscles. You can't tell the difference between *strong verbs* and weak verbs just by looking at them. The only way you can distinguish between them is to memorize them as such. Of course, as an English speaker,



We Are Family

English and German share many features when it comes to strong verbs. The irregular forms—such as *take, took, taken* or *drink, drank, drunk*—date back more than 6,000 years! They are examples of original Indo-European verbs and haven't changed too much since.

you will have the advantage of already being familiar with strong verbs, and those strong verbs in English are just as *stark* in German.

Ch-ch-ch-Changes: My, What Strong Verbs Have to Go Through!

Strong verbs are “strong” because they alter the patterns that weaker verbs follow. This pattern becomes readily evident in the past tense (recall *pushed* versus *drank*). Some strong verbs change their stem vowel in the present tense—they are “very strong,” *sehr stark*; the endings, however, are the same for both weak and strong verbs. With the *sehr starke* verbs, vowel alterations occur only in the second and third person in the stem vowel. Although *everything* in German might seem to be an exception, all German verbs actually

stem from seven older (800 C.E.) verb classes. So take heart; vowel changes follow a limited number of patterns. As far as present-tense stem changes, the only permutations are ...

a(u), o, u may become *ä(u), ö, ü*.

e may become *-i* or *-ie*.

The following tables illustrate the stem changing of some *sehr starke* verbs. Note that the stem *-e* changes to *-ie* only in the second- and third-person singular! Other verbs incurring this stem change include *lesen, befehlen, empfehlen*, and *geschehen*.

Conjugation of a Very Strong Verb I: Sehen

Person	Singular	English	Plural	English
First	ich sehe <i>iH zey-huh</i>	I see	wir sehen <i>veeR zey-huhn</i>	we see
Second	du siehst <i>dew zeest</i>	you see	ihr seht <i>eeR zeyt</i>	you see
Third	er, sie, es sieht <i>eR, zee, es</i> <i>zeet</i>	he, she, it sees	sie sehen <i>zee zey-huhn</i>	they see
Formal (singular and plural)	Sie sehen <i>zee zey-huhn</i>	you see		

Again, note that in the following table *a* changes to *ä* only in the second- and third-person singular! Other verbs incurring this stem change include *blasen*, *fangen*, *halten*, *laden*, *lassen*, *raten*, *schlafen*, *tragen*, *wachsen*, and *waschen*.

Conjugation of a Very Strong Verb II: Fallen

Person	Singular	English	Plural	English
First	ich falle <i>iH fA-luh</i>	I fall	wir fallen <i>veer fA-luhn</i>	we fall
Second	du fällst <i>dew fälst</i>	you fall	ihr fällt <i>eeR fAlt</i>	you fall
Third	er, sie, es fällt <i>eR, zee, es fält</i>	he, she, it falls	sie fallen <i>zee fA-luhn</i>	they fall
Formal	Sie fallen <i>zee fa-luhn</i>	you fall		

Conjugation 102

Although most *starke* verbs do not incur a sound change in the present tense, you might as well become well versed in the few that do. Accepting the challenge, see whether you can conjugate these *very strong* verbs in the following sentences:

1. (essen) Hans _____ gern Bratwurst.
2. (geben) Er _____ mir einen guten Tip.
3. (sehen) Ich _____ einen Biergarten.
4. (treffen) Sie _____ ihre deutsche Brieffreundin.
5. (sprechen) Du _____ sehr gut Englisch.
6. (lesen) Karl _____ die Süddeutsche Zeitung.
7. (fahren) Almut _____ nach Köln.
8. (halten) Der Bus _____ vor der Kirche.
9. (blasen) Der Bayer _____ das Horn.



Achtung

The infinitives of a few verbs take *-n* and not *-en*. The conjugated form of these verbs in the first- and third-person plural is the same as the infinitive form. *Handeln* (*hAn-duhln*), which means "to act," becomes *wir/sie handeln* or "we/they act" in the first- and third-person plural.



What's What?

Strong verb A verb whose stem vowel undergoes a change or a modification when conjugated in the past tense. Only some strong (*stark*) verbs undergo a vowel modification in the present tense (*sehr stark*).

10. (empfehlen) Meine Freundin _____ das Restaurant.
11. (scheinen) Die Sonne _____ sehr hell.
12. (waschen) Du _____ die Wäsche jede Woche.
13. (laufen) Paul _____ sehr schnell und oft.
14. (genießen) Er _____ sein Bier.
15. (tragen) Die Professorin _____ einen Mikrorock.

The following table lists some commonly used strong verbs. Read through them a few times, as you did with the weak verbs. The very strong verb vowel changes are indicated in parentheses after the infinitive. You shouldn't have too much trouble memorizing them—many are near cognates. Don't forget to learn the present-tense stem change if there is one!

Common Strong Verbs

Verb	Pronunciation	Meaning
befehlen (ie)	<i>buh-fay-luhn</i>	to command
beginnen	<i>buh-gi-nuhn</i>	to begin
besitzen	<i>buh-si-tsuhn</i>	to possess
beweisen	<i>buh-vay-zuhn</i>	to prove
bieten	<i>bee-tuhn</i>	to offer
blasen (ä)	<i>blah-zuhn</i>	to blow
bleiben	<i>blay-buhn</i>	to remain
empfangen (ä)	<i>em-pfAn-guhn</i>	to receive
empfehlen (ie)	<i>em-pfay-luhn</i>	to recommend
essen (i)	<i>es-uhn</i>	to eat
fahren (ä)	<i>fah-ruhn</i>	to drive
fallen (ä)	<i>fA-luhn</i>	to fall
fangen (ä)	<i>fAn-guhn</i>	to catch
finden	<i>fin-duhn</i>	to find
fliegen	<i>flee-guhn</i>	to fly
geben (i)	<i>gey-buhn</i>	to give
gehen	<i>gey-uhn</i>	to go
genießen	<i>guh-nee-suhn</i>	to enjoy
geschehen (ie)	<i>guh-shay-uhn</i>	to happen

Verb	Pronunciation	Meaning
halten (ä)	<i>hAl-tuhn</i>	to hold, to stop
hängen	<i>hän-guhn</i>	to hang
helfen (i)	<i>hel-fuhn</i>	to help
laden (ä)	<i>lah-duhn</i>	to load
lassen (ä)	<i>lA-suhn</i>	to leave, to let
laufen (ä)	<i>lou-fuhn</i>	to run
leiden	<i>lay-duhn</i>	to suffer
leihen	<i>lay-uhn</i>	to lend, to borrow
lesen (ie)	<i>ley-zuhn</i>	to read
liegen	<i>lee-guhn</i>	to lie, to be situated
nehmen (i)	<i>ney-muhn</i>	to take
raten (ä)	<i>Rah-tuhn</i>	to advise
reißen	<i>Ray-suhn</i>	to tear
reiten	<i>Ray-tuhn</i>	to ride
rufen	<i>Roo-fuhn</i>	to call
scheinen	<i>shay-nuhn</i>	to shine, to seem
schießen	<i>shee-suhn</i>	to shoot
schlafen (ä)	<i>shlah-fuhn</i>	to sleep
schlagen (ä)	<i>schlah-guhn</i>	to hit
schreiben	<i>shray-buhn</i>	to write
schweigen	<i>shvay-guhn</i>	to be silent
schwimmen	<i>shvi-muhn</i>	to swim
singen	<i>zin-guhn</i>	to sing
sitzen	<i>si-tsuhn</i>	to sit
sprechen (i)	<i>shpRe-Huhn</i>	to speak
stehen	<i>shtay-uhn</i>	to stand
stinken	<i>shtin-kuhn</i>	to stink
tragen (ä)	<i>trah-guhn</i>	to wear, to carry
treffen (i)	<i>tRe-fuhn</i>	to meet
trinken	<i>tRin-kuhn</i>	to drink
tun	<i>tuHn</i>	to do
vergessen	<i>feR-ge-suhn</i>	to forget
versprechen (i)	<i>feR-shpRe-Huhn</i>	to promise
wachsen (ä)	<i>vACH-suhn</i>	to grow
waschen (ä)	<i>va-shuhn</i>	to wash
ziehen	<i>tsee-uhn</i>	to pull



As a Rule

While German has a considerable number of verbs with a stem-vowel change in the *du* and *er/sie/es* forms, it really is simpler than it appears. There are only three types of stem-vowel changes and you have to learn the stem changes associated with strong verbs only once because adding a prefix to a stem does *not* alter the conjugation. Observe: *fangen* (ä) "to catch" and *empfangen* (ä) "to receive"; *sprechen* (i) "to speak" and *versprechen* (i) "to promise"; and *sitzen* "to sit" and *besitzen* "to possess."

Ask Me Anything

Okay, now go back to where you were at the beginning of this chapter, planning a trip. Suppose you're planning another trip—alone, this time. You'll probably want to ask a lot of questions when you get to your destination. Stick to the easy questions—the ones that can be answered with a simple yes or no. You'll deal with more complicated questions in Chapter 10, "Haven't We Met Before? Making Friends."

There are other ways, besides the confused look on your face, to show that you're asking a question: through intonation, the addition of the tag *nicht wahr*, and inversion.

Intonation

One of the easiest ways to indicate that you're asking a question is by simply raising your voice slightly at the end of the sentence. To do so, speak with a rising *inflection*.

Du denkst an die Reise?
Dew denkst An dee Ray-zuh
Are you thinking about the trip?

Nicht Wahr?

One easy way of forming questions in German is by adding the tag *nicht wahr* (*niHt vahR*) to your statements. *Nicht wahr* means "Isn't this true?"

Du denkst an die Reise, nicht wahr?
Dew denkst An dee Ray-zuh, niHt vahR
You think about the trip, don't you?

Inversion

The final way of forming a question is by *inversion*. Inversion is what you do when you reverse the word order of the subject nouns or pronouns and the conjugated form of the verb. We use inversion all the time in English with the addition of *do* as a helper to the verb. Statement: He eats pie. Question: Does he eat pie? If you're up to the challenge of inversion, follow these rules:

- Avoid inverting with *ich*. It's awkward and rarely done.
- Only invert subject nouns or pronouns with conjugated verbs. The following examples will give you a feel for how inversion works.

Du gehst nach Hause.	Gehst du nach Hause?
Er spricht Deutsch.	Spricht er Deutsch?
Wir reisen nach Cottbus.	Reisen wir nach Cottbus?
Ihr eßt Sauerkraut.	Eßt ihr Sauerkraut?
Sie trinken Bier.	Trinken sie Bier?
Du fährst mit dem Zug.	Fährst du mit dem Zug?

Remember that whether you are using intonation, *nicht wahr*, or inversion, you are asking for exactly the same information: a yes or no (*ja oder nein*) answer.

Ask Me If You Can

Now it's time to put what you've learned about inversion to use. You're in an airport, and you need information. After waiting in line at the information counter, it's finally your turn. See whether you can use inversion to provide the questions for the following statements.

Example: Das Flugzeug fliegt um 10 Uhr. (The plane leaves at 10.)

Answer: Fliegt das Flugzeug um 10 Uhr?

1. Das Ticket kostet 500 DM. (The ticket costs 500 DM.)
2. Das ist der Terminal für internationale Flüge. (This is the terminal for international flights.)
3. Die Flugnummer steht auf dem Ticket. (The flight number is indicated on the ticket.)
4. Es gibt Toiletten auf dieser Etage. (There are bathrooms on this floor.)



What's What?

Inversion Reversing the word order of the subject, noun, or pronoun and the conjugated form of the verb to make a statement a question.

5. Der Flug dauert zwei Stunden. (The flight is two hours long.)
6. Das Abendessen ist inklusiv. (The evening meal is included.)

And the Answer Is ...

If you generally look on the bright side of things, you'll probably want to know how to say yes. To answer in the affirmative, use *ja* (*yah*) and then give your statement.

Sprichst du Deutsch?	Ja, ich spreche Deutsch.
<i>shpRiHst doo doytsh</i>	<i>yah, iH shpRe-Huh doytsh</i>

Or if your time is valuable and you are constantly being harangued to do things you have no interest in doing, you should probably learn to say no. To answer negatively, use *nein* (*nayn*) at the beginning of the statement and then add *nicht* (*niHt*) at the end of the statement.

Rauchen Sie?	Nein, ich rauche nicht.
<i>Rou-Chuhn zee</i>	<i>nayn, iH Rou-CHuh niHt</i>

You can vary the forms of your negative answers by putting the following negative phrases before and after the conjugated verb.

... nie(mals)	Never
<i>nee(mahls)</i>	

Ich rauche nie(mals).	I never smoke.
<i>iH Rou-CHuh nee(mahls)</i>	

... nicht mehr	No longer
<i>niHt meyR</i>	

Ich rauche nicht mehr.	I no longer smoke.
<i>iH Rou-CHuh niHt meyR</i>	

... (gar)nichts	Anything, nothing
<i>(gAR)niHts</i>	

Ich rauche nichts.	I'm not smoking anything.
<i>iH Rou-CHuh niHts</i>	

If you want to form simple sentences in the present tense, you'll need to have as many verbs as possible at the tip of your tongue. Refer to the lists of weak and strong verbs earlier in the chapter for help.

The Least You Need to Know

- Weak verbs, with a few exceptions, follow a set pattern of rules.
- Strong verbs always undergo a stem-vowel change in the past tense, and some also undergo a vowel change in the present tense.
- To formulate a yes/no question to elicit information, invert the subject and the verb so that the verb begins the question.
- You can ask questions by using intonation, inversion, or the tag *nicht wahr*.

Part 3

Up, Up, and Away!

After you learn the basics, the next step is to start to converse (don't worry about being left behind; we'll be taking baby steps throughout this section). One of the first things you'll acquire is a working knowledge of common introductory phrases that German speakers use in various situations. You can use these phrases to start conversations and to expand your vocabulary.





Haven't We Met Before? Making Friends

In This Chapter

- Common greetings
- The verb *sein*
- Professions
- Getting the information you need

In the previous chapter, you learned how to create simple German sentences (using subject nouns, pronouns, and verbs) and how to ask basic yes or no questions. Now you're going to put some of what you learned to work. It's time to start engaging in conversation.

You are sitting alone on an airplane, admiring the view of clouds and sky through the window. The person in the seat next to you is German; you want to use this opportunity to test some of your newly acquired language skills.



Culture Shock

One of the subtle differences between German and American cultures is the use of the phrase "How are you?" In America it's almost an extension of a greeting and usually the response an American expects is the simple answer, "I'm fine." If you ask a German, "How are you?" be prepared for a lengthy dissertation. Your question will probably be taken seriously.

Conversation Openers: Greetings and Salutations

Let's face it: You can listen to a thousand tapes at the library, you can read every language book in the bookstore—the moment of truth arrives only when you are face to face with someone who is speaking to you in German. If this person is sitting next to you on the airplane, all the better because he or she can't get away. Each and every German speaker you meet before arriving at your destination will give you the chance to practice what you've learned so far. You may find the following conversation openers useful.

Formal Greetings and Salutations

Using the *du* form of address with someone who isn't a friend or relative is sometimes considered rude. Because you don't know the person you're speaking to, you'll probably want take the formal approach. It

is worth noting, however, that younger generations are tending more and more to use the informal *du* form.

German	Pronunciation	Meaning
Guten Tag.	gew-tuhn tahk	Hello.
Guten Abend.	gew-tuhn ah-bent	Good evening.
mein Herr	mayn heR	Sir
meine Dame	may-nuh dah-muh	Miss, Mrs.
Ich heiße ...	iH hay-suh	My name is ...
Wie heißen Sie?	vee hay-suhn zee	What is your name?
Wie geht es Ihnen?	vee gayt es ee-nuhn	How are you?
Danke, sehr gut.	dAn-kuh, zeyR gewt	Thank you, very well.
Danke, nicht schlecht.	dAn-kuh, niHt shleHt	Thank you, not bad.
Danke, es geht so.	DAn-kuh, es gayt zo	Thank you, so so.

Informal Greetings and Salutations

You hit it off with your plane buddy right away, and he says, “*Dutzen Sie mich, bitte* (*dew-tsuhn zee miH, bi-tuh*),” which means, “Please, use *du* with me.” His request means that you’ve earned the right to a certain degree of intimacy with this person. You can now use the following phrases:

German	Pronunciation	Meaning
Hallo!	<i>hA-lo</i>	Hi!
Ich heiße ...	<i>iH hay-suh</i>	My name is ...
Wie heißt du?	<i>vee hayst dew</i>	What is your name?
Wie geht's?	<i>vee gayts</i>	How are you?
Wie geht es dir?	<i>vee gayt es deeR</i>	How's it going with you?
Was machst du so?	<i>vAs mACHst dew zo</i>	What's up?
Ganz gut.	<i>gAns gewt</i>	Okay.
Ich kann nicht klagen.	<i>iH kAn niHt klah-guhn</i>	I can't complain.
Mal so, mal so.	<i>Mahl zo, mahl zo</i>	So so.
Na ja.	<i>nA-yah</i>	All right.

What Planet Are You From?

If, after you have made your initial introductions, you decide to continue the conversation with your seatmate, you will probably wonder about his idiosyncrasies—the peculiar lilt in his voice when he speaks, certain gestures you have never seen anyone make before, and his use of idioms.

Eventually, you are going to want to know where this person is from. You also are going to want to respond correctly when he asks where you are from. To continue this conversation, you will need to familiarize yourself with the strong verb *kommen* (*ko-muhn*). Take out your verb-ending chart, lop the *-en* off the infinitive to produce the stem (*komm-*), and try to come up with a match to the following table.



What's What?

Saying Hello *Hallo* is informal for “hello” practically everywhere, but in southern Germany and Austria the term *Grüß Gott* (*gRüs got*), literally, “God greets you,” is used formally instead of *Guten Tag* (*gew-tuhn tAhk*).

The Verb **kommen**

Person	Singular	English	Plural	English
First	ich komme <i>iH ko-muh</i>	I come	wir kommen <i>veeR ko-muhn</i>	we come
Second (Formal)	du kommst <i>dew komst</i>	you come	ihr kommt <i>eeR komt</i>	
Third	er, sie, es kommt <i>eR, zee, es komt</i>	he, she, it comes	sie kommen <i>zee ko-muhn</i>	they come



Culture Shock

You should address a man as *Herr* (*heR*) So-and-So and a woman as *Frau* (*fRou*) So-and-So. Although *Fräulein* (*fRoy-layn*) does mean "Miss," most young women in Germany prefer to be addressed as *Frau*. Unlike *Mister*, *Madam*, and *Miss* in English, *Herr*, *Frau*, and *Fräulein* cannot be used on their own.

To question someone about his or her origins, try the following:

Formal use:

Woher kommen Sie?

voh-heR ko-muhn zee

Where are you from?

Informal use:

Woher kommst du?

voh-heR komst dew

Where are you from?

Ich komme aus ...

iH ko-muh ous ...

I come from ...

Keep in mind that most countries, towns, and cities are neuter nouns and take the article *das*. *Die USA* (*dee ew-es-ah*) and *die Vereinigten Staaten* (*dee feR-aq-nik-tuhm shtah-tuhm*), or "United States," are exceptions; because they are plural, they take the plural article *die*. Some other countries that don't take *das* are *die Schweiz* (*dee shvays*), or "Switzerland"; *die Türkei* (*dee tiiR-kay*), or "Turkey"; *der Irak* (*deyR ee-Rahk*), or "Iraq"; *der Iran* (*deyR ee-Rahn*), or "Iran"; *der Libanon* (*deyR lee-bah-non*), or "Lebanon," and *der Kongo* (*deyR kon-go*), or "Congo." (We discuss countries further in Chapter 16, "A Date with the Weather.")

When you use countries, cities, or towns with the neuter article, drop the article *das*:

Ich komme aus New York.

iH ko-muh ous new yoRk

Ich komme aus Amerika.

iH ko-muh ous ah-mey-Ree-kah

Be careful with countries that take *der* and *die* articles. The articles are not dropped, and they must be declined correctly (that is, they must take the appropriate case).

Die USA, which is plural, takes the dative plural article *den*, as it follows *aus*, which is a dative preposition:

Ich komme aus den USA.

iH ko-muh ous deyn ew-es-ah

Die Schweiz, which is feminine, takes the feminine dative article *der*, following the dative preposition *aus*:

Ich komme aus der Schweiz.

iH ko-muh ous deyR shvays

Der Libanon, which is masculine, takes the masculine dative article *dem*:

Ich komme aus dem Libanon.

iH ko-muh ous deym lee-bah-non

To Be or Not to Be?

After you've established where someone is from, you will probably want to find out more about what he does. But what if, instead of answering you directly, he smiles whimsically and says, "*Raten Sie mal* (*Rah-tuhn zee mahl*)," which means, bluntly, "Guess." What can you do? You'll probably have to recite a list of professions in the hopes that sooner or later you'll happen on the right one. To do so, you should learn the conjugation of the irregular verb *sein* (*zayn*), or "to be" and learn some professions. (See the following tables.)



Achtung

Using informal language to address someone with whom you have not established a friendship or bond is generally considered quite rude. To *dutzen* (*dew-tsuhn*) someone—in other words, to use the informal *du* form of address with a person—may alienate the stranger, distant relative, or business acquaintance you are addressing. Generally, you have to earn the privilege to use the informal *du* with people you don't know.



What's What?

Sein One of the four irregular verbs in German. Different from the strong verbs (which follow a regular sound-shift pattern in vowels), since consonants, as well as vowels, change in the truly unpredictable irregular verbs.

The Verb sein

Person	Singular	English	Plural	English
First	ich bin <i>iH bin</i>	I am	wir sind <i>veer zint</i>	we are
Second	du bist <i>dew bist</i>	you are	ihr seid <i>eeR zayt</i>	you are
(Formal)	Sie sind <i>zee zint</i>		Sie sind <i>zee zint</i>	
Third	er, sie, es ist <i>eR, zee, es ist</i>	he, she, it is	sie sind <i>zee zint</i>	they are

Formal:

Was sind Sie von Beruf?
VAs *sint zee fon bey-Rewf*
What is your profession?

Informal:

Was bist du von Beruf? VAs <i>bist dew fon bey-Rewf</i>	Was machst du? vAs <i>maCHst dew</i>	Ich bin ... <i>iH bin ...</i>
What is your profession?	What do you do?	I am ...

Professions

Profession	Pronunciation	English
der Architekt (die Architektin)	<i>deyR AR-Hi-tekt</i> <i>(dee Ar-Hi-tek-tin)</i>	architect
der Chemiker (die Chemikerin)	<i>deyR He-mee-kuhR</i> <i>(dee He-mee-kuh-Rin)</i>	chemist
der Künstler (die Künstlerin)	<i>deyR kün-stluhR</i> <i>(dee kün-stluh-Rin)</i>	artist
der Schauspieler (die Schauspielerin)	<i>deyR shou-shpee-luhR</i> <i>(dee shou-shpee-luh-Rin)</i>	actor
der Schriftsteller (die Schriftstellerin)	<i>deyR shrift-shte-luhR</i> <i>(dee shrift-shte-luh-Rin)</i>	actress
der Kellner (die Kellnerin)	<i>deyR kel-nuhR</i> <i>(dee kel-nuh-Rin)</i>	writer
der Sekretär (die Sekretärin)	<i>deyR sek-Rey-tähR</i> <i>(dee sek-Rey-täRin)</i>	waiter, waitress
der Arzt (die ärztein)	<i>deyR ARtst</i> <i>(dee äRts-tin)</i>	secretary
		doctor

Profession	Pronunciation	English
der Doktor	deyR dok-tohR	doctor
der Elektriker (die Elektrikerin)	deyR ey-lek-tRi-kuhR (dee ey-lek-tRi-kuh-Rin)	electrician
der Student (die Studentin)	deyR shtew-dent (dee shtew-den-tin)	student
der Krankenpfleger (die Krankenschwester)	deyR kRAAn-kuhn-pfley-guhR (dee kRAAn-kuhn-shves-tuhR)	nurse
der Mechaniker (die Mechanikerin)	deyR mey-Hah-ni-kuhR (die mey-Hah-ni-kuh-Rin)	mechanic
der Feuerwehrmann	deyR foy-uhr-veyR-mAn	firefighter
der Friseur (die Frieseuse)	deyR fRee-zihR (dee fRee-züh-zuh)	hairdresser
der Rechtsanwalt (die Rechtsanwältin)	deyR ReHts-An-vAlt (dee ReHts-An-väl-tin)	lawyer
der Polizist (die Polizistin)	deyR poh-lee-tsist (dee poh-lee-tsis-tin)	police officer

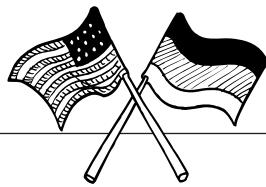
You've been introduced to the verb *sein* and to some of the most common professions. But what's the use of all this newly acquired information if you can't use it? Put what you've learned to use by translating the following sentences into German.

1. I am a waiter.	5. You are a student.
2. He is an electrician.	6. He is a police officer.
3. She is a doctor.	7. She is an electrician.
4. I am a lawyer.	8. You are a writer.



As a Rule

In German the indefinite article *ein(e)* is generally not used when a person states his profession unless the profession is qualified by an adjective. To say, "I'm a policeman," you would say, "*Ich bin Polizist (ich bin poh-lee-tsist)*." To say, "I'm a good policeman," however, you would say, "*Ich bin ein guter Polizist (iH bin ayn gew-tuhR poh-lee-tsist)*."



We Are Family

Have you noticed how the endings for professions in both English and German are often *-er*? This goes back to way back when, as both languages share the same lexical morphology for forming agentive suffixes. That is to say, an additional *-er* suffix turns the verb into a doer of the verb: One who sings is a singer; or a *Sänger*.

Get Nosy

When you learn a new language, you often revert to what feels like a somewhat infantile state of existence. You have a limited vocabulary and, at best, a somewhat sketchy understanding of grammar. You point to things a lot and ask, “What is that?” or “Was ist das (vAs ist dAs)?” and “What does that mean?” or “Was bedeutet das (vAs be-doy-tuht dAs)?” But anyone who has been around children for more than a few minutes knows that even someone with a limited knowledge of a language can convey a broad range of meaning.

One advantage of learning a new language is that you can get away with acting a little childish. So get nosy. Start asking about everything. Make faux pas. People will think you’re just trying to expand your vocabulary (see the following table).

Information Questions

German	Pronunciation	English
mit wem	<i>mit vem</i>	with whom
um wieviel Uhr	<i>oom vee-feel ooR</i>	at what time
von wem	<i>von vem</i>	of, about, from whom
wann	<i>vAn</i>	when
warum/wieso/weshalb	<i>va-Rum/vee-soh/ves-hAlp</i>	why
was	<i>vAs</i>	what
wer	<i>veR</i>	who
wie	<i>vee</i>	how
wie lange	<i>vee lA-nge</i>	how long
wieviel	<i>vee-feel</i>	how much, many
wo	<i>voh</i>	where
woher	<i>voh-heR</i>	from where
wohin	<i>voh-hin</i>	where (to)
womit/mit was	<i>voh-mit/mit vas</i>	with what
worüber	<i>voh-Rüh-buhR</i>	what about
wovon/von was	<i>voh-fon/fon vas</i>	of, about, from what
zu wem	<i>tsoo vem</i>	to whom



As a Rule

The interrogative pronouns *wen* and *wem* are used with a preposition to refer only to persons. The interrogative pronoun *was* refers to things and ideas. As an object of a preposition, *was* may be replaced by a *wo*-compound: *wo-* is added as a prefix to prepositions, as in *womit?* "with what?" or *wofür?* "for what?" In colloquial German the preposition may be followed by *was*: *Vor was hast du Angst?* which means "What are you afraid of?" *Wo-* expands to *wor-* when the preposition begins with a vowel: *Worüber sprechen wir?*

Getting Information the Easy Way

A good-looking person is sitting across from you in a train. He or she has been glancing over in your direction for some time now. You've finally mustered up the courage to say something. What's your opening line? You put aside "What's your sign" as too old hat. How about "Hi, where are you from?" If you're charming enough, you might get away with it. Here are some other ways to break the ice.

Formal	Informal	English
Mit <i>wem</i> reisen Sie? <i>mit vem Ray-zuhn zee</i>	Mit <i>wem</i> reist du? <i>mit vem Rayst dew</i>	With whom are you traveling?
Warum reisen Sie? <i>vah-Room Ray-zuhn zee</i>	Warum reist du? <i>vah-Room Rayst dew</i>	Why are you traveling?
Wie lange reisen Sie? <i>vee lAn-guh Ray-zuhn zee</i>	Wie lange reist du? <i>vee lAn-guh Rayst dew</i>	How long are you traveling for?
Wohin reisen Sie? <i>voh-hin ray-suhn zee</i>	Wohin reist du? <i>voh-hin rayst dew</i>	Where are you traveling?
Wie finden Sie das Land? <i>vee fin-duhn zee dAs lAnt</i>	Wie findest du das Land? <i>vee fin-duhst dew dAs lAnt</i>	How do you like the country?
Wo wohnen Sie? <i>voh voh-nuhn zee</i>	Wo wohnst du? <i>voh vohnst dew</i>	Where do you live?
Woher kommen Sie? <i>vo-heR ko-muhn zee</i>	Woher kommst du? <i>vo-her komst doo</i>	Where are you (coming) from?
Wovon sprechen Sie? <i>voh-fon shpRe-chun zee</i>	Wovon sprichst du? <i>voh-fon shpriHst doo</i>	What are you speaking about?

continues

Formal	Informal	English
Wieviele Geschwister/ Kinder haben Sie?	<i>vee-fee-luh guh-shvis-tuhR/ kin-duhR hah-buhn zee</i>	How many sisters and brothers/ children do you have?
Wann reisen Sie zurück? <i>vAn Ray-zuhn zee tsü-Rük?</i>	Wann reist du zurück? <i>vAn Rayst dew tsü-Rük</i>	When are you traveling home?



As a Rule

To express directions of motion, the *her-* and *hin-* may be used with the interrogative *wo* to suggest motion toward the speaker (*woher*, where from) or motion away from the speaker (*wohin*, where to). In spoken German the question words *wohin* and *woher* are often separated: *wo* is placed at the start of the question; *hin* and *her* appear at the end: *Wohin geht Christine?* or *Wo geht Christine hin?* In a statement, *hin* and *her* occupy the last position in the sentence, like a separable prefix verb: *Gehen wir hin.*

Ask Away

Each of the following statements is an answer to a question. Try to ask the questions that the statements answer. In the first example, use the informal *du* to ask questions about Klaus. In the second example, use the third-person singular *sie* to ask questions about Beka. Don't forget what you learned about inversion in Chapter 9, "Click Your Heels Together and Say: There's No Place Like Deutschland."

Example: Ich heiße Klaus. Answer: Wie heißt du?

- Ich heiße Klaus und ich komme aus Köln. Ich reise mit meiner Schwester nach München. Ich reise gern.
- Beka kommt aus den Vereinigten Staaten. Sie reist einen Monat lang durch Deutschland. Sie findet Deutschland schön. Sie muß bald wieder nach Hause zurückfliegen.

The Least You Need to Know

- Don't use *du* with strangers or with your superiors! The greetings you use depend on your familiarity with a person.
- The verb *kommen* with the question word *woher* is used to ask someone where they're from.
- For most professions, simply add an *-in* to speak about a female.
- You can get information by learning and asking a few key questions.



I'd Like to Get to Know You

In This Chapter

- Introducing your relatives
- Expressing possession
- Introducing yourself
- More about irregular verbs: *haben*

By now you should be well on your way to introducing yourself and your friends to other people. But what if your mother, father, uncle, and in-laws are all traveling with you, peering over your shoulder every time you strike up a conversation? Perhaps the best thing to do is to find people to introduce them to so you can sneak away and finally have a really intimate conversation with someone. Introducing your relatives is the first thing you'll learn to do in this chapter.

The next thing you'll learn is how to find out about other people. One approach is to ask the objects of your curiosity what they think about themselves: Do they consider themselves to be creative, intelligent, sensitive, or adventurous? To ask these kinds of questions, you're going to need adjectives. And to use adjectives correctly, you must attach the appropriate ending to them so that they agree in gender and case with the noun they are modifying. This process is similar to changing the definite (*der*) and indefinite (*ein*) articles according to their gender and grammatical function as you did in Chapter 8, "Fitting Form with Function."

It's a Family Affair

Have you ever been introduced to a group of people sitting around a table and said, “Oh, and this must be your lovely daughter,” only to find yourself the object of puzzled, nervous glances? Was the silence broken when the gentleman you were addressing said, “Actually, no. This is my wife.”? Of course, if you find yourself putting your foot in your mouth in German, you can always claim that you are still learning your vocabulary. Start practicing now with the words for family members in the following table.

Family Members

Male	Pronunciation	English	Female	Pronunciation	English
das Kind	<i>dAs kint</i>	child	das Kind	<i>dAs kint</i>	child
der (Ehe) Mann	<i>deyR (ey-huh) mAn</i>	husband	die (Ehe) Frau	<i>dee (ey-huh) fRou</i>	wife
der Bruder	<i>deyR brew-duhR</i>	brother	die Schwester	<i>dee shves-tuhR</i>	sister
der Cousin	<i>deyR kew-zahN</i>	cousin	die Cousine	<i>dee kew-see-nuh</i>	cousin
der Enkel	<i>deyR en-kuhl</i>	grandson	die Enkelin	<i>dee en-kuh-lin</i>	granddaughter
der Freund	<i>deyR fRoynt</i>	boyfriend	die Freundin	<i>dee fRoyn-din</i>	girl-friend
der Neffe	<i>deyR ne-fuh</i>	nephew	die Nichte	<i>dee niH-tuh</i>	niece
der Onkel	<i>deyR on-kuhl</i>	uncle	die Tante	<i>dee tAn-tuh</i>	aunt
der Opa/ Großvater	<i>deyR oh-pah/ gRohs-fah-tuhR</i>	grandfather	die Oma/ Großmutter	<i>dee oh-mah/ gRohs-moo-tuhR</i>	grandmother
der Schwie- gersohn	<i>deyR shvee- guhR-zohn</i>	son-in-law	die Schwie- ger-tochter	<i>dee shvee- guhR-toCH-tuhR</i>	daughter-in-law
der Schwie- gervater	<i>deyR shvee- guhR-fah-tuhR</i>	father-in- law	die Schwie- ger-mutter	<i>dee shvee- guhR-moo-tuhR</i>	mother-in-law
der Sohn	<i>deyR zohn</i>	son	die Tochter	<i>dee toCH-tuhR</i>	daughter
der Stief- bruder	<i>deyR shteef- bRew-duhR</i>	step- brother	die Stief- schwester	<i>dee shteef- shves-tuhR</i>	step-sister
der Stief- sohn	<i>deyR shteef- zohn</i>	step-son	die Stief- tochter	<i>dee shteef- toCH-tuhR</i>	step-daughter
der Vater	<i>deyR fah-tuhR</i>	father	die Mutter	<i>dee moo-tuhR</i>	mother

Here are some useful plurals and their spellings:

Plural	Pronunciation	English
die Kinder	dee kin-duhR	the children
die Eltern	dee el-tuhRn	the parents
die Großeltern	dee gRohs-el-tuhRn	the grandparents
die Schwiegereltern	dee shvee-guhR-el-tuhRn	the in-laws

Are You Possessed?

We're all somebody's something. You're your mother's daughter or son, your uncle's nephew or niece, your wife's husband, or your husband's wife. There are two principal ways of showing possession in German: by using the genitive case and by using possessive adjectives.

The Genitive Case: Showing Possession

The genitive case shows possession or dependence. However, to show possession, you must also decline the noun and the noun marker correctly. Have you forgotten what noun marker means? Refresh your memory: noun marker refers to articles, such as *der*, *die*, *das*, or *die* (the equivalent of *the* for plural nouns); *ein*, the equivalent of *a* for masculine or neuter nouns; or *eine*, the equivalent of *a* for feminine nouns. Remember from Chapter 8 that masculine and neuter nouns take an ending, -(e)s, in the genitive case. Here is an abbreviated version of the genitive declension of the definite articles *der*, *die*, and *das* and of the plural article *die*. When you use proper names or are speaking of family members possessing someone or something, you can use the *genitive -s* to show possession (add the -s without an apostrophe to the end of the word).



What's What?

Genitive -s This method of showing possession can be used with family members and proper names. For example, *Stephanies Vater* (*ste-fah-nees fah-tuhR*) means "Stephanie's father," and *Vaters Tochter* (*fah-tuhRs toH-tuhR*) means "father's daughter."

Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	Plural (All Genders)
des	der	des	der

Note that the order of objects closely corresponds to the English possessive construction: *the X of the Y*, as in *die Farbe des Hauses*, or “the color of the house.” In German you identify the object first and then specify its owner.

German	Pronunciation	Meaning
Das ist der Sohn des Mannes.	<i>dAs ist deyR zohn des mA-nuhs</i>	That is the man's son.
Das ist der Ehemann der Frau.	<i>dAs ist deyR ey-huh-mAn deyR fRou</i>	That is the woman's husband.
Die Mutter des Kindes ist schön.	<i>dee moo-tuhR des kin-duhs ist shöhn</i>	The child's mother is beautiful.



What's What?

Possessive adjectives The adjectives *mein*, *dein*, *sein*, *ihr*, *unser*, *euer*, and *ihr* show that something belongs to someone. These are almost always followed by a noun and therefore, like the *ein* words, need an ending.

Mine, All Mine

The *possessive adjectives* my, your, his, her, and so on show that something belongs to somebody. In German, possessive adjectives agree in number and gender with the noun they are describing (that is, with the thing being possessed rather than with the possessor, since the *his* or *her* part of the adjective already refers to the possessor). Singular possessive adjectives use the same endings as the declension of the indefinite article *ein* (declined in Chapter 8 and written out on a card by YOU!). You can think of this chart as the “*ein Wort*” chart—all of its members take the same endings and sort of rhyme: *ein, mein, dein, sein, ...* well, you get my drift. The following examples show someone loving someone. The *someone* is the direct object and therefore takes the accusative case.

English	German + Pronunciation
He loves his father.	Er liebt seinen Vater. <i>eyR leept zay-nuhn fah-tuhR.</i>
He loves his mother.	Er liebt seine Mutter. <i>eyR leept zay-nuh moo-tuhR</i>
She loves her father.	Sie liebt ihren Vater. <i>zee leept ee-Ruhn fah-tuhR</i>
She loves her mother.	Sie liebt ihre Mutter. <i>zee leept ee-Ruh moo-tuhR</i>

The following table lists the possessive adjectives.

Possessive Adjectives

Person	Singular	Meaning	Plural	Meaning
First	mein <i>mayn</i>	my	unser <i>oon-zuhR</i>	our
Second	dein <i>dayn</i>	your	euer <i>oy-uhR</i>	your
(Formal)	Ihr <i>eeR</i>		Ihr <i>eeR</i>	
Third	sein, ihr, sein <i>zayn, eeR, zayn</i>	his, her, its	ihr <i>eeR</i>	their

The following two tables review the declension of possessive adjectives that exactly mirror the declension of the indefinite article, *ein*. Do recall that the only way the following paradigm deviates from the definite article (*der Wort*) paradigm is that the masculine nominative, neuter nominative, and accusative take no ending. Otherwise, it is your *ein Wort* paradigm!

The Declension of the Possessive Adjective

Case	Masculine “your man”	Feminine “your woman”	Neuter “your child”
Nom.	dein Mann <i>dayn mAn</i>	deine Frau <i>day-nuh fRou</i>	dein Kind <i>dayn kint</i>
Acc.	deinen Mann <i>day-nuhn mAn</i>	deine Frau <i>day-nuh fRou</i>	dein Kind <i>dayn kint</i>
Dat.	deinem Mann <i>day-nuhm mAn</i>	deiner Frau <i>day-nuhR fRou</i>	deinem Kind <i>day-nuhm kint</i>
Gen.	deines Mann(e)s <i>day-nuhs mAn(uh)s</i>	deiner Frau <i>day-nuhR fRou</i>	deines Kind(e)s <i>day-nuhs kind(uh)s</i>

The Declension of the Possessive Adjective

Case	Plural “your children”
Nom.	deine Kinder <i>day-nuh kin-duhR</i>
Acc.	deine Kinder <i>day-nuh kin-duhR</i>

continues

The Declension of the Possessive Adjective (continued)

Case	Plural "your children"
Dat.	deinen Kindern <i>day-nuhn kin-duhR</i>
Gen.	deiner Kinder <i>day-nuhR kin-duhR</i>

Now that you know how to express possession with the genitive case and with possessive adjectives, see whether you can express these relationships in German:

Example: her father

Answer: ihr Vater

1. his sister
2. my uncle
3. our family
4. your (pl.) children
5. the girl's brother
6. the man's mother
7. the child's parents
8. the husband of my sister
9. the parents of his wife
10. the aunt of your (sg.) cousin (m.)

Using Possessive Adjectives to Show Your Preference

Everyone has favorites. What's your favorite color, song, or city? German uses the adjective *lieblings-* (*leep-links-*) to express "favorite" after the appropriate possessive adjective: *mein* for a masculine (*der*) noun, *meine* for a feminine (*die*) noun, and *mein* for a neuter (*das*) noun in the nominative case. The word *lieblings-* is linked to the noun to form a compound noun: *die Lieblingsfarbe* (*leep-links-faR-buh*) for "favorite color"; *das Lieblingslied* (*leep-links-leet*) for "favorite song"; *die Lieblingsstadt* (*leep-links-shtAt*) for "favorite city." Recall that the gender of this new word will be determined by the gender of its right-hand component.

Here's an example:

Mein Lieblingsschauspieler ist Robert de Niro.
mayn leep-links-shou-shpee-luhR ist Roh-beRt de nee-Roh
My favorite actor is Robert de Niro.

Catharines Lieblingsfilm ist *der englische Patient*.

Kah-tuh-Ree-nuhs leep-links-film ist deyR en-gli-shuh pah-tsi-uhnt

Catharine's favorite movie is *The English Patient*.

Try forming five sentences to express your favorite things!

Example: das Gemüse (*guh-mü-zuh*), vegetable

Answer: Mein Lieblingsgemüse ist Spinat.

1. der Film (movie)
2. die Schriftstellerin (woman writer)
3. das Buch (book)
4. die Stadt (city)
5. das Land (country)



Achtung

The German word *ihr* (*eeR*) has many meanings. As a possessive adjective, it can mean "her," "their," or "your." One way of avoiding confusion in written German is by remembering to capitalize *Ihr* when it means "your."

Let Me Introduce You

Introductions keep people from standing on opposite sides of the room staring at their feet all evening. Introductions break more ice than the *Titanic*, and whether you like them or not, it's pretty tough to get by without them. Practice a few of the following phrases to get the hang of introducing yourself.

German	Pronunciation	English
Darf ich mich vorstellen? Mein Name ist	<i>dARf iH miH foR shte-luhn? mayn nah-muh ist</i>	May I introduce myself? My name is
Kennen Sie (kennst du) meine Schwester Kathrin?	<i>ke-nuhn zee (kenst dew) may-nuh shves-tuhR kah-tReen</i>	Do you know my sister Katrin?
Kommen Sie (komm), ich stelle Ihnen (dir) meine Schwester Kathrin vor.	<i>ko-muhn zee (kom), iH shte-luh ee-nuhn (deeR) may-nuh shves-tuhR kah-tReen foR</i>	Come on, let me introduce my sister Katrin.
Das ist meine Schwester Kathrin.	<i>dAs ist may-nuh shves-tuhR kah-treeN</i>	This is my sister Katrin.

You wouldn't greet the prime minister of England with a quick, "Hey, man, what's happenin'?" German has similar rules about the proper and improper way to deal with formal introductions. If you are being introduced to the head of a company at a business meeting, you will be given a formal introduction. Your response, in turn, should be expressed formally. Here are some formal ways of responding to an introduction:

Es freut mich, Sie kennenzulernen.
es froyt miH, zee ke-nuhn-tsew-leR-nuhn

It is a pleasure to meet you.

You're at a party and a friend wants to introduce you to someone; you'll probably find yourself caught up in an informal introduction. Here are some informal ways of responding to an introduction:

Es freut mich, dich kennenzulernen.
es froyt miH, diH ke-nuhn-tsew-leR-nuhn

Great meeting you.



Culture Shock

You don't have to go to Germany to find somebody who will help you practice your German. Go to Canada or to Latin America or travel across the United States in a convertible shouting *Guten Tag!* at stop-lights; sooner or later, someone will shout *Guten Tag!* back. Five million native German speakers live in Canada and the United States, and two million live in Latin America.

To reply to an informal introduction, say:

Freut mich.

Froyt miH

What a pleasure.

Schön, dich kennenzulernen.

Shön, diH ke-nuhn-tswe-leR-nuhn

Nice to meet you.

Angenehm.

An-guh-naym

Pleasant.

Breaking the Ice

Okay, you've learned all about family names, showing possession, and introductions. Now you're ready to get out there and converse! Imagine you and a few members of your family are taking a bus to a local museum. Soon after you board, an interesting-looking individual whom you seem to remember having seen somewhere before sits next to you and begins flipping through a magazine. See whether you can do the following:

1. Introduce yourself.
2. Tell where you are from.
3. Say what you do.
4. Ask your new acquaintance where she comes from.
5. Ask him whether he knows a member of your family.
6. Introduce a member of your family to her.
7. Imagine that he introduces himself to you and express pleasure at having met him.

Getting Involved in Conversation

One very useful verb is *haben* (*hah-buhn*) “to have.” You can use this verb to express many things concerning yourself, including how long you’ve been living in a particular place. Like the verb *sein*, *haben* is irregular (the second of the four irregular verbs in German). You’ll have to memorize its conjugation, which shouldn’t be too difficult—the irregularities of losing the *b* occur in the second- and third-person singular forms, exactly where the vowel changes occur in very strong verbs (see the following table).

The Verb *haben*

Person	Singular	Meaning	Plural	Meaning
First	ich habe <i>iH hah-buh</i>	I have	wir haben <i>veeR hah-buhn</i>	We have
Second	du hast <i>dew hAst</i>	You have	ihr habt <i>eeR hAbt</i>	You have
(Formal)	Sie haben <i>zee hah-buhn</i>		Sie haben <i>zee hah-buhn</i>	
Third	er, sie, es, hat <i>eyR, zee, es, hAt</i>	he, she, it, has	sie haben <i>zee hah-buhn</i>	They have

Express Yourself with *Haben*

You can take a look at Chapter 6, “Are Idiomatic Expressions for Idiots?” to review the idioms with *haben* that express physical conditions. Here you’ll pick up some new expressions with *haben*. Maybe you want to express how happy you are to have the opportunity (*die Gelegenheit haben*) to engage in conversation with someone, or how lucky you are (*wieviel Glück du hast*) to be able to visit Germany. The following table lists some idiomatic phrases that use *haben* to express luck, intention, and opportunity. You need merely combine these with the rest of your thought, involving another verb and idea (an infinitive phrase).



As a Rule

In English, dependent infinitives used with most verbs are preceded by *to*. In German, dependent infinitives used with most verbs are preceded by *zu*. The German infinitive phrase is normally at the end of a sentence and is composed of *zu* and an infinitive. Although in English other parts of the phrase (modifiers and objects) follow the infinitive phrase, in German these elements precede it. Some verbs that can be followed by *zu + infinitive* include: *beginnen*, *brachen*, *lernen*, *scheinen*, and *vergessen*, as in “*Vergiss nicht zu essen!*”

Expressions with *Haben*

Idiom	Pronunciation	Meaning
die Gelegenheit haben	<i>dee gey-ley-guhn-hayt hah-buhn</i>	to have the opportunity
es hat keinen Zweck	<i>es hat kai-nuhn tsvek</i>	there's no point
keine Lust haben	<i>kai-nuh loost hah-buhn</i>	to have no desire
die Zeit haben	<i>dee tsayt hah-buhn</i>	to have time
das Glück haben	<i>dAs glük hah-buhn</i>	to be lucky
die (An)Gewohnheit haben	<i>dee (An)geuh-vohn-hayt hah-buhn</i>	to be accustomed to
die Absicht haben	<i>dee Ap-ziHt hah-buhn</i>	to have the intention
das Recht haben	<i>dAs ReHt hah-buhn</i>	to have the right
den Mut haben	<i>deyn moot hah-buhn</i>	to have the courage

Be sure to conjugate the verb *haben* correctly when you use it in a sentence.

German	English
Du hast die Gelegenheit reich zu werden.	You have the opportunity to become rich.
Wir haben Glück im Spiel.	We are lucky in the game.
Ich habe keine Zeit.	I have no time.
Sie haben das Recht zu schweigen.	You have the right to be silent.
Ihr habt die schlechte Angewohnheit zu rauchen.	You all have the bad habit of smoking.
Er hat die Absicht sie zu heiraten.	He has the intention of getting married.
Es hat keinen Zweck, die Möbel auf der Titanic wieder zu arrangieren.	There's no point in rearranging the furniture on the Titanic.

Using Idioms with Haben

These idiomatic expressions are of little use to you in their infinitive forms. See how successfully you've memorized them by completing the following sentences with the correctly conjugated form of the verb *haben*.

das Glück haben	die Gewohnheit haben
die Absicht haben	die Zeit haben
keine Lust haben	den Mut haben

1. Dirk ist nicht fröhlich. Er ___ mitzukommen.
2. Eva ist sehr abenteuerlich. Sie ___, Bungy-Jumping zu machen.
3. Hans ist verliebt. Er ___ zu heiraten.
4. Es sind Ferien. Anne und Mark ___ eine Reise nach Deutschland zu machen.
5. Ihr habt in der Lotterie gewonnen. Ihr ___ im Spiel.
6. Du siehst immerfern. Du ___, zu viel fernzusehen.

What's He/She Like?

What good is a rock star if she's not rebellious and magnetic? Or a Marine if he's not courageous and strong? Without adjectives—words that describe nouns—describing someone is about as easy as brain surgery. With them, you can paint pictures with words. If you want to describe someone or something, you will need to use descriptive adjectives. German adjectives take an ending when they come immediately

before the noun so that noun and adjective agree in gender (masculine, feminine, or neuter), number (singular or plural), and case (nominative, accusative, dative, or genitive)—seems to be a recurring theme, eh? If an adjective doesn't precede a noun, but rather comes after the verb, the adjective doesn't need an ending.

A declining adjective—one taking an ending expressing agreement:

Die freundliche Katze schnurrt viel.

Dee front-li-Huh kah-tsuh shnoort feel

The friendly cat purrs a lot.

A nondeclining adjective—no noun follows it:

Die Katze ist freundlich.

dee kah-tsuh ist front-liH

The cat is friendly.



As a Rule

Adjectives that follow verbs, as in *Der Wein ist gut*, do not take endings. As such adjectives are in the verb half of the sentence, they are referred to as predicate adjectives. If, however, an adjective precedes the noun it modifies, its role becomes attributive and it will take an ending. All consecutive adjectives, no matter how many, that precede a noun have the same ending: *das schöne, lustige, kleine, intelligente Kind* (the pretty, funny, small, intelligent child).

Figuring Out Adjective Endings

Adjectives can take different endings depending on the type of word that precedes them; these words are commonly referred to as limiting words. When a “*der Wort*” (definite articles and such) precedes an adjective, it performs the arduous task of expressing gender and grammatical function (case). Hence the following adjective ending doesn't need to reflect this information and takes a so-called weak ending (-e/-en): *der gute Film; Die nette Schwester besucht den faulen Bruder*. If no limiting word comes before the adjective (which would mark gender and case), then the adjective has to take on this responsibility and needs to be “strong” enough to indicate gender and case: *deustches Bier; französischer Käse*. In the middle of this spectrum are adjectives that come after certain “*ein* words.” *Ein* words share characteristics of both weak and

strong declensions. The grammatically ambiguous masculine nominative, neuter nominative, and accusative *ein* words (*ein/ein/ein*) depend on the adjective for grammatical expression: *ein rotes Auto, mein neuer Ball*. The good news is that these declensions are all quite regular, and once you learn the corresponding paradigms, you won't have any trouble.

Some words, called *der* words, are inflected just like the definite article; these words take the weak declension of adjectives: *der* ("the"), *dieser* ("this"), *jeder* ("each"), *jener* ("that"), *mancher* ("many a"), *solcher* ("such"), *welcher* ("which, what"). The following table gives *der* word declension with the corresponding adjective ending. You can make a useful chart to illustrate the adjective endings for adjectives preceded by a *der* word by setting up your paradigm with cases and genders and then filling in the bold-faced endings shown here.

The Weak (-e/-en) Declension of an Adjective Preceded by a "der" Word

Case	Masculine "the little boy"	Feminine "the little cat"	Neuter "the little pig"	Plural "the little pigs"
Nom.	der kleine Junge	die kleine Katze	das kleine Schwein	die kleinen Schweine
	<i>deyR klay-nuh yoon-guh</i>	<i>dee klay-nuh KA-tzuh</i>	<i>dAs klay-nuh shvayn</i>	<i>dee klay-nuhn shvay-nuh</i>
Acc.	den kleinen Jungen	die kleine Katze	das kleine Schwein	die kleinen Schweine
	<i>deyn klay-nuhn yoon-guhn</i>	<i>dee klay-nuh KA-tzuh</i>	<i>dAs klay-nuh shvayn</i>	<i>dee klay-nuhn shvay-nuh</i>
Dat.	dem kleinen Jungen	der kleinen Katze	dem kleinen Schwein	den kleinen Schweinen
	<i>deym klay-nuhn yoon-guhn</i>	<i>deyR klay-nuhn KA-tzuh</i>	<i>deym klay-nuhn shvayn</i>	<i>dehn klay-nuhn shvay-nuh</i>
Gen.	des kleinen Jungen	der kleinen Katze	des kleinen Schweins	der kleinen Schweine
	<i>des klay-nuhn yoon-guhn</i>	<i>deyR klay-nuhn KA-tzuh</i>	<i>des klay-nuhn shvayns</i>	<i>deyR klay-nuhn shvay-nuh</i>

As you can see in the preceding table, all adjectives following a *der* word in the dative and genitive cases or with plural nouns take the ending *-en*.

Adjectives not preceded by a definite article, a *der* word, an indefinite article, or an *ein* word must indicate the gender and case of the noun they modify. Thus, when no article precedes a noun, adjectives take the strong declension and resemble a *der* word in their ending: *Schönes Wetter, was?* (*shö-nuhs ve-tuhR, vAs*) "Nice weather, isn't it?"

The following table illustrates this similarity between unpreceded adjective endings and the *der* words, with the only exception found in the masculine and neuter genitive adjective endings.

The strong declension also is used in the salutation of a letter because no limiting word precedes the adjective:

Lieber Vater
lee-buhR fah-tuhR
 Dear father

The Strong Declension of an Adjective Not Preceded by a Limiting Word

Case	Masculine “green salad”	Feminine “cold milk”	Neuter “warm bread”	Plural “fresh fish”
Nom.	grüner Salat	kalte Milch	warmes Brot	frische Fische
	<i>grü-nuhR</i> <i>zah-lAt</i>	<i>kAl-tuh milH</i>	<i>vAR-muhs bRot</i>	<i>fri-shuh</i> <i>fi-shuh</i>
Acc.	grünen Salat	kalte Milch	warmes Brot	frische Fische
	<i>grü-nuhn</i> <i>zah-lAt</i>	<i>kAl-tuh milH</i>	<i>vAr-muhs bRot</i>	<i>fri-shuh</i> <i>fi-shuh</i>
Dat.	grünem Salat	kalter Milch	warmem Brot	frischen Fischen
	<i>grü-nuhm</i> <i>zah-lAt</i>	<i>kAl-tuhR</i> <i>milH</i>	<i>vAr-muhm bRot</i>	<i>fri-shuhn</i> <i>fi-shuhn</i>
Gen.	grünen* Salats	kalter Milch	warmen* Brotes	frischer Fische
	<i>grü-nuhn</i> <i>zah-lAt</i>	<i>kAl-tuhR</i> <i>milH</i>	<i>vAr-muhn</i> <i>bRo-uhs</i>	<i>fri-shuhR</i> <i>fi-shuh</i>

*Note that the only adjective endings that do not resemble the *der* Wort paradigm are the genitive masculine and neuter, which take an *-en* rather than the predicted *-es* ending. But you still get to inflect the genitive masculine and neuter noun with an *-(e)s*, so take heart!

When adjectives come after an *ein* Wort, they have the responsibility to indicate the grammar only if the preceding limiting word doesn't—indicated by an asterisk in the following table. Otherwise, the adjectives become wishy-washy and weak. Remember, *ein* words include *ein*, *kein* (negator), *mein*, *dein*, *sein*, *ihr* (f.), *unser*, *euer*, *ihr* (pl.), *Ihr* (formal). See the following table.

Adjective Endings Following an *ein Wort*

Case	Masculine “my big brother”	Feminine “my big sister”	Neuter “my big house”	Plural “my big houses”
Nom.	mein großer* Bruder <i>mayn gRoh-suhR bRew-duhR</i>	meine große Schwester <i>may-nuh gRoh-suh shve-stuhR</i>	mein großes* Haus <i>mayn gRoh-suhs hous</i>	meine großen Häuser <i>may-nuh gRoh-suhm hoy-suhR</i>
Acc.	meinen großen Bruder <i>may-nuhn gRoh- suhm bRew-duhR</i>	meine große Schwester <i>may-nuh gRoh-suh shve-stuhR</i>	mein großes* Haus <i>mayn gRoh-suhs hous</i>	meine großen Häuser <i>may-nuh gRoh-suhm hoy-suhR</i>
Dat.	meinem großen Bruder <i>mayn-uhm gRoh- suhm bRew-duhR</i>	meiner großen Schwester <i>may-nuhR gRoh- suhm shve-stuhR</i>	meinem großen Haus <i>may-nuhm gRoh- suhm hous</i>	meinen großen Häusern <i>may-nuhn gRoh-suhm hoy-suhRn</i>
Gen.	meines großen Bruders <i>may-nuhs gRoh- suhm bRew-duhRs</i>	meiner großen Schwester <i>may-nuhR gRoh- suhm shve-stuhR</i>	meines großen Hauses <i>may-nuhs gRoh- suhm hou-suhs</i>	meiner großen Häuser <i>may-nuhR gRoh-suhm hoy-suhR</i>

*Denotes instances in which the *ein word* itself has no ending; thus it becomes the responsibility of the adjective to reflect case and gender.

Note that just like adjectives following a *der Wort*, all adjectives in the dative and genitive cases, as well as all plurals, get the easy *ben*.

Mary, Mary, Quite Contrary

Are you fickle? Knowing adjectives and their opposites comes in handy if you're constantly changing your mind. If you find something interesting one moment and boring the next, you may want to memorize the adjectives in the following table along with their opposites. Besides, if you learn adjectives with their opposites, you are economically acquiring two words for the memory price of one!

A List of Useful Adjectives

German	Pronunciation	Meaning	German	Pronunciation	Meaning
alt	<i>Alt</i>	old, aged	jung	<i>yoong</i>	young
dick	<i>dik</i>	fat or thick	dünn	<i>dün</i>	thin
blöd	<i>blöd</i>	stupid	intelligent	<i>in-te-li-gent</i>	intelligent
fleißig	<i>flay-siH</i>	industrious	faul	<i>fawl</i>	lazy
gesund	<i>guh-zoont</i>	healthy	krank	<i>kRanK</i>	sick
groß	<i>gRohs</i>	big	klein	<i>klayn</i>	small
hart	<i>hArt</i>	hard	weich	<i>vayH</i>	soft
hell	<i>hel</i>	bright	dunkel	<i>doon-kuhl</i>	dark
hoch	<i>hohCH</i>	high	tief	<i>teef</i>	low
interessant	<i>in-tey-re-sAnt</i>	interesting	langweilig	<i>lAng-vay-liH</i>	boring
kalt	<i>kAlt</i>	cold	warm	<i>vahRm</i>	warm
klug	<i>klewk</i>	smart	dumm	<i>doom</i>	dumb
lang	<i>lAng</i>	long	kurz	<i>kooRts</i>	short
lustig	<i>loos-tiH</i>	funny	ernst	<i>eRnst</i>	serious
müde	<i>müh-duh</i>	tired	munter	<i>moon-tuhR</i>	awake
mutig	<i>mew-tiH</i>	brave	feige	<i>fay-guh</i>	cowardly
naß	<i>nAs</i>	wet	trocken	<i>tRo-kuhn</i>	dry
reich	<i>RayH</i>	rich	arm	<i>Arm</i>	poor
scharf	<i>shArf</i>	sharp	stumpf	<i>shtoompf</i>	blunt
schön	<i>shöhn</i>	beautiful	häßlich	<i>häs-liH</i>	ugly
schwer	<i>shveR</i>	hard or heavy	leicht	<i>layHt</i>	easy or light
stark	<i>shtARK</i>	strong	schwach	<i>shvACH</i>	weak
süß	<i>zühs</i>	sweet	sauer	<i>zou-uhR</i>	sour
tolerant	<i>to-luh-Rant</i>	tolerant	intolerant	<i>in-to-luh-Rant</i>	intolerant
teuer	<i>toy-uhR</i>	expensive	billig	<i>bi-liH</i>	cheap
traurig	<i>tRou-RiH</i>	sad	glücklich	<i>gliik-liH</i>	happy
weiß	<i>vays</i>	white	schwarz	<i>shvARTs</i>	black
dreckig	<i>dRe-kiH</i>	dirty	sauber	<i>sou-buhR</i>	clean
leer	<i>leyR</i>	empty	voll	<i>fol</i>	full
falsch	<i>fAlsh</i>	wrong	richtig	<i>RiH-tiH</i>	right
wahr	<i>vahR</i>	true	falsch	<i>fAlsh</i>	untrue
stolz	<i>shtolts</i>	proud	bescheiden	<i>buh-shay-duhn</i>	humble

Complete the Descriptions

You're deep in conversation with a new friend and superexcited about sharing your views. Use the rules you've learned in this chapter to complete the following descriptions with German adjectives. Remember to first determine which type (if any) of limiting word precedes the adjective and the case and the gender of the noun to be modified. To help you start out, we've divided the following exercise into three parts. We'll let you figure out which limiting word is involved in each grouping!

- A. 1. Was kostet dieser braun ___ Anzug?
2. Ich nehme den nächst ___ Bus.
3. Jedes rot ___ T-Shirt ist billig.
4. Wir besuchen die klein ___ Stadt.
5. Sie lesen das best ___ Buch!

- B. 1. Das ist gut ___ Bier.
2. Sie hat interessant ___ Ideen.
3. Frisch ___ Käse ist lecker.
4. Haben Sie frisch ___ Fische?
5. Lieb ___ Kerstin,...

- C. 1. Mainz ist eine schön ___ , alt ___ Stadt.
2. Er ist mein best ___ Freund.
3. Ich sehe keine frei ___ Plätze.
4. Wo ist ein gut ___ Restaurant?
5. Wir kaufen ein neu ___ Auto.

The Least You Need to Know

- To show possession in German, use the genitive case or possessive adjectives.
- *Haben* isn't just an important irregular verb that expresses physical conditions; it also can be used in certain idiomatic expressions of luck, intention, and opportunity.
- German adjectives agree in gender, number, and case and take endings according to which kind of limiting word precedes them.



Finally, You're at the Airport

In This Chapter

- Mainly on the plane
- The verb *gehen*
- Giving and receiving directions
- Prepositions that are useful for getting around

You've done it. You've planned a trip, you've driven to the airport, you have your passport, you remembered your camera. You've finally boarded the plane. You've even managed to have a somewhat stilted but successful chat with a German massage therapist who turns her head from side to side and stretches her arms above her head throughout your entire conversation. She's given you the names of a few good hotels in the city where you plan to spend a few relaxing, fun-filled days and nights.

A voice on the overhead speaker tells you that your plane will be landing soon. You take a deep breath, close your eyes, and begin to make a mental list of all the things you have to do before you find a hotel. You have to pick up your bags; pass customs; and figure out whether you're going to take a taxi, rent a car, or locate a bus that goes to the city. What if no one at the airport speaks English? Don't worry: By the end of this chapter, you'll be able to accomplish all of these things in German.

Inside the Plane

Even if you're not afraid of heights, claustrophobic, or allergic to perfume, it's tough sitting in the window seat next to a Sumo wrestler who smells like he's been dunked in a vat of dandelion air freshener. If this should happen to you, you'll probably need to get the flight attendant's attention to find out whether you can move to a different seat. This section gives you the vocabulary you need to solve plane problems.

Mainly on the Plane

Soon after the plane takes off, a voice on the overhead speaker begins referring to items on the plane that are above and around you. This familiarizes the passengers with safety features and with the actions taken in the event of an emergency. The vocabulary in the following table will help you understand this information as well as solve various flight-related problems.

Inside the Plane

German	Pronunciation	English
(nicht) Raucher	(niHt) Rou-CHuhR	(no) smoking
die Fluggesellschaft	dee flook-lee-nee-uh	airline
das Flugzeug	dAs flook-tsoyk	airplane
die Maschine	dee mA-shee-nuh	
der Flughafen	deyR flook-hah-fuhn	airport
am Fenster	Am fen-stuhR	by the window
der Notausgang	deyR noht-ous-gAng	emergency exit
der Flugsteig	deyR flook-tsoyk	gate
das Handgepäck	dAs hAnt-guh-päk	hand luggage
die Landung	dee lAn-dung	landing
die Rettungsweste or Schwimmweste	dee Re-toonks-ves-tuh	life vest
am Gang	im gAng	on the aisle
der Passagier	deyR pA-sA-jeeR	passenger
die Sicherheitsvorkehrungen	dee zi-HuhR-hayts-vor-key-Run-guhn	safety precautions
der Sitz	deyR zits	seat
der Abflug	deyR ap-flook	takeoff
der Terminal	deyR teR-mee-nahl	terminal
aus dem Flugzeug	ous deym flook-tsoyk ous-	to get off of or
aussteigen	shtay-guhn	exit the plane
rauchen	Rou-Chuhn	to smoke

Airline Advice

Airlines may charge an arm and a leg, but in exchange they give nifty advice to make your flight more enjoyable. Can you jot down in English the rules and regulations being outlined in the following sign?

Im Flugzeug:

Bitte nehmen Sie, für Ihren eigenen Komfort und Ihre eigene Sicherheit, nur ein Handgepäckstück mit an Bord des Flugzeugs.

On the Inside

The stewardess has moved you away from the Sumo wrestler. Overall, you've had a pleasant flight. Finally, the plane lands. There is a mad scramble for the aisle and passengers begin opening the overhead compartments. As you leave the plane, there are signs everywhere, all of them pointing in different directions. You make it through customs without any difficulties and drag your bags off the luggage belt. Where should you go now?

Finding the Right Words

You may want to ask someone where the baggage carts are. After that, you'll probably want to change some money (particularly because most of these baggage carts take coins). Do you need to freshen up a little? You can wander around looking for those signs with the generic men and women on them, or you can ask someone where the nearest *Toilette* (*toee-le-tuh*) is. The following table gives you all the vocabulary you'll need to get around the airport.

Inside the Airport

German	Pronunciation	English
die Ankunft	<i>dee An-koonft</i>	arrival
die Ankunftszeit	<i>dee An-koonfts-tsayt</i>	arrival time
die Gepäckausgabe	<i>dee guh-pák-ous-gah-buh</i>	baggage claim
die Toilette	<i>dee toee-le-tuh</i>	bathroom
die Bushaltestelle	<i>dee boos-hAl-tuh-shte-luh</i>	bus stop
der Autoverleih	<i>deyR ou-toh-feR-lay</i>	car rental
das Handgepäck	<i>dAs hAnt-guh-pák</i>	carry-on luggage
der Abflug	<i>deyR Ap-flook</i>	departure
die Abflugszeit	<i>dee Ap-flook-tsayt</i>	departure time
das Flugziel	<i>dAs flook-tseel</i>	destination
der Aufzug	<i>deyR ouf-tsook</i>	elevators
der Ausgang	<i>deyR ous-gAng</i>	exit
der Flug	<i>deyR Flook</i>	flight

continues

Inside the Airport (continued)

German	Pronunciation	English
die Flugnummer	<i>dee flook-noo-muhR</i>	flight number
der Flugsteig	<i>deyR flook-shtayk</i>	gate
die Information	<i>dee in-for-mah-teeohn</i>	information
der Gepäckwagen	<i>deyR guh-päk-vah-guhn</i>	luggage cart
die Geldwechselstube	<i>dee gelt-vek-suhl-shtew-buh</i>	money exchange office
die Passkontrolle	<i>dee pAs-kon-tRo-luh</i>	passport control
die Sicherheitskontrolle	<i>dee zi-HuhR-Hayts-kon-tRo-luh</i>	security check
der Zwischenstop	<i>deyR tsvi-shuhm-shtop</i>	stopover
der Koffer	<i>deyR ko-fuhR</i>	suitcase
das Taxi	<i>dAs tah-ksee</i>	taxi
die Fluggesellschaft	<i>dee flook-guh-zel-shAft</i>	the airline company
das Ticket	<i>dAs ti-ket</i>	ticket
einen Flug verpassen	<i>ay-nuhn flook veR-pA-suhn</i>	to miss the flight

Signs Everywhere

Airline security is generally pretty tight on international flights. You should be able to read signs giving travelers tips and warnings and indicating rules and regulations. Even if you break a rule unintentionally and are treated with respect by the airport police, chances are that being questioned in German and searched for illegal weapons is an experience you'd rather avoid.

The following signs provide examples of information you might see in an airport that serves German-speaking populations. Read the signs carefully and then try to match the sign with its corresponding bulleted question from the list that follows.

A. ACHTUNG:

Gefährden Sie nicht Ihre eigene Sicherheit: Nehmen Sie keine Gepäckstücke von anderen Personen an.

B. Ihr gesammtes Gepäck, einschließlich Ihres Handgepäcks wird kontrolliert.

C. Das Benutzen von Gepäckwagen ist außschließlich im Flughafengebäude gestattet.

D. ACHTUNG:

Aus Sicherheitsgründen werden alle zurückgelassenen Gepäckstücke von der Sicherheitspolizei zerstört.

Es ist dehalb notwendig, dass Sie Ihr Gepäck ständig mit sich führen.

E. AN DIE FLUGÄSTE

Das Mitführen von versteckten Waffen an Bord eines Flugzeuges ist gesetzlich verboten.

Es ist gesetzlich vorgeschrieben, dass alle Gepäckstücke, einschließlich des Handgepäcks, von der Sicherheitskontrolle überprüft werden.

Diese Durchsuchung kann verweigert werden. Passagiere, welche die Durchsuchung verweigern, sind nicht befugt, die Sicherheitskontrolle zu passieren.

Identify the sign that tells you:

1. If you leave something behind it might be destroyed.
2. All of your luggage will be checked, even carry-on.
3. You may be searched for a hidden weapon.
4. You can use the baggage carts only within the airport.
5. You shouldn't accept packages from strangers or from anyone you know if you don't know what's in the package.

Going Places

You will undoubtedly find the strong verb *gehen* (“to go”) handy as you make your way out of the airport to the taxi stand. As you learned in Chapter 9, “Click Your Heels Together and Say: There’s No Place Like Deutschland,” you must conjugate present-tense verbs so that they agree with the subject; now you can apply the same inflections (sg. -e, -st, -t and pl. -en, -t, -en) to the stem *geh-*. The verb for “to travel” is *fahren*. *Fahren*, being a very strong verb, incurs a sound change already in the present tense, like *fallen*, *sehen*, and so on. The following table reviews this type of change, which occurs only in the second- and third-person singular forms.

The Verb *fahren*

Person	Singular	English	Plural	English
First	ich fahre <i>iH faH-Ruh</i>	I travel	wir fahren <i>veeR faH-Ruhn</i>	we travel
Second	du fährst <i>dew fāHRst</i>	you travel	ihr fahrt <i>eeR faHrt</i>	you travel
Third	er, sie, es fährt <i>eR, zee, es fāHrt</i>	he, she, it travels	sie fahren <i>zee faH-Ruhn</i>	they travel
(Formal)	Sie fahren	you travel		

Contractions with *Gehen*

The verb *gehen* is often followed by the preposition *zu* (to). *Zu* is a preposition that always takes the dative case; therefore, when this preposition is used to indicate location, the entire prepositional phrase is dative. Recall the declination of dative *der* words—*dem* (m.), *die* (f.), *dem* (n.). If the noun after the preposition is masculine or neuter (*dem*), *zu* can contract with the article *dem* to become *zum* (“to the”). A *contraction* is a single word made out of two words, as in the word *it's*. In German, contractions don't take an apostrophe. Some prepositions in German may take the accusative or dative. *Auf* and *in* are two prepositions that can be used to indicate motion, and when *gehen* is followed by one of these prepositions, the prepositional phrase is in the accusative (*den*, *die*, *das*). Because contractions make it faster and easier to express things, we can again combine the prepositions *in* and *auf* with the accusative neuter *das* to come up with *ins* and *aufs*. Here are some examples of these contractions, with the illustration of gender and case in parentheses—case being determined by the preceding preposition.



What's What?

Contraction A single word made out of two words. Unlike their English counterparts, German contractions do not use apostrophes.

Ich gehe zum Bahnhof. (der Bahnhof + dative → dem)

iH gey-huh tsoom bahn-hohf

I'm going to the train station.

Ich gehe zum Geschäft. (das Geschäft + dative → dem)

iH gey-huh tsoom guh-shäft

I'm going to the store.

If the location toward which the subject is heading is feminine, *zu* (“to”) can contract with the feminine dative article *der* (“the”) to become *zur* (“to the”).

Ich gehe zur Kirche. (die Kirche + dative → der)

iH gey-huh tsooR keeR-Hu

I'm going to the church.

Ich gehe ins Kino. (das Kino + accusative → das)

ich gey-huh ins kee-noh

I go to the movies.

Er geht aufs Polizeirevier. (das Polizeirevier + accusative → das)

eR geyt oufs po-lee-zay-Ruh-veeR

He goes to the police station.

How Do You Get To ...?

You may get disoriented in a new place; the best thing to do is to ask someone how to get to wherever it is you want to go. Here are some ways of asking questions:

Wo ist der Ausgang?

voh ist deyR ous-gAng

Where is the exit?

Der Ausgang, bitte.

deyR ous-gAng, bi-tuh

The exit, please.

Wo sind die Taxis?

voh sindt dee tah-ksees

Where are the taxis?

Die Taxis, bitte.

dee tah-ksees, bi-tuh

The taxis, please.

If you're not sure whether what you're looking for is nearby, or if you just want to know whether whatever you're looking for is in the vicinity, use the phrase *gibt es* ("is there," "are there"). It's a useful way of finding things out. To answer a question affirmatively, reverse the word order, beginning with the subject, *es*.

Gibt es Toiletten in der Nähe?

gipt es toee-le-tuhn in deyR näh-huh

Are there toilets nearby?

Ja, es gibt Toiletten in der Nähe.

yah, es gipt toee-le-tuhn in deyR näh-huh

Yes, there are toilets nearby.

In certain situations, you use the preposition *nach* to indicate where you are going.

With continents, countries, and towns:

Ich gehe nach Berlin.

iH gey-huh nAH beR-lin

I'm going to Berlin.

With prepositions that show direction:

Er geht nach rechts.

eR geyt nAH reHts

He's going to the right.

The preposition *zu*, on the other hand, is used to indicate motion if the object is a person:

Ich gehe zum Arzt.
IH ge-uh tsum Artst
I'm going to the doctor.

And for going to places other than cities, regions, and countries:

Wir fahren zum Flughafen.
veer faH-Ruhn tsewm flook-haH-fuhn
We're going/traveling to the airport.

Take a Left, Climb Across the Bridge ...

What if the place you're looking for isn't within pointing distance? In this case, you'd better know the verbs people use when they give directions (see the following table).

Verbs Used When Giving Directions

German	Pronunciation	English
abbiegen*	<i>ap-bee-guhn</i>	to turn
gehen	<i>gey-huhn</i>	to go
laufen ^s	<i>lou-fuhn</i>	to walk
mitfahren*	<i>mit-fah-Ruhn</i>	to ride with/along
nehmen ^s	<i>ney-muhn</i>	to take
weitergehen*	<i>vay-tuhR-gey-huhn</i>	to go on, to continue

* indicates a separable prefix verb

^s indicates a very strong verb, incurring a sound change in the second- and third-person singular

Verbs with Separable Prefixes

Some verbs in the preceding table (the ones with asterisks next to them) have *separable prefixes*, verbal complements that are placed at the end of the sentence when the verb is conjugated (separable prefixes are addressed at greater length in Chapter 14, "Yippee, You've Made It to the Hotel!"). Some of the most common separable prefixes are *auf*, *hinüber*, *aus*, *an*, *hinunter*, *hinauf*, *weiter*, *bei*, *mit*, *nachi*, and *zu*. Although many of these indicate direction, all of them add a little layer of meaning to the stem verb. When you use a verb with separable prefixes, the verb comes near the beginning of the sentence and the prefix comes at the end. Incidentally, the verbs marked with a superscript S are the *very strong*, or *sehr stark*, verbs—those which incur a vowel change in the second- and third-person singular.

Du biegst rechts ab.
dew beekest reHts Ap
 You turn right.

Er geht zum Terminal weiter.
eyR geyt tsoom teR-mee-nahl vay-tuhR
 He continues to the terminal.

Sie fährt mit?
zee fähRt mit?
 Is she riding along/with?



What's What?

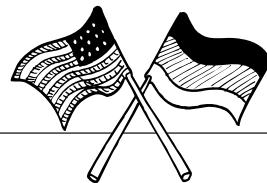
Separable prefix Verbal complements that are placed at the end of the sentence when the verb is conjugated.

Giving Commands

When someone tells you how to get somewhere, generally he or she gives you a command. The subject of the command is you. Because you can address someone formally or informally in German, and speak to one or more than one person, the language has several easily deducible command forms. Try to figure out which of the following *imperative* forms correspond to *du*, *ihr*, and *Sie*!

- A. Gehen Sie nach rechts.
gey-huhn zee nAH reHts
 Go right.
- B. Geht nach rechts.
geyt- nAH ReHts
 Go right.
- C. Gehe nach rechts.
Gey-uh nAH reHts
 Go right.

If you deduced that answer A was the formal (*Sie*-address) imperative form, identical to the present-tense form, give yourself a point. Because it is a command, it begins with the verb, as action is tantamount in getting one's way. And answer B? You guessed it, the familiar plural (*ihr*-address) imperative is identical to the *ihr*-form in the present tense except that the pronoun, *ihr*, is omitted. This pattern is easy enough to account for: Commands in the familiar realm do not need to be formal, so we can omit the pronoun. Likewise, we can account for answer C being the familiar singular (*du*-address) imperative, omitting the pronoun and even



We Are Family

English has numerous verbs that extend their meanings by adding certain prepositions, called *complements*: to go out, to come along/with, to drive back. German very neatly attaches this *complement* to the infinitive, and hence you get very similar constructions of *ausgehen*, *mitkommen*, *zurückfahren*. These separable prefixes stands last in statements and in questions.

the ending (-st) on the verb! To pronounce that stem more easily, often times an -e is added, as in *Warte!* ("Wait!") or *Finde die Toiletten!* ("Find the toilets!")

Take Command

You need to practice giving and receiving commands before you can effectively do either. Complete the following exercise by filling in the appropriate command forms and their meanings.

Verb	Du	Ihr	Sie	English
abbiegen	_____	_____	_____	Turn!
gehen	Gehe!	Geht!	Gehen Sie!	Go!
weitergehen*	_____	_____	_____	Continue!
laufen ^s	_____	_____	_____	Walk!
mitfahren ^s	_____	_____	_____	Ride along!

*indicates a separable prefix verb

^s indicates a very strong verb, incurring a sound change in the second- and third-person singular

Prepositions: Little Words Can Make a Big Difference

Prepositions are useful for giving and receiving directions. Prepositions show the relationship of a noun to another word in a sentence; they add supplemental information to the base subject/verb sentence. If you turn back to the idiomatic expressions in Chapter 4, "Pronounce It Properly: Vowels," you'll see that they are in fact prepositional phrases. The following table contains some useful prepositions for getting where you want to go.



As a Rule

The prefix from a separable prefix verb will still go to the end of the sentence. Also noteworthy is the fact that any umlaut stem change in a *sehr stark* verb will not be retained in the *du-* form of the imperative. Hence, although the imperative *du-* form is *Sieh mich an!* ("Look at me!"), the umlaut is knocked off in *Fall nicht hin!* ("Don't fall down!"). See how easy it was to form the imperative with very strong separable prefix verbs?

Prepositions

German	Pronunciation	English
an	<i>an</i>	to go to, on (vertical)
auf	<i>ouf</i>	to, in, at, on (horizontal)
aus	<i>ous</i>	out of
bei	<i>bay</i>	at, near
bis	<i>bis</i>	until, as far as
durch	<i>dooRCH</i>	through
gegen	<i>gey-guhn</i>	against
hinter	<i>hin-tuhR</i>	behind
in	<i>in</i>	in
nach	<i>naCH</i>	after
neben	<i>ney-buhn</i>	next to
ohne	<i>oh-nuh</i>	without
um	<i>ewm</i>	around
unter	<i>oon-tuhR</i>	under
von	<i>fon</i>	from
vor	<i>foR</i>	in front of
zu, nach	<i>tsew, naCH</i>	to, at
zwischen	<i>tsvi-shuhn</i>	between

Prepositions Are Particular!

Although the preceding table lists German prepositions, not all prepositions are created equal. Sure, you had it made in English, figuring out it's *for him* rather than *for he*. You intuitively and automatically change the case from nominative to objective after a preposition in English. German changes the form of the noun phrase (which might be a pronoun or a noun) after the preposition as well!

Only, as you might suspect, German relies on its various cases after specific prepositions. The following table contains the prepositions from the preceding table that are always dative. Although a few other prepositions also take the dative case—that is, what comes after the preposition will appear in the dative case—for now, let's limit this exercise to prepositions that are helpful for getting around.



What's What?

Imperatives Express commands, requests, or directives. German has three imperative forms corresponding to the three words *Sie*, *du*, and *ihr* for the second-person pronoun "you."

Dative Prepositions

German	Example	English
aus	aus dem Haus	out of the house
bei	beim Postamt	at the post office
nach	beim Arzt	at the doctor's
	nach einer Stunde	after an hour
von	nach Wien	to Vienna
	von Hamburg	from Hamburg
zu	von meinen Eltern	from my parents
	zur Bushaltestelle	to the bus stop

See whether you can fill in the correct form of the dative in the following dative prepositional phrases:

1. aus _____ Flugzeug (out of the airplane)
2. bei _____ Flughafen (near the airport)
3. von sein _____ Arbeit (from his workplace)
4. zu _____ Hotel (to the hotel)

Likewise, some prepositions always take the accusative case. Those relating to direction are listed in the following table:

Accusative Prepositions

German	Example	English
bis	bis nächste Woche	by/until next week
	bis Mainz	as far as Mainz
durch	durch die Stadt	through the city
	ohne den Bus	without the bus
um	um die Ecke	around the corner

Use the accusative case to finish these prepositional phrases:

1. durch _____ Land (through the country)
2. ohne mein _____ Ticket (without my ticket)
3. um _____ Sitz (around the seat)

The prepositions *in* and *auf* belong to a nifty group of prepositions that can govern either the dative or the accusative, depending on the context. With verbs like *gehen* and *fahren* (introduced earlier in this chapter) that indicate motion *toward* a place, the preposition governs the accusative. To indicate moving around *within* a place, the preposition governs the dative. The following table provides examples of both instances for the two-way prepositions listed earlier in the table titled Prepositions:



What's What?

Prepositions Words that show the relation of a noun to another word in a sentence.

Two-Way Prepositions

German	Example	English
an	Ich gehe ans Fenster. Ich bin am Fenster.	I'm going to the window. I'm at the window.
auf	Geh auf den Marktplatz! Parke auf dem Marktplatz!	Go to the town square! Park on the town square!
hinter	Fahr hinter die Garage! Das Auto ist hinter der Garage.	Drive behind the garage! The car is behind the garage
in	Ich gehe in den Terminal. Ich bin im Terminal.	I'm going (in)to the terminal. I'm in the terminal.
neben	Mein Koffer liegt neben dem Gepäckablage.	My suitcase is lying next to the luggage rack.
unter	Die Rettungsweste ist unter dem Sitz.	The life vest is under the seat.
vor	Die Taxis warten vor dem Flughafen.	The taxis are waiting in front of the airport.
zwischen	Die Paßkontrolle liegt zwischen der Sicherheitskontrolle und dem Flugsteig.	The passport control is between the security check and the gate.

Care to finish off your prepositional preoccupation with a few more exercises, this time concerning the two-way prepositions?

1. Ich werfe deinen Koffer auf dein _____ Sitz. (I'm throwing your suitcase on your seat.)
Es gibt eine Paßkontrolle an _____ Grenze. (There is passport control on the border.)

3. Klaus ist in _____ Toilette. (Klaus is in the bathroom.)
4. Stell dein Handgepäck neben _____ Bett (neut.). (Put your hand luggage next to the bed.)
5. Mein Ticket ist unter dein _____ Handgepäck! (My ticket is under your carry-on luggage!)

Are You Out of Your Mind?

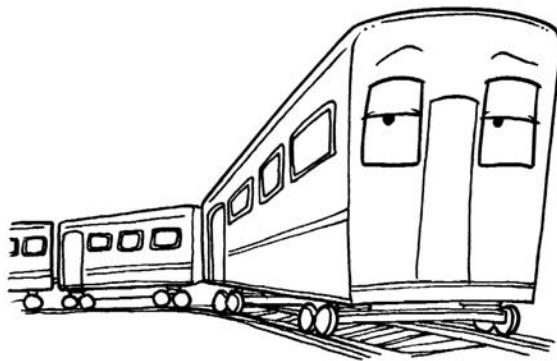
We've all asked for directions and then immediately regretted it. Such remorse generally happens when the direction giver enumerates more rights and lefts than we can handle. Thus knowing how to show lack of understanding in a foreign country is extremely useful. In addition to scratching your head like crazy, use some of the phrases in the following table to let people know that you just don't understand.

Expressing Incomprehension and Confusion

German	Pronunciation	English
Entschuldigen Sie	<i>ent-shool-dee-guhn zee</i>	Excuse me (formal)
Entschuldigung, ich habe Sie nicht verstanden.	<i>ent-shool-dee-goonk,</i> <i>iH hah-buh zee niHt</i> <i>feR-shtan-duhn</i>	Excuse me, I didn't understand you.
Ich verstehe nicht.	<i>iH feR-shtey-huh niHt</i>	I don't understand.
Sprechen Sie langsamer, bitte.	<i>shpRe-Hun zee lAng-zah-</i> <i>muhR, bi-tuh</i>	Please speak more slowly.
Was haben Sie gesagt?	<i>vAs hah-buhn zee</i> <i>guh-zahkt</i>	What did you say?
Wiederholen Sie, bitte.	<i>vee-deR-hoh-luhn zee,</i> <i>bi-tuh</i>	Please repeat (what you just said).

The Least You Need to Know

- Learning a few useful vocabulary words will help you figure out airport signs in German.
- The strong verb *gehen* is used to give directions. Useful, also, is the very strong verb *fahren*.
- German has three ways of forming commands, depending on the object of the command (whom and how many) and the degree of formality.
- Prepositions are useful tools in expressing direction. Some of them govern the dative case, others govern the accusative, and still others can't quite make up their minds.
- If you don't understand the directions being given to you, don't be afraid to say, "Ich verstehe nicht. Wiederholen Sie, bitte (*iH feR-shtey-huh niHt, vee-deR-hoh-luhn zee, bi-tuh*)."



Heading for the Hotel

In This Chapter

- Getting around
- Renting a car
- Determining *which, this, every, or such*
- Counting with cardinal numbers
- Telling time

We're going to take it for granted that, when you step outside the international departures terminal, there's no flamingo-colored limousine with glittering hubcaps waiting for you and your luggage (if there had been, the driver got tired of waiting and left). There are no taxis in sight, so you find a bus and take it into the center of the city. Now you have to find a reasonably priced but comfortable hotel where you can settle down and begin to figure out how to get a number of things done, including renting a car (that rather adventurous bus ride to the hotel has made you eager to arrange for a car as soon as possible). This chapter examines ways to get things done effectively and efficiently.

Ticket to Ride

There's only one way to get to know the city you're traveling around in: by traveling around in it. You have a number of options, of course. Walking is fun and cheap (but it can get tiring); taking a bus affords an overhead view of the shops, sidewalks, and people along the streets (but it takes some know-how in a foreign country); taking a taxi is convenient and—ideally—comfortable (but it can be expensive). Of course, the mode of travel you choose will depend on many factors—including how near or distant your destination is. Whichever mode of travel is right for you, you should familiarize yourself with the correct terms.

Buses, Trains, and Automobiles

Whether you see yourself zipping along on the Autobahn with a WWI flying-ace scarf trailing behind you, or hobnobbing with the locals on a bus, knowing the words listed here will help you get around. You've already seen these words (in Chapter 6, "Are Idiomatic Expressions for Idiots?") used with the dative preposition *mit* to indicate "by means of."

German	Pronunciation	English
das Auto	<i>dAs ou-toh</i>	car
der Wagen	<i>deyR vah-guhn</i>	car
das Taxi	<i>dAs tAk-see</i>	taxi
der Bus	<i>deyR boos</i>	bus
der Zug	<i>deyR tsewk</i>	train
die U-Bahn, S-Bahn	<i>dee ew-bahn, es-bahn</i>	subway
die Straßenbahn	<i>dee shtRah-suhn-bahn</i>	streetcar

A Means to an End

You'll use the verb *nehmen* (*ney-muhn*) "to take" to express how you are going to get from where you are to where you are going. *Nehmen* is a very strong verb whose stem vowel changes from *e* to *i* in the second- and third-person singular. Because we're not only changing the quality of the *e* sound but also shortening it quantitatively, we'll reflect that in the spelling by dropping that "lengthening *h*" and adding a second *m*, so that the *i* comes out short. Of course, you need only remember that *e* → *i*. (See the following table.)

The Verb **nehmen**

Person	Singular	English	Plural	English
First	ich nehme <i>iH neymuh</i>	I take	wir nehmen <i>veeR neymuhn</i>	we take
Second	du nimmst <i>dew nimmst</i>	you take	ihr nehmt <i>eeR neynt</i>	
(Formal)	Sie nehmen <i>zee neymuhn</i>			
Third	er, sie, es nimmt <i>eR, zee, es nimt</i>	he, she, it takes	sie nehmen <i>zee neymuhn</i>	they take

This stem-vowel change from *e* → *i* might summon images of the very strong verb *sehen*, which also involves the addition of an *i*, as in *sehen* → *er, sie, es sieht*. Other verbs that incur the change from *e* → *i*, and thus very much resemble *nehmen*, include *geben*, “to give”; *essen*, “to eat”; *sprechen*, “to talk”; *werfen*, “to throw”; and *sterben*, “to die.”

See whether you can fill in the blanks in these sentences with the correct form of the verb.

1. Ich _____ ein Taxi, um zum Geschäft zu kommen.
I take the bus to get to the store.
2. Wir _____ die Straßenbahn, um in die Innenstadt zu kommen.
We take the streetcar to get downtown.
3. Er _____ das Auto, um zur Kirche zu fahren.
He takes the car to get to the church.
4. Sie _____ das Fahrrad, um aufs Land zu fahren.
You (formal) take the bicycle to ride to the country.

Which (or What) Do You Prefer?

Someone tells you that to get to the local museum, you must go straight past a building and then take a left on a street. *What* building is the person talking about? *Which* street does he or she mean? When you’re traveling—and particularly when you’re asking directions—one word in German will be indispensable to you: *welcher* (*vel-HuhR*), the word for “which” or “what.” The handy thing about this word is that it takes the same endings as the definite article. In its base form, *welcher* resembles the nominative masculine *der*, *welcher*. Thus, simply knock off that *-er* ending and apply whichever *der* word ending fits for gender, case, and number! Piece of cake, eh?

Welcher with Singular and Plural Nouns

When *welcher* comes immediately before a noun and introduces a question, this pronoun is considered an interrogative pronoun and must agree in number, gender, and case with the noun it precedes. Some common pronouns that follow the same declension patterns as *welcher* are *dieser* (“this”), *jeder* (“each,” “every”), *mancher* (“many,” “many a”), and *solcher* (“such,” “such a”). The following table reviews the declension of *der* words, this time substituting *welch-* into the paradigm.



As a Rule

In conversational German, the definite article, when spoken with heavy stress, is often the equivalent of the English this/these or that/those. *Dieser Sportwagen ist toll!* (“This/that sports car is neat!”) *Diese Autos fahren sehr schnell.* (“These/those cars drive fast.”)

The der Wort Welch-

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter Plural
Nom.	which bus <i>welcher Bus</i> <i>vel-HuhR boos</i>	which direction <i>welche Richtung</i> <i>vel-Huh RiH-toong</i>	which car; which cars <i>welches Auto</i> ; <i>welche Autos</i> <i>vel-Huhs ou-toh</i> ; <i>vel-Huh ou-tohz</i>
Acc.	welchen Bus <i>welchen Bus</i> <i>vel-Huhn boos</i>	welche Richtung <i>welche Richtung</i> <i>vel-Huh RiH-toong</i>	welches Auto; welche Autos <i>vel-Huhs ou-toh</i> ; <i>vel-Huh ou-tohz</i>
Dat.	welchem Bus <i>welchem Bus</i> <i>vel-Huhm boos</i>	welcher Richtung <i>welcher Richtung</i> <i>vel-HuhR RiH-toong</i>	welchem Auto; welchen Autos <i>vel-Huhm ou-toh</i> ; <i>vel-Huhn ou-tohz</i>
Gen.	welches Buses <i>welches Buses</i> <i>vel-Huhs boosuhs</i>	welcher Richtung <i>welcher Richtung</i> <i>vel-HuhR RiH-toong</i>	welches Autos; welcher Autos <i>vel-Huhs ou-to</i> ; <i>vel-HuhR ou-tohz</i>

The Third Degree

You should be prepared for questions that begin with *welch-* (in its declined form). Here are some common questions you may be asked while traveling around the city. You should recognize a few of the prepositions from Chapter 12, “Finally, You’re at the Airport,” including that tricky two-way preposition *in!*

Welchen Bus nehmen Sie? (m., acc.)

vel-Huhn boos ney-muhn zee

Which bus are you taking?

In welche Richtung fährt der Bus? (f., acc.)

In vel-Huh RiH-toong fähRt deyR boos

In which direction is the bus going?

Welches Auto mieten Sie? (n., acc.)

vel-Huhs ou-toh mee-tuhn zee

Which car are you renting?

Mit welcher Maschine fliegen Sie? (f., dat.)

mit vel-HuhR mah-shee-nuh flee-guhn zee

On which plane are you flying?

Using What and Which

Have you ever spoken with someone who immediately assumes that you know what he or she is speaking about no matter what the topic? See whether you can properly decline the interrogative pronoun *welch-* to find out the specifics of the statements given here.

Example: Ich nehme die U-Bahn. (Welche U-Bahn?)

German	Pronunciation	English
Sie nehmen den Zug.	<i>zee ney-muhn deyn tsook</i>	They take the train.
Ich fahre in die Stadt.	<i>iH fah-Ruh in dee shtAt</i>	I'm driving into town.
Er mietet ein Auto.	<i>eR mee-tuht ayn ou-toh</i>	He rents a car.
Ich besuche einen Freund.	<i>iH buh-zew-Chuh ay-nuhn fRoynt</i>	I'm visiting a friend.
Wir gehen in ein Museum.	<i>veeR gey-huhn in ayn mew-zey-oom</i>	We're going to a museum.
Sie sucht ein Hotel.	<i>zee zewCHt ayn hoh-tel</i>	She's looking for a hotel.
Er nimmt ein Buch mit.	<i>eR nimt ayn buCH mit</i>	He's taking along a book.

On the Road

You may want to take a trip around the countryside, and the ideal way to do so is to rent a car. The following phrases are useful when renting a car.

Ich möchte ein Auto mieten.

iH möH-tuh ayn ou-toh mee-tuhn

I would like to rent a car.

Wieviel kostet es am Tag (in der Woche)?

vee-feel kos-tuht es Am tahk (in deyR vo-CHuh)

How much does it cost per day (per week)?

Welches Auto empfehlen Sie mir?

vel-Huhs ou-toh em-pfey-luhn zee meeR

Which car do you recommend?

Ist das Benzin im Preis enthalten?

ist dAs ben-tseen im pRays ent-hAl-tuhn

Is the gasoline included in the price?

Wie teuer ist die Versicherung?

vee toy-uhR ist dee veR-si-Huh-Roong

How expensive is the insurance?



As a Rule

The very strong verb *empfehlen* changes the *-e* to *-ie* in the second- and third-person singular, akin to *sehen*, *lesen* ("to read"), and *stehlen* ("to steal"). Having learned the conjugation for *halten* in Chapter 9, "Click Your Heels Together and Say: There's No Place Like Deutschland," you will immediately recognize that *enthalten* contains that stem and will thus change from *-a* to *-ä* with the *du*, and *er*, *sie*, *es* forms.

Outside the Car

If you decide to rent a car, don't forget to check in the trunk for the regulation jack—in German, *der Wagenheber* (*deyR vah-guhn-hey-buhR*)—and the spare tire, or *der Ersatzreifen* (*deyR eR-zAts-Ray-fuhn*).

Here are a few terms you might find useful when talking about the various features of a car.

German	Pronunciation	English
das Fenster	<i>dAs fen-stuhR</i>	window
das Nummernschild	<i>dAs noo-meRn-shilt</i>	license plate
das Rad	<i>dAs Raht</i>	wheel
das Rücklicht	<i>dAs Rück-liHt</i>	tail light
der Auspuff	<i>deyR ous-poof</i>	exhaust
der Benzintank	<i>deyR ben-zee-tAnk</i>	gas tank
der Blinker	<i>deyR blin-kuhR</i>	turn signal
der Keilriemen	<i>deyR kayl-ree-muhn</i>	fan belt
der Kofferraum	<i>deyR ko-fe-roum</i>	trunk
der Kotflügel	<i>deyR koht-flü-guhl</i>	fender
der Kühler	<i>deyR küh-luhR</i>	radiator
der Motor	<i>deyR mo-tohR</i>	motor
der Scheibenwischer	<i>deyR shay-buhn-vi-shuhR</i>	windshield wiper
der Türgriff	<i>deyR tühR-gRif</i>	door handle
der Vergaser	<i>deyR feR-gah-suhR</i>	carburetor
die Antenne	<i>dee An-te-nuh</i>	antenna
die Batterie	<i>dee bA-te-Ree</i>	battery
die Motorhaube	<i>dee mo-tohR-hou-buh</i>	hood
die Reifen	<i>dee Ray-fuhn</i>	tires
die Scheinwerfer	<i>dee shayn-weR-fuhR</i>	headlights
die Stoßstange	<i>dee shtohs-shtAn-guh</i>	bumper
die Windschutzscheibe	<i>dee vint-shutz-shay-buh</i>	windshield
die Zündkerzen	<i>dee tsünt-ker-tsuhn</i>	sparkplugs

Inside the Car

Here are a few useful terms for things inside a car.

German	Pronunciation	English
das Amaturenbrett	<i>dAs A-mA-tew-ruhn-bRet</i>	dashboard
das Gaspedal	<i>dAs gahs-pey-dahl</i>	accelerator
das Handschuhfach	<i>dAs hAnt-shew-fACH</i>	glove compartment
das Lenkrad	<i>dAs lenk-raht</i>	steering wheel

continues

German	Pronunciation	English
das Radio	dAs Rah-deeoh	radio
der Blinker	deyR blin-kuhR	turn signal
der Rückspiegel	deyR Rük-shpee-guhL	rear-view mirror
die Bremsen	die bRem-suhm	brakes
die Hupe	dee hew-puh	horn
die Kupplung	dee kup-lung	clutch
die Schaltung	dee shAl-tung	gear shift
die Zündung	dee tsün-dung	ignition

You might want to ask someone whether you're heading in the right direction. You never know when you're going to get lost in the woods without your compass.

nach Norden	<i>nahCH noR-duhn</i>	to the north
nach Süden	<i>nahCH süh-duhn</i>	to the south
nach Westen	<i>nahCH ves-tuhn</i>	to the west
nach Osten	<i>nahCH os-tuhn</i>	to the east

Your Number's Up

Sooner or later you're going to have to learn numbers in German. Numbers are used for telling time, for making dates, for counting, for finding out prices—they're even used to refer to the pages, tables, and chapters in this book! So pull out your abacus and start counting.



What's What?

Cardinal numbers Numbers used in counting.

Count Me In

One, two, three, four ... as children, one of the first things we learn to do is count (today's children, tomorrow's taxpayers). Numbers that express amounts are known as *cardinal numbers*. The sooner you learn cardinal numbers in German the better because you're going to need to use numbers for everything from renting a car to locating your gate in an airport (see the following table).

Cardinal Numbers

German	Pronunciation	English
null	<i>nool</i>	0
eins	<i>aynts</i>	1
zwei	<i>tsvay</i>	2
drei	<i>dRay</i>	3
vier	<i>feeR</i>	4
fünf	<i>fünf</i>	5
sechs	<i>zeks</i>	6
sieben	<i>zee-buhn</i>	7
acht	<i>aCHt</i>	8
neun	<i>noyn</i>	9
zehn	<i>tseyn</i>	10
elf	<i>elf</i>	11
zwölf	<i>tsvölf</i>	12
dreizehn	<i>dRay-tseyn</i>	13
vierzehn	<i>feeR-tseyn</i>	14
fünfzehn	<i>fünf-tseyn</i>	15
sechzehn	<i>zeHs-tseyn</i>	16
siebzehn	<i>seep-tseyn,</i>	17
achtzehn	<i>aCH-tseyn</i>	18
neunzehn	<i>noyn-tseyn</i>	19
zwanzig	<i>tsvAn-tsiH</i>	20
einundzwanzig	<i>ayn-oont-tsvAn-tsiH</i>	21
zweiundzwanzig	<i>tsvay-oont-tsvAn-tsiH</i>	22
dreiundzwanzig	<i>dRay-oont-tsvAn-tsiH</i>	23
vierundzwanzig	<i>feeR-oont-tsvAn-tsiH</i>	24
fünfundzwanzig	<i>fünf-oont-tsvAn-tsiH</i>	25
sechsundzwanzig	<i>zeks-oont-tsvAn-tsiH</i>	26
siebenundzwanzig	<i>zee-buhn-oont-tsvAn-tsiH</i>	27
achtundzwanzig	<i>ACHt-oont-tsvAn-tsiH</i>	28
neunundzwanzig	<i>noyn-oont-tsvAn-tsiH</i>	29
dreiβig	<i>dRay-siH</i>	30
vierzig	<i>feeR-tsiH</i>	40
fünfzig	<i>fünf-tsiH</i>	50

continues

Cardinal Numbers (continued)

German	Pronunciation	English
sechzig	zeH-tsiH	60
siebzig	zeep-tsiH	70
achtzig	ACH-tsiH	80
neunzig	noyn-tsiH	90
hundert	hoon-deRt	100
hunderteins	hoon-deRt-aynts	101
hundertzwei	hoon-deRt-tsvay	102
zweihundert	tsvay-hoon-deRt	200
zweihundereins	tsvay-hoon-deRt-aynts	201
zweihunderzwei	tsvay-hoon-deRt-tsvay	202
tausend	tou-zent	1000
zweitausend	tsvay-tou-zent	2000
hunderttausend	hoon-deRt-tou-zent	100,000
eine Million	aynuh mee-leeohn	1,000,000
zwei Millionen	tsvay mee-leeoh-nuhn	2,000,000
eine Milliarden	ayn mee-lee-AR-duh	1,000,000,000
zwei Milliarden	tsvay mee-lee-AR-duhn	2,000,000,000

After you've learned the basics of counting in German, the main things to remember are ...

- After the number 20, numbers are expressed in compound words with the one, two, three ... coming first: one-and-20, two-and-20, three-and-20 ... Don't forget to drop the -s from *eins* before *einundzwanzig*, *einunddreißig*, and so on.
- *Und* (and) is used to connect the numbers one through nine to the numbers 20, 30, 40, 50, and so on.
- The -s is dropped from *sechs* to form *sechzehn* (16) and *sechzig* (60). Similarly, the -en is dropped from *sieben* to form *siebzehn* (17) and *siebzig* (70).
- After 100, *und* is dropped and numbers are expressed the same way they are in English with 100, 1,000, 1 million, and so on, coming first. In German, however, you do not say "one hundred" or "one thousand." You simply say *hundert* (*hoon-deRt*) or *tausend* (*tou-zent*).
- Because the sound of *zwei* (*tsvay*) and *drei* (*dRay*) are so similar, *zwo* (*tsvoh*) is often used for "two" in official language and when giving numbers on the telephone.

What Time Is It?

Now that you have familiarized yourself with German numbers, it should be relatively easy for you to tell time. The simplest way to question someone about the time is by saying:

Wieviel Uhr ist es?

vee-feel ewR ist es

What time is it?

Wie spät ist es?

vee shpäht ist es

What time is it?

To answer a question about time, start out with *Es ist ...* as in the next example:

Es ist ...

es ist

It is ...



Culture Shock

In Germany, as in most European countries, colloquial time is given without any reference to A.M. or P.M. Often the 24-hour system—what we call official, or military, time—is used. Accordingly, 1:00 P.M. is 13:00, or *dreizehn Uhr* (*dray-tseyn ewR*), 2:00 P.M. is *vierzehn Uhr* (*feeR-tseyn ewR*), and so on.

Look at the following table for some common phrases to help you tell time.

Telling Time

German	Pronunciation	English
Es ist ein Uhr.	<i>es ist ayn ewR</i>	It is 1:00.
Es ist fünf (Minuten) nach zwei.	<i>es ist fünf (mee-new-tuhn) nACH tsvay</i>	It is 2:05.
Es ist zehn (Minuten) nach drei.	<i>es ist tseyn (mee-new-tuhn) nACH dRay</i>	It is 3:10.
Es ist Viertel nach vier.	<i>es ist feeR-tuhl nACH feeR</i>	It is 4:15.
Es ist zwanzig nach fünf.	<i>es ist tsvAn-tsik nACH fünf</i>	It is 5:20.
Es ist fünf vor halb sieben.	<i>es ist fünf foR hAlp zee-buhn</i>	It is 6:25.
Es ist halb acht.	<i>es ist hAlp ACHt</i>	It is 7:30.
Es ist fünf nach halb acht.	<i>es ist fünf nACH hAlp ACHt</i>	It is 7:35.
Es ist zehn nach halb acht.	<i>es ist tseyn Nach hAlp ACHt</i>	It is 8:40.
Es ist zwanzig vor neun.	<i>es ist tsvAn-tsik foR noyn</i>	It is 8:40.

continues

Telling Time (continued)

German	Pronunciation	English
Es ist Viertel vor zehn.	<i>es ist feer-tuhl foR tseyn</i>	It is 9:45.
Es ist zehn vor elf.	<i>es ist tseyn foR elf</i>	It is 10:50.
Es ist fünf vor zwölf.	<i>es ist fünf foR tsvölf</i>	It is 11:55.
Es ist Mitternacht.	<i>es ist mi-tuhR-nACHt</i>	It is midnight.
Es ist Mittag.	<i>es ist mi-tahk</i>	It is noon.



What's What?

Um Usually, the preposition *um* means “around,” but in time expressions it means “at.” *Um 9 Uhr beginnt das Theaterstück* (*oom noyn ewR buh-gint dAs tey-ah-teR-shtük*), or “The play begins at 9:00.”

- To express the time *after* the hour, give the number of minutes past the hour first, then *nach*, then the hour: *Es ist Viertel nach fünf*. (“It’s a quarter past five.”)
- To express the time before the hour, give the number of minutes before the hour first, then *vor*, then the hour: *Es ist Viertel vor fünf*. (“It’s a quarter to five.”)
- With all other hours, *halb* is used to express half the way *to* the hour. *Halb sechs* does not mean half past six, but half way to six (5:30).
- To express “at what time” something is occurring, use the preposition *um*: *Um halb sechs gehen wir*. (“We’ll go at five-thirty.”)

It isn’t enough to be able to plod along through numbers and tell people what time it is. You’ll need to know more general time expressions. The following table provides some common time expressions.

Time Expressions

German	Pronunciation	English
eine Sekunde	<i>ay-nuh zey-koon-duh</i>	a second
eine Minute	<i>ay-nuh mee-new-tuh</i>	a minute
eine Stunde	<i>ay-nuh shtoon-duh</i>	an hour
morgens	<i>moR-guhns</i>	mornings
am Morgen	<i>Am moR-guhn</i>	in the morning

German	Pronunciation	English
abends	ah-buhnts	evenings
am Abend	Am ah-buhnt	in the evening (P.M.)
nachmittags	nACH-mi-tahks	afternoons (P.M.)
am Nachmittag	Am nACH-mi-tahk	in the afternoon
um wieviel Uhr	oom vee-feel ewR	at what time
genau um Mitternacht	guh-nou oom mi-tuhR-nACHt	at exactly midnight
genau um ein Uhr	guh-nou oom ayn ewR	at exactly 1:00
um ungefähr/	oom oon-guh-fähR/	
um etwa zwei Uhr	oom et-vah tsvay ewR	at about 2:00
eine viertel Stunde	ayn feeR-tuhl shtoon-duh	quarter of an hour
eine halbe Stunde	ay-nuh hAl-buh shtoon-duh	half an hour
in einer Stunde	in ay-nuhR shtoon-duh	in an hour
bis zwei Uhr	bis tsvay ewR	until 2:00
vor drei Uhr	foR dRay ewR	before 3:00
nach drei Uhr	nACH dRay ewR	after 3:00
Seit wann?	zayt vAn	since when?
seit sechs Uhr	zayt zeks	since 6:00
vor einer Stunde	foR ay-nuhR shtoon-duh	an hour ago
jede Stunde	yey-duh shtoon-duh	every hour
stündlich	shtünt-liH	hourly
früh	fRüh	early
spät	shpäht	late
gestern	ges-tuhRn	yesterday
heute	hoy-tuh	today
morgen	moR-guhn	tomorrow
vorgestern	foR-ges-tuhRn	the day before yesterday
übermorgen	ü-buhR-moR-guhn	the day after tomorrow

Note that the word *seit* ("since") along with the present tense is used to express a period of time beginning in the past and extending into the present. To express that you have been living in Berlin for three years, you would say: *Seit drei Jahren wohne ich in Berlin*. Keep this rule in mind to avoid becoming one of the many English speakers who misuse the word *für* ("for") for *seit*.



As a Rule

You can form various kinds of time expressions by combining the adverbs *gestern*, *heute*, *morgen*, *vorgestern*, or *übermorgen* with the nouns *Morgen*, *Vormittag*, *Mittag*, *Nachmittag*, or *Abend* to express things such as "yesterday afternoon" → *gestern Nachmittag*. The only two exceptions to this productive permutation are the German expression for "tomorrow morning," *morgen früh*, (not *morgen Morgen*), and *übermorgen früh* to indicate "the morning of the day after tomorrow."

The Least You Need to Know

- You can use the very strong verb *nehmen* to indicate what transportation you are taking to get from one place to another.
- *Welcher* is the interrogative pronoun "which" or "what" and takes the same declination as the definite article.
- To rent a car, you might need to know some basic vocabulary for the parts of a car.
- Whether you're telling someone the time or listening to the teller count your money at a bank, sooner or later you're going to need to know German cardinal numbers.



Yippee, You've Made It to the Hotel!

In This Chapter

- Checking out hotel facilities
- Counting with ordinal numbers (an excuse to review adjective endings!)
- Knowing and *knowing* something
- Verbs with prefixes, both separable and inseparable

You selected the method of transportation that suits your luggage situation and the purchasing power of your wallet. You pay the taxi driver, get off the bus, or exit the subway, to find yourself in front of your hotel.

For some of us, a bed is all we look for in a hotel. For others, cable TV, a telephone, a sauna, and a garden-view balcony are the bare necessities. Whatever your personal needs may be, this chapter will help you be comfortable in a German hotel.

What a Hotel! Does It Have ...?

Some people enjoy the adventure of wandering around for hours looking for a hotel they saw in a travel brochure; other people don't feel comfortable unless they've reserved their room a year in advance. Either way, before you hand over your credit card or traveler's check, be sure to verify with the people at *die Hotel Rezeption* (*dee hoh-tel Rey-tsep-tseeohn*) whether they can provide you with whatever it is you need: a quiet room, a wake-up call, or coffee at 4 A.M. The following table will help you get the scoop on just about everything a hotel has to offer.

At the Hotel

German	Pronunciation	English
das Einkaufszentrum	dAs ayn-koufs-tsen-tRoom	shopping center
das Fitneßcenter	dAs fit-nes-sen-tuhR	fitness center
das Geschäftszentrum	dAs guh-shäfts-tsen-tRoom	business center
der Geschenkladen	deyR guh-shenk-lah-duhn	gift shop
das Hotel	dAs hoh-tel	hotel
das Restaurant	dAs Re-stou-rohn	restaurant
das Schwimmbad	dAs shvim-baht	swimming pool
das Zimmermädchen	dAs tsi-muhR-mät-Huhn	maid service
der (Gepäck)Träger	deyR (guh-päk)tRäh-guhR	porter
der Aufzug	deyR ouf-zewk	elevator
der Kassierer	deyR kA-see-RuhR	cashier
der Parkplatz	deyR pARK-plAts	parking lot
der Pförtner	deyR pföRt-nuhR	concierge
der Portier	deyR poR-ti-ey	doorman
der Zimmerservice	deyR tsi-muhR-suhR-vis	room service
die Sauna	dee sou-nah	sauna
die Reinigung	dee Ray-ni-goonk	laundry and dry-cleaning service



Culture Shock

Travelers interested in cheap, no-frills sleeping can stay at *die Pension* (dee pen-zeeohn), essentially a boarding house. Depending on whether you want all meals or just breakfast, you can choose *Vollpension* or *Halbpension*. If you want something cozier, try *das Gasthaus* (dAs gAst-hous). And finally, there is *das Hotel* (dAs hoh-tel).

Whenever you're about to book a room at a hotel, don't let the giddiness you feel at being in a new country prevent you from asking a few important questions about your room. Is it quiet? Does it look out onto the courtyard or onto the street? Is it on a smoking floor or a nonsmoking floor? Are there extra blankets in the cupboard? No matter how luxurious your hotel room, if you forget to ask any of these questions, you may find yourself spending a sleepless night shivering under your thin blanket, listening to the music from the discotheque next door, and inhaling the secondhand smoke seeping in under your door. The following table has some words you may find useful when cross-examining hotel receptionists.

Hotel Basics

German	Pronunciation	English
das Badezimmer	<i>dAs bah-duh-tsi-muhR</i>	bathroom
das Doppelzimmer	<i>dAs do-pel-tsi-muhR</i>	double room
das Einzelzimmer	<i>dAs ayn-tsel-tsi-muhR</i>	single room
das Telefon	<i>dAs tey-ley-fon</i>	telephone
das Zimmer	<i>dAs tsi-muhR</i>	room
der Balkon	<i>deyR bAl-kohn</i>	balcony
der Farbfernseher	<i>deyR faRb-feRn-zay-heR</i>	color television
der Fernseher	<i>deyR feRn-zay-heR</i>	television
der Safe	<i>deyR Zeyf</i>	safe
der Schlüssel	<i>deyR shlüi-suhl</i>	key
der Wecker	<i>deyR ve-kuhR</i>	alarm clock
die Badewanne	<i>dee bah-duh-vA-nuh</i>	bathtub
die Dusche	<i>dee dew-shuh</i>	shower
die Halbpension	<i>dee hAlp-pen-zee-ohn</i>	just with breakfast
die Vollpension	<i>dee fol-pen-zee-ohn</i>	with meals
die Klimaanlage	<i>dee klee-mah-An-lah-guh</i>	air conditioning
die Toilette	<i>dee toee-le-tuh</i>	restroom
die Übernachtung	<i>dee üh-beR-nACH-toong</i>	overnight stay
ein Zimmer mit Aussicht	<i>ayn tsi-muhR mit ous-ziHt</i>	a room with a view
nach hinten	<i>nahCH hin-tuhn</i>	at the back
nach vorn	<i>nahCH foRn</i>	at the front
zum Garten	<i>tsoom gAR-tuhn</i>	on the garden
zum Hof	<i>tsoom hof</i>	on the courtyard
zur Meerseite	<i>tsewR meeR-zay-tuh</i>	on the sea

Now, using the vocabulary you've learned, fill in the blanks of this dialogue between a hotel receptionist (*der Empfangschef*) and a client (*der Kunde*).

Kunde: Guten Tag. Haben Sie ein _____ frei?

Empfangschef: Möchten Sie ein Zimmer mit einem _____? Wir haben ein wunderschönes _____ zur Meerseite.

Kunde: Ja, warum nicht? Hat das Zimmer ein _____? Ich erwarte einen wichtigen Anruf.

Empfangschef: Selbstverständlich. Möchten Sie Vollpension oder _____?

Kunde: Vollpension, bitte.

Empfangschef: Gut. Die Zimmernummer ist 33. Hier ist Ihr _____. Gute Nacht.

Calling Housekeeping

So what happens if you *do* forget to ask whether there are blankets in the closet and then the temperature drops 20 degrees shortly after you get into bed? Do you shiver all night, or do you call the concierge and ask for more blankets? Here are some expressions that will help you get whatever you need. Because you will usually be asking for *an* object or *a* thing, these nouns are listed with their indefinite articles followed by “m.” for masculine nouns, “f.” for feminine nouns, “n.” for neuter nouns, and “pl.” for plural nouns. See the following table.

Necessities

German	Pronunciation	English
die Eiswürfel (m. pl.)	dee ays-viiR-fuhl	ice cubes
ein Adapter (m.)	ayn ah-dAp-tuhR	an adapter
ein Aschenbecher (m.)	ayn A-shuhn-be-HuhR	an ashtray
ein Badetuch (n.)	ayn bah-duh-tewCH	a beach towel
ein Handtuch (n.)	ayn hAn-tewCH	a towel
ein Kleiderbügel (m.)	ayn klay-duhR-bühh-guhl	a hanger
ein Kopfkissen (n.)	ayn kopf-ki-suhn	a pillow
ein Mineralwasser (n.)	ayn mi-nuh-Rahl-vA-suhR	mineral water
ein Stück Seife (n.)	ayn shtük zay-fuh	a bar of soap
ein Taschentuch (n.)	ayn tA-shuhn-tewCH	a handkerchief
eine Bettdecke (f.)	ay-nuh bet-de-kuh	a blanket
die Streichhölzer (f.)	dee shtRayH-höl-tsuhR	matches
das Briefpapier (n.)	dAs bReef-pah-peeR	stationery
ein Nähkasten (m.)	ayn näh-kAs-tuhn	a sewing kit

Complete the following sentences. Keep in mind that the nouns you will be using are direct objects, and take the accusative case: The masculine indefinite article *ein* becomes *einen*; the feminine and neuter indefinite articles *eine* and *ein* remain the same in the nominative and accusative case (see Chapter 8, “Fitting Form with Function”).

Ich hätte gern ...

iH hä-tuh geRn

I would like ...

Ich brauche ...

iH brou-CHuh

I need ...

Using these expressions along with the vocabulary you've just learned, try to translate the following sentences into German.

1. I need an adapter.
2. I'd like a mineral water, please.
3. I need stationery.
4. I'd like an ashtray and matches, please.
5. I need a pillow.
6. I would like a beach towel, please.



Achtung

German bathrooms, like many European bathrooms, have what looks like a tiny bathtub, usually next to the toilet, known as a bidet. Non-Europeans sometimes make the mistake of thinking this bathroom fixture is for washing their clothes.

Going Straight to the Top

Now that you've had a good night's sleep, it's time to explore the hotel a little. To get around, you'll need to know how to get from one floor to another. The numbers used to refer to the floors of a building are known as *ordinal numbers*. An ordinal number refers to a specific number in a series. If your hotel is really fancy, someone in the elevator may ask you, "Welcher Stock, bitte (vel-HuhR shtok, bi-tuh)?" Study the ordinal numbers in the following table, and you'll be able to answer this question.

Ordinal Numbers

German Numbers	Pronunciation	English
1. erste	<i>eRs-tuh</i>	first
2. zweite	<i>tsvay-tuh</i>	second
3. dritte	<i>dRi-tuh</i>	third
4. vierte	<i>feeR-tuh</i>	fourth
5. fünft	<i>fünf-tuh</i>	fifth
6. sechste	<i>zeks-tuh</i>	sixth
7. siebte	<i>zeep-tuh</i>	seventh
8. achte	<i>ACH-tuh</i>	eighth
9. neunte	<i>noyn-tuh</i>	ninth

continues

Ordinal Numbers (continued)

German Numbers	Pronunciation	English
10. zehnte	<i>tseyn-tuh</i>	tenth
11. elfte	<i>elf-tuh</i>	eleventh
12. zwölft	<i>tsvölf-tuh</i>	twelfth
20. zwanzigste	<i>tsvan-tsiHs-tuh</i>	twentieth
21. einundzwanzigste	<i>ayn-oont-tsvan-tsiHs-tuh</i>	twenty-first
100. hundertste	<i>hoon-dert-stuh</i>	hundredth
1000. tausendste	<i>tou-zuhnt-stuh</i>	thousandth
1.000.000. millionste	<i>i-lyohn-stuh</i>	millionth



What's What?

Ordinal numbers Numbers that refer to a specific number in a series and answer the question, Which one? In German, they may be preceded by a definite article.



Culture Shock

In Germany, as in many European countries, the street-level floor is not numbered. It is referred to as *das Erdgeschoß* (*dAs eRt-guh-shos*). The German first floor is the equivalent of the American second floor.

- Ordinal numbers are formed by adding *-te* to the numbers two through 19 and by adding *-ste* from 20 on. *Erste* ("first"), *dritte* ("third"), *siebte* ("seventh"), and *achte* ("eighth") are exceptions.
- In English, we use letters (1st, 2nd, 3rd ...) to express ordinal numbers. In German, use a period after the numeral: 1., 2., 3., and so on.
- Ordinal numbers are, in fact, adjectives! Hence, they have the desire to agree with the noun they are modifying in gender (masculine, feminine, or neuter), number (singular or plural), and case (nominative, accusative, dative, genitive).

The Declension of Ordinal Numbers

Ordinal numbers are treated as adjectives and can therefore be declined like any other adjective. They take normal adjective endings, as introduced in Chapter 11, "I'd Like to Get to Know You." In the sentence *Wir nehmen den ersten freien Aufzug zum Restaurant* (*veeR neymuhn deyn eR-sten fRay-uhn ouf-tsewk tsoom Res-tou-RAnt*) "We will take the first available elevator to the restaurant," the ordinal number *erste* is modifying the singular noun *der Aufzug*.

If you read Chapter 11 carefully, you know that adjectives after a *der* word don't need to "show" much grammar—the *der* word already performs that function! You can surmise by its function in the sentence that *der Aufzug* is the direct object. Thus it must reflect the masculine accusative, and the adjective *erste* gets an agreeable, weak and easy *-n*. And what about *frei*? As *ersten* sets the agreeable adjectival precedence, *frei* simply follows suit → *freien*. The three tables that follow give you a quick review of the endings of adjectives—this time ordinal numbers—in the weak, strong, and mixed declension.

Recall that adjectives needn't be burdened with the task of indicating gender, number, or case when they come after *der* words (words such as *dieser*, *jener*, *jeder*, and so on), because the *der* word assumes that responsibility. The weak declension of adjectives illustrated with an ordinal number is shown in the table that follows.

Case	Singular Masculine	Plural Feminine	Neuter	All Genders
Nom.	der erste	die erste	das erste	die ersten
Acc.	den ersten	die erste	das erste	die ersten
Dat.	dem ersten	der ersten	dem ersten	den ersten
Gen.	des ersten	der ersten	des ersten	der ersten

Conversely, adjectives that are not preceded by any type of limiting word have to bear all of the grammar and thus resemble the definite article, also referred to as taking the strong declension: *Zimmer 33, erstes Zimmer auf der rechten Seite ...* ("Room 33, the first room on the right ..."). Why, you might wonder, is it *erstes* and not *erste* or *erster*? *Zimmer* is a neuter noun (*das*) and is functioning in this phrase as a subject, reflected by the nominative case. Remembering to stretch your mind to allow an *-es* for the *-as* in *das*, only two deviations from your *der* word chart occur when marking adjectives that are not preceded by any type of limiting word (genitive masculine and neuter).

Case	Singular Masculine	Plural Feminine	Neuter	All Genders
Nom.	erster	erste	erstes	erste
Acc.	ersten	erste	erstes	erste
Dat.	erstem	erster	erstem	ersten
Gen.	ersten	erster	ersten	erster

Adjectives preceded by an *ein* word (words such as *ein*, *kein*, *mein*, *sein*, *ihr*, and so on) take a weak ending in all but three instances. You might recall that the *ein* in *ein Wagen*, *ein Auto*, and *Ich habe ein Auto* all look the same, yet represent different gender and case. Therefore, given a second chance to reflect a bit of grammatical identity, the adjective following such a word will, indeed, strive to do so. See the table that follows for the mixed declension of adjectives.

Case	Singular Masculine	Plural Feminine	Neuter	All Genders
Nom.	ein erster	eine erste	ein erstes	die ersten
Acc.	einen ersten	eine erste	ein erstes	die ersten
Dat.	einem ersten	einer ersten	einem ersten	den ersten
Gen.	eines ersten	einer ersten	eines ersten	der ersten

My Seventh? No, No—This Is My Eighth Husband

Complete the following sentences by supplying an ordinal number and adding the appropriate adjective ending.

Example: Sie hat Angst, ins Flugzeug zu steigen. Es ist ihr *erster* Flug.

1. Wir haben nicht viel Geld. Wir fahren _____ Klasse.
2. "Erster Stop ist in Marl; Zweiter Stop ist in Haltern; _____ Stop ist in Recklinghausen," sagt der Busfahrer.
3. Mein _____ Beruf war Tellerwäscher. Heute bin ich Millionär.
4. Zuerst kommt die Post. Das _____ Gebäude auf der linken Seite ist ein Hotel.
5. Auf der zweiten Etage befindet sich das Restaurant. Auf der _____ Etage ist das Einkaufszentrum.
6. Er hat schon drei Söhne. Sein _____ Kind wird ein Mädchen.
7. Wenn eine Katze schon acht Leben hatte, ist sie jetzt im _____ Lebensjahr!

More Action with Verbs

Do you remember what you learned about verbs in Chapter 9, "Click Your Heels Together and Say: There's No Place Like Deutschland"? Verbs are used to express action, motion, or states of being. This section looks at the irregular verb *wissen* and its weak partner, *kennen*; at the meanings of the simple present tense; and at verbs with prefixes.

Wissen and Other Ways of Expressing Knowledge

The irregular verb *wissen* (*vi-suhn*) states knowledge of something as a fact: *Ich weiß die Adresse von Christoph nicht*. It never refers to persons. You'll recall the other two irregular verbs you've learned, *sein* and *haben*. Why, you might ask, must these verbs be

irregular? Interestingly (or not) enough, the verbs *to be*, *to have*, *to know*, and *to become* (the fourth irregular verb to be learned later) are high-frequency verbs in most languages and thus mark themselves as meaningful and significant by retaining distinctive forms. In German, distinctiveness translates into changing the consonants—not just the vowels! Observe this behavior in the conjugation of *wissen* in the following table.

The Verb *wissen*

Personal	Singular	Plural
First	ich weiß	wir wissen
Second	du weißt	ihr wisst
Third	er, sie, es weiß	sie wissen

There you have it! Not only does a vowel-stem change occur in *all* of the singular conjugations, but you'll observe an ending omission in the *ich* and *er, sie, and es* forms. We told you it was irregular! But take heart: To express knowing, as in indicating familiarity with something or somebody, you can also use a weak verb, *kennen*.



As a Rule

There are two German equivalents for the English “to know”: *wissen*, which means to know something as a fact, and *kennen*, to be acquainted with a person, place or thing. *Wissen* is frequently used to form an introductory clause: *Wissen Sie, ...? Ich weiß ...*, whereas *kennen* takes only nouns as objects: *Ich kenne Berlin gut. Kennst du diesen Film?* *Kennen* is still used as a verb in Scottish, indicating perception or understanding.

Care to exercise your choice? Try your hand at inserting the correct form of *wissen* or *kennen*!

1. _____ du, wo Kerstin wohnt?
2. Kerstin? Ich _____ niemanden mit dem Namen “Kerstin.” Wer ist sie? (*niemand*, “no one”; *wer*, “who”)
3. Ich _____, dass sie sehr hübsch und intelligent ist!

4. Na, ja. Vielleicht _____ Petra sie. Vielleicht _____ Petra die Adress von dieser Kerstin.
5. _____ wir nicht Kerstins Mann, Frank?
6. Ach ja! Ich _____ ihn vom Bus.

Verbs with Prefixes

The prefixes you're going to learn about here have nothing to do with prices you find on the menu in the restaurant of your fancy hotel. *Pre* means "to come before," and *fix* means "to join onto or with"; thus a prefix is a series of letters (sometimes a word on its own) that you join onto the beginning of another word. Verbs with prefixes, referred to as *compound verbs*, are not a German phenomenon. English also has many compound verbs: *to lead* and *to mislead*; *to rate*, *to overrate*, and *to underrate*; *to take*, *to mistake*, *to retake*, *to undertake*, and *to overtake*. In German, as in English, the verb and the compound verb follow the same conjugation; *take* becomes *took* in the past tense, for example, and *mistake* becomes *mistook*.

Coming Apart: Verbs with Separable Prefixes

When you were busy ordering people around and taking directions in Chapter 12, "Finally, You're at the Airport," you used verbs with separable prefixes. You sent those prefixes to the end of the command. The rule still holds—separable prefixes like *to get away from* their stem verb and go to the end of a clause even in an ordinary statement or question: *Kommst du heute Abend mit? Ja, ich komme um 8 Uhr mit.* Just as the particle helpers in English stand on their own, so can the separable prefixes in German be words on their own, usually adverbs or prepositions. Although in the infinitive form they appear to be one word (as in the verb *weggehen*, which means "to go away"), the prefix functions separately in the sentence *Er geht jetzt weg* ("He's going away now").



What's What?

Compound verbs Verbs that are formed by adding a prefix to the stem verb. German has two types of compound verbs: those with separable prefixes and those with inseparable prefixes.

Some common separable prefixes are *auf-*, *aus-*, *an-*, *bei-*, *mit-*, *nach-*, *vor-*, *weg-*, *weiter-*, *wieder-*, *zu-*, *zurück-*, and *zusammen-*.

The following sentences involve separable prefix verbs whose meanings you should be able to deduce from your general knowledge of German prepositions and verbs (see Chapter 9). Try to complete the sentences.

Wann _____ wir den Film _____? (*an.sehen^s*) When are we viewing the film?

Tina _____ das Buch _____. (*vor.lesen^s*) Tina is reading the book out loud.

_____ Sie nie _____! (auf.geben^s) Never give up!

Gretchen _____ ihr Bier immer_____! (aus.trinken) Gretchen always drinks up all of her beer.

^sDon't forget that these verbs incur a stem change in the present tense!



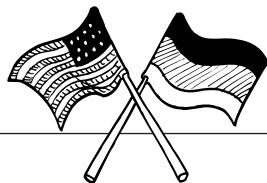
As a Rule

When a prefix is separated from a compound verb, the prefix occurs at the end of the clause, which also is often the end of the sentence: *Er geht jeden Morgen um sieben Uhr aus.*

Remember how we started noting the *sehr starke* verbs (those verbs undergoing a vowel-stem change in the present tense) in Chapter 9. Also, from now on in this book, separable prefix verbs will be marked in their infinitival form with a period between the prefix and the stem. Although these verbs are not normally represented this way, the period should help you identify them.

Sticking It Out Together: Verbs with Inseparable Prefixes

The German language has one more basic type of verb prefix: the inseparable variety. Inseparable prefixes cannot stand alone and must be attached to a verb. Also noteworthy is the fact that they are not stressed. Compare the separable prefix verb *aus.gehen* with the inseparable *ergeben^s*—the underlined portion of each receives the main stress. The following prefixes always remain attached to the verb, but if you are creative enough, you can build a “semantic bridge” and link the meaning of the stem with that of the newly formed verb!



We Are Family

What caused a rift between English and German? When they were still considered Germanic buddies, their common development of stress shifting systematically to a word's first or root syllable helped differentiate them from other Indo-European languages. We still see that predictable stress in German, but not in English. Loss of regular first-syllable stress is just one of the profound effects brought about by the Norman Invasion of England in 1066.

Inseparable Prefix	German Verb	English
be- (<i>buh</i>)	bekommen	to get, receive
emp- (<i>emp</i>)	empfehlen ^s	to recommend
ent- (<i>ent</i>)	entdecken	to discover
er- (<i>eR</i>)	ergeben ^s	to yield, produce
ge- (<i>guh</i>)	gewinnen	to win
miss- (<i>mis</i>)	missverstehen	to misunderstand
ver- (<i>feyR</i>)	vergessen ^s	to forget
zer- (<i>tseyR</i>)	zerfallen ^s	to decay

From the preceding list, see whether you can fill in the blanks with the correct verb—correctly conjugated, of course! Read these sentences aloud, remembering *not* to stress the prefix in these verbs.

1. Wo _____ Sie das? (Where do you get that?)
2. Ich _____ die Adresse. (I forgot the address.)
3. Boris Becker _____ fast immer. (Boris Becker almost always wins.)
4. Welches Restaurant _____ du? (Which restaurant do you recommend?)

The Least You Need to Know

- If you familiarize yourself with a few basic vocabulary words, you should have no trouble getting what you need in your hotel room.
- Form ordinal numbers by adding *-te* to the numbers two through 19 and *-ste* to the numbers from 20 on. Memorize the exceptions to this rule: *erste*, *dritte*, *siebte*, and *achte*. Amaze yourself with all the new adjectives you've just acquired!
- The verbs *wissen* and *kennen* express knowledge and familiarity.
- Many German verbs are compound verbs, or verbs with prefixes. These verbs can be either separable or inseparable.



What's Your Number?

In This Chapter

- Addresses and phone calls
- European countries with German-sounding names
- Exchanging money and figuring out prices
- The German equivalent of the English *let's*

You've been in Germany for a while now, at least within the international borders of this book. You can get around, find a room, spout a few nouns, ask a question or two, tell a little time, and find a room. But what about shopping? Say you need some new duds or are tempted by the fresh fruits and vegetables of the open-air markets that abound in Germany. It's always practical to be able to point and pay, if nothing else. And what about using numbers as you travel: addresses, phones, giving and receiving ID and contact information ...?

In this chapter you'll use those cardinal numbers from Chapter 13, "Heading for the Hotel," as a springboard to launch into the realm of communication and consumerism. For now let's concentrate on expressing and understanding numbers and commands; subsequent chapters explain how to dispose of the money you have learned to count (but not necessarily budget)!



Achtung

It is not uncommon to find *Straße* abbreviated as *Str.* and to find more than one number for a house address. Never you mind, as that is how the *Hausschild* (*hous-shilt*), the numerical sign on the street, will read.

Send Me a Card ... Drop Me a Line!

You're going to Germany, and you want to correspond with some distant relatives, college acquaintances, or the hotel proprietors. How exactly do you address a card? Differing from our American system is the ordering of house number followed by street. If you think about it, it really is more logical to know which street you're referring to before knowing exactly where on that street the house lies. In Germany, after the line of the addressee comes the street and then the house number. Conversely, the zip code precedes the city in German correspondence. Guess there has to be some leveling out or reciprocation of numeral ordering somewhere! When in Deutschland, you'll want to use Deutsch-style addresses. Here's an example:

German Style	U.S. Style
Bernadette Höfer	Bernadette Höfer
Feldbergstraße 3-7	300 Washington Avenue
55118 Mainz	Mainstreet, MD 21000

Identifying International Abbreviations

International abbreviations are used for the country names. You might have seen stickers on automobiles, indicating countries of origin, bearing the same abbreviations. Some abbreviations you might not guess are ...

- CH for Switzerland (Confederatio Helvetica)
- SK for Slovakia (die Slowakei)
- PL for Poland (Polen)
- E for Spain (Spanien)

What is Germany's abbreviation? Why, *D* for *Deutschland*, of course!

Call Me ...

Reading a German business card, advertisement, or brochure, you're likely to encounter more than an address—most likely, a telephone number. Unlike American

telephone numbers, which consist of a three-digit area code followed by a seven-digit number, the exact length of telephone numbers in Germany is variable. Most phone numbers have a city prefix consisting of three or four digits, and the actual phone number may be four to seven digits long. Go ahead and tack on another digit, a zero in front of the city code, if phoning from within Germany. Not to worry if you dial a wrong number or can't write as fast as directory assistance would assume—the post office (*die Post*) sells phone cards beginning with 6 DM amounts. Once you get your paws on one of these colorful cards, you can experiment and frustrate at your own pace. Now do you feel the need to really learn your numbers? As an aid, the following table lists some useful communication terms. (For more in-depth information on telephone etiquette, and that trip to the post office, see Chapters 25, "Getting Your Message Across," and 26, "Where's the Nearest Post Office?"



Culture Shock

The postal service in Germany also provides phone service. Tell the postal worker behind the counter that you want to make a long-distance call, and he or she will indicate which phone booth is available. You pay (cash only) after your call. Long-distance calls made from the post office are considerably cheaper.

Communication Terms

German	Pronunciation	English
die Adresse	<i>dee A-dre-suh</i>	the address
die Ansichtskarte	<i>dee An-siHts-kAr-tuh</i>	the postcard
der Brief	<i>deR bReef</i>	the letter
die Hausnummer	<i>dee hous-noo-muhR</i>	the house number
das Land	<i>dAs lAnt</i>	the country
die Post	<i>dee post</i>	the post office
die Postkarte	<i>dee post-kAr-tuh</i>	the postcard
die Postleitzahl	<i>dee post-layt-tsahl</i>	the zip code
die Stadt	<i>dee shtAt</i>	the city
die Straße	<i>dee shtrA-suh</i>	the street
die Telefonnummer	<i>dee te-le-fo-noo-muhR</i>	the telephone number
der Wohnort	<i>deR von-oRt</i>	the town of residence
Was bedeutet ...?	<i>vAs buh-doi-tuht ...</i>	What does _____ mean?
Wie bitte?	<i>vee bi-tuh</i>	Excuse me?
Wie ist deine/Ihre Telefonnummer?	<i>vee ist day-nuh/ee-Ruh te-le-fo-noo-muhR</i>	What is your telephone number?
Wie schreibt man ...?	<i>vee shraypt mAn ...</i>	How does one write ...?

Using the information-gathering vocabulary you've just acquired, try to fill in the following blanks:

1. Ich kenne die Straße, aber nicht die _____.
2. Die _____ kommt vor der Stadt in der Adresse.
3. Ich habe ein Telefon. Meine _____ ist 03-45-60.
4. Du schickst eine _____ an deine Mutter.
5. Sein Name ist sehr lang! _____ das?

Now try to fill in the information requested in German.

Name

Wohnort

Straße und Hausnummer

Postleitzahl und Stadt

Telefonnummer

European Countries, According to Germans

As an American (if you are), you come from America and speak *American*. Okay, maybe you speak *English* or are from England. The point is that every language personalizes other countries' names to suit their language's sound systems. The German names for countries should be fairly recognizable to you, but the pronunciation may be challenging. The following table lists some European countries:

Country Names

German	Pronunciation	English
Albanien	<i>Al-bah-neyuhn</i>	Albania
Belgien	<i>bel-geyuhn</i>	Belgium
Bulgarien	<i>bool-gah-Reyuhn</i>	Bulgaria
Dänemark	<i>däh-nuh-mARK</i>	Denmark
Deutschland	<i>doitsh-lAnt</i>	Germany
Finnland	<i>fin-lAnt</i>	Finland
Frankreich	<i>frAnk-rayH</i>	France
Griechenland	<i>gree-Huhn-lAnt</i>	Greece
Großbritannien	<i>gros-bRi-tah-neyuhn</i>	Great Britain
Irland	<i>eer-lAnt</i>	Ireland

German	Pronunciation	English
Italien	<i>ee-tah-leyuhn</i>	Italy
Lettland	<i>let-lAnt</i>	Latvia
Litauen	<i>lee-tou-uhn</i>	Lithuania
Liechtenstein	<i>leeH-tuhm-shtayn</i>	Liechtenstein
Luxemburg	<i>look-suhm-buHRk</i>	Luxembourg
die Niederlande	<i>dee nee-duhR-lAn-duh</i>	the Netherlands
Norwegen	<i>noR-vey-guhn</i>	Norway
österreich	<i>ös-tuh-RayH</i>	Austria
Polen	<i>poh-luhn</i>	Poland
Portugal	<i>poR-too-gAl</i>	Portugal
Russland	<i>roos-lAnt</i>	Russia
die Schweiz	<i>dee shvayts</i>	Switzerland
Schweden	<i>schvey-duhn</i>	Sweden
die Slowakei	<i>dee sloh-vah-kay</i>	Slovakia
Spanien	<i>shpah-neyuhn</i>	Spain
Tschechien	<i>tshe-Heyuhn</i>	Czech Republic
Ungarn	<i>oon-gARn</i>	Hungary

Try your hand now at the international abbreviations, indicating which country the following postcards are from!

1. CH aus _____
2. D aus _____
3. I aus _____
4. A aus _____
5. GB aus _____
6. F aus _____

And don't forget the good old United States: *Vereinigte Staaten* (*veR-ayn-ik-tuh shtah-tuhn*)!

Clams or Cabbage? It's All the Same in Money

Just as English has numerous *colloquial* expressions for money—clams, silverbacks, bucks, and so on—similar expressions are used in German, such as *Mäuse* (*moi-zuh*) “mice” and *Knete* (*kney-tuh*) “dough.” Perhaps one of the most culturally specific



What's What?

Colloquial Refers to the informal register of a linguistic repertoire. Stemming from the Latin meaning to speak together, this semi-technical term refers to informal, everyday speech, including slang, as in *He ain't comin'* (He is not coming) or *I'm gonna go* (I am going to go).

colloquialisms referring to money in German is *Kohle* (*koh-luh*) “cabbage.” Now that you’re wondering how to get your hands on some of that German spending cabbage, you can hit the nearest ATM, incurring a modest \$1–\$5 service charge from your home bank. You are guaranteed to get the fairest, most-to-date exchange rate. Alternatively, money can be exchanged at *Wechselstuben* (*vek-suhl-shtew-buhn*), or “money exchange booths,” at airports, and at train stations. The *Deutsche Verkehrs-Kredit Bank* has branches in train stations that stay open until 6 P.M. Your best bet, however, if you don’t find that ATM box in your port of arrival, is to exchange money at one of the larger branches of a bank in cities (you may have some trouble in the smaller towns). The exchange rates at the larger bank branches are higher than at smaller, lesser-known banks, and the commission is lower. Most hotels also exchange money, but their rates are a complete rip-off, really—*ein totaler Nepp*. It’s hardly even worth mentioning them.

You can exchange traveler’s checks in the same places you might go to exchange money: banks, money exchange booths, and post offices. You’ll have trouble getting anyone to accept traveler’s checks as direct payment.

Then—are you ready?—once again, there’s *die Post*. The German post office will change your money for you, which is something you may want to keep in mind if you’re cashless in the late afternoon: Post offices stay open until 6 P.M.

Deutsche Mark oder Eurodollar?

Since 1998, all goods in German stores have carried two prices: one in German Marks and the other in Eurodollars. Within the next few years, the Eurodollar will completely replace the German Mark, but this date keeps changing. You know politicians! For now, let’s concentrate on how the Germans refer to their currency, *die deutsche Mark*. Both *Mark* and *Pfennig* (the breakdown of the Mark into 100 units) are used in the singular. Thus, *Diese CD kostet DM 30,50* would be read as *dreiβig Mark und fünfzig Pfennig*, or simply *dreiβig Mark fünfzig*. Note that the German equivalent of a decimal point is a comma.

Read the following sentences aloud, checking your pronunciation in the answer key. Go on the Internet and find the current exchange rate for the Mark and the Euro-dollar; use the rates to convert the prices in the following exercise to U.S. dollars.

1. Das Buch kostet DM 47,45.
2. Die Blumen kosten DM 13,10.

3. Die Ansichtskarte kostet DM 50.
4. Ein Einzelzimmer kostet DM 61.
5. Das Ticket kostet DM 36,99.

Approximations and Oddities

In case you don't want to talk exact amounts of money, or anything else that involves counting, you can always use the trusty approximate figures listed in the following table:

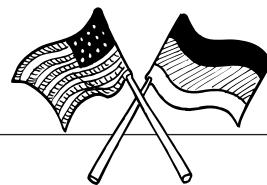
Approximate Figures

German	Pronunciation	English
circa	tseeR-kuh	about
etwa	et-vah	roughly
rund	Roont	around, about
ungefähr	oon-guh-fähR	approximately
über	üh-buhR	over, more than

You might recall from Chapter 13 that a million is a *Million*, but an American billion is a German *Milliarde*, whereas a German *Billion* is an American trillion. Aside from putting commas where we'd place decimals, and vice versa, Germans write the numeral *seven* a wee bit differently: They put a line through it so that it looks like a backwards capital *F*. Perhaps this feature is to distinguish it from the written *one*, which has the initial stroke below the line.

Let's Go Fly a Kite ...

The German equivalent of the English *let's ...* utilizes that nifty imperative, or command form you learned in Chapter 12, "Finally, You're at the Airport," but softens it up with a pronoun. You'll notice that the word order is the same in questions as it was in the regular imperative used to order people around. Have a look:



We Are Family

The American usage of "dough" for money or cash began around the 1850s. Dough evolved into the 1960s "bread," used primarily as hippie jargon and by the working class. The German equivalent, *Knete*, developed out of a reference to how people can hold money in their hands for a long time—just like dough!

Essen wir Schokolade.	Let's eat chocolate.
Kaufen wir ein.	Let's shop.
Finden wir das Museum.	Let's find the museum.

Another way to suggest to a friend that you do something together involves the expression *Lass uns ...* (*lAs oonz*), with the main verb arriving at the end of the suggestion:

Lass uns ins Restaurant gehen.	Let's go to a restaurant.
Lass uns griechisch essen.	Let's eat Greek.



As a Rule

The use of *doch*, *mal*, or *doch mal* in imperative constructions adds a subtle, but noticeable, layer of meaning. *Doch* adds a sense of urgency: *Lass uns doch japanisch essen*, or "Let's do eat Japanese." *Mal* adds a sense of impatience: *Trink mal!* becomes "Come on and drink!" Combining *doch* with *mal* produces a tone that is a little more casual: *Kauf doch mal was*, or "Go ahead and buy something."

Suggest to your friends, using either the *Lass uns ...* or the *Verb + wir* constructions, the following activities:

Let's travel first class. _____

Let's go to the garden. _____

Let's take the bus. _____

Let's visit France. _____

The Least You Need to Know

- German addresses list the street first, followed by the house number. The zip code precedes the city. Phone numbers vary in length.
- The German word for Germany is *Deutschland*, Austria is *österreich*, and Switzerland is *die Schweiz*.
- Use an ATM to exchange your money into, for now, German Marks, remembering that prices will be listed under both DM and EU dollars.
- All money designations in German are singular.
- By beginning a sentence with the verb in its infinitive form, followed by a *wir*, you'll be able to make suggestions in the vein of *let's ...*

Part 4

Fun and Games

Life isn't all fun and games, but much of the fourth part of this book is. Part 4 comprises chapters for sightseers, shopping addicts, sports fanatics, and gourmets. Once you've learned how to talk about the weather (an important ability in any language, particularly when making small talk), learning how to make suggestions about what you'd like to see, shop for, and eat will keep your outlook sunny!





A Date with the Weather

In This Chapter

- Describing weather conditions
- Learning the days of the week
- Naming the months of the year
- Breaking up the day

You've just arrived in Frankfurt, and you're ready to plan your afternoon. If you don't understand the local weather report, a walk in the park could end up being a soggy sojourn. A summer tourist outfit might be the death of you if a cold front sweeps in from the north. Weather can make or break your day and provide fodder for endless small talk with strangers.

In this chapter you'll pick up the vocabulary you need to understand the weather forecast and to make plans in a German city, inside or outside your hotel.

It's 20 Degrees, but They're Wearing Shorts!

Americans in Germany have been laughed at for leaving their hotels in 20-degree weather in heavy winter jackets. Why? The answer is simple: They misunderstood the weather forecast. Remember, Germans use Celsius (or centigrade) not Fahrenheit, the way we do in the United States. Twenty degrees in German weather terminology is actually 68 degrees Fahrenheit.

The phrases in the following table will come in handy when the topic is weather.

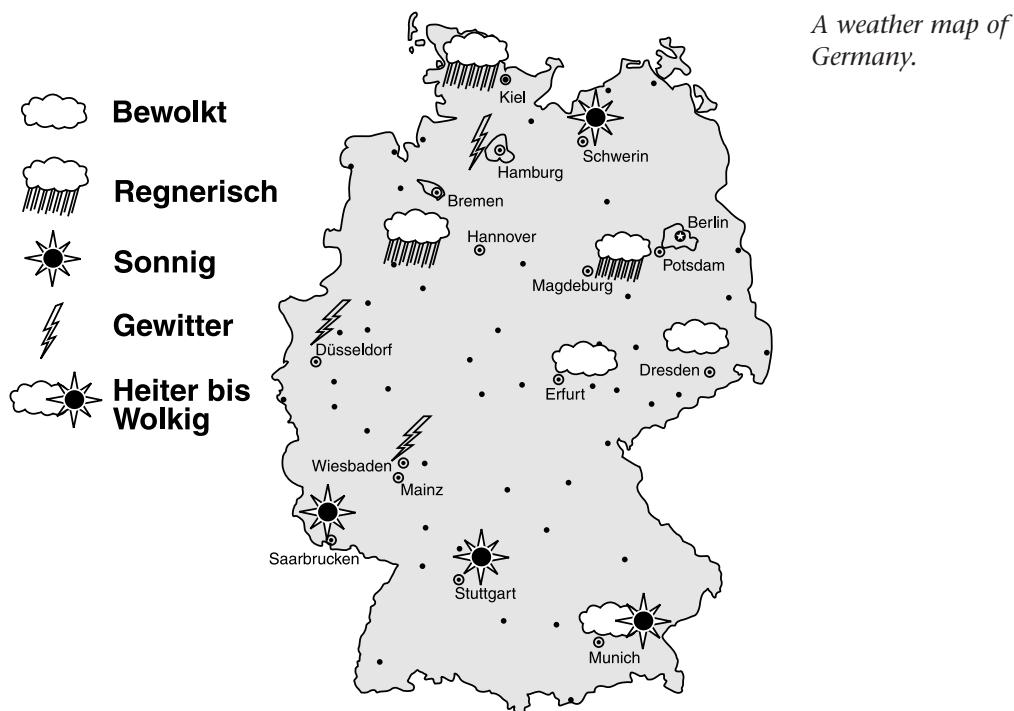
Weather Expressions

German	Pronunciation	English
Wie ist das Wetter?	<i>vee ist dAs ve-tuhR</i>	How is the weather?
Das Wetter ist herrlich.	<i>dAs ve-tuhR ist heyR-liH</i>	The weather is wonderful.
Das Wetter ist furchtbar.	<i>dAs ve-tuhR ist fooRHt-bahR</i>	The weather is awful.
Das Wetter ist schlecht.	<i>dAs ve-tuhR ist shleCHt</i>	The weather is bad.
Das Wetter ist schön.	<i>dAs ve-tuhR ist shöhn</i>	The weather is beautiful.
Das Wetter ist schrecklich.	<i>dAs ve-tuhR ist shRek-liH</i>	The weather is horrible.
Die Sonne scheint.	<i>dee so-nuh shaynt</i>	The sun is shining.
Es blitzt und donnert.	<i>es blitst oont do-nuhRt</i>	There is lightning and thunder.
Es gibt Regenschauer.	<i>es gipt rey-guhn-shou-uhR</i>	There are rain showers.
Es ist bewölkt.	<i>es ist buh-völk</i>	It is cloudy.
Es ist feucht.	<i>es ist foyHt</i>	It is humid.
Es ist heiß.	<i>es ist hays</i>	It is hot.
Es ist heiter.	<i>es ist hay-tuhR</i>	It is clear.
Es ist kalt.	<i>es ist kAlt</i>	It is cold.
Es ist kühl.	<i>es ist kühl</i>	It is cool.
Es ist nebelig.	<i>es ist ney-bey-liH</i>	It is foggy.
Es ist regnerisch.	<i>es ist rek-nuh-Rish</i>	It is rainy.
Es ist sonnig.	<i>es ist so-niH</i>	It is sunny.
Es ist sturmisch.	<i>es ist shtüR-mish</i>	It is stormy.
Es ist windig.	<i>es ist vin-diH</i>	It is windy.
Es regnet.	<i>es rek-nuht</i>	It is raining.
Es schneit.	<i>es shnayt</i>	It is snowing.
Es ist warm.	<i>es ist vARm</i>	It is warm.
Es regnetin Strömen.	<i>es Rek-nuhtin</i> <i>shtRöh-muhn</i>	It is pouring.

How's the Weather?

Look at the weather map of Germany. Use complete sentences to describe the weather in the following cities:

1. Erfurt
2. München
3. Schwerin
4. Kiel
5. Düsseldorf



What's the Temperature?

You're walking around a German city with your pocket calculator, and you've converted the Celsius temperature on the flashing sign of a Deutsche Bank in front of your hotel to Fahrenheit. A few blocks later, a passerby says something about the temperature. You freeze. Don't worry: The following phrases will enable you to respond correctly when someone asks you what the temperature is.



Culture Shock

To convert Fahrenheit to Celsius, subtract 32 from the Fahrenheit temperature and multiply the remaining number by .5. To convert Celsius to Fahrenheit, multiply the Celsius temperature by 1.8 and then add 32.

Welche Temperatur ist es?
vel-Huh tem-puh-rah-tewR ist es
 What's the temperature?

Es sind minus zehn Grad.
es zint mee-noos tseyen gRaht
 It's minus 10 degrees.

Es sind zehn Grad unter Null.
es zint tseyen gRaht oon-tuhR nool
 It's 10 degrees below zero.

Es sind (plus) zwanzig Grad.
es zint (ploos) tsvAn-tsiH gRaht
 It's 20 degrees.

But It Says in the Paper ...

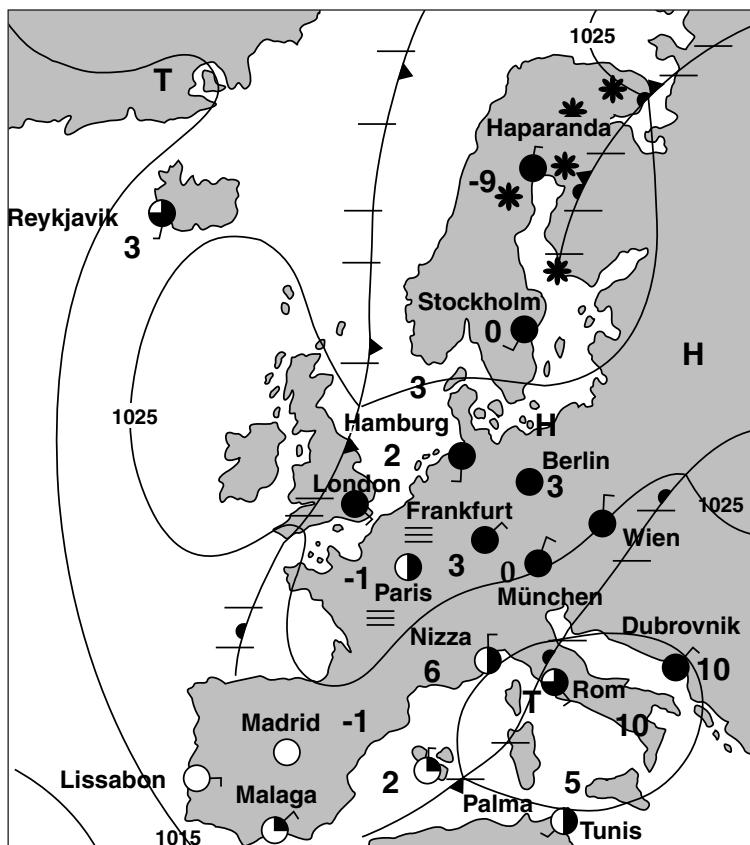
German newspapers contain information on the weather, just as American newspapers do. The maps often include Germany and Western Europe. Look at the table for the German terms commonly used to describe weather.

der Nebel	<i>deyR ney-bel</i>	fog
bewölkt	<i>buh-völk</i>	cloudy
der Hagel	<i>deyR hah-guhl</i>	hail
der Regen	<i>deyR Rey-guhn</i>	rain
der Schnee	<i>deyR shney</i>	snow
der Schneeregen	<i>deyR shney-Rey-guhn</i>	sleet
der Sprühregen	<i>deyR shpRüh-Rey-guhn</i>	drizzle
der Regenschauer	<i>die Rey-guhn-shou-uhr</i>	shower
die Sonne	<i>dee zo-nuh</i>	sun
der Sturm	<i>deyR shtuRm</i>	storm
der Wind	<i>deyR vint</i>	wind
frisch	<i>fRish</i>	chilly
der klare Himmel	<i>deyR klah-Ruh hi-muhl</i>	clear sky
leicht	<i>layHt</i>	weak
leicht bewölkt	<i>layHt buh-völk</i>	slightly cloudy

mäßig	<i>mäh-siH</i>	moderate
neblig	<i>ney-bliH</i>	foggy
stark bewölkt	<i>shtARK buh-völkT</i>	very cloudy
stark	<i>shtARK</i>	strong
wechselhaft	<i>vek-sel-hAft</i>	changeable

If It's Tuesday, March 21, It Must Be Spring!

Remember sitting in kindergarten (a German word, by the way, which means “child garden”) and learning the days of the week, the months of the year, and the seasons? If you’ve forgotten, prepare yourself: Your days of naps and crayons are about to come rushing back to you. This section focuses on precisely those elementary things: days, months, dates, and seasons.



A weather map of Europe.

What Day Is It?

You've really been enjoying the great weather on your vacation, and now you've completely lost track of time. The days melt together like a dream. One day you wake up and leave your hotel to go shopping only to find that all the stores are closed. It's early in the afternoon, the sun is shining, cars are driving up and down the avenue. Is it a holiday? You stop a passerby and ask what day it is. "Sonntag," he says. If you don't know the days of the week, you may think this *Sonntag* is some important date in German history or that he's talking about his favorite author. Of course, *Sonntag* is "Sunday," the day when, in Germany, almost all stores are closed. Study the German names for the days of the week in the following table.

Days of the Week

German	Pronunciation	English
der Tag	deyR tahk	day
die Woche	dee vo-CHuh	week
die Wochentage	dee wo-Chuhn-tah-guh	days of the week
Montag	mon-tahk	Monday
Dienstag	dee-uhnts-tahk	Tuesday
Mittwoch	mit-voCH	Wednesday
Donnerstag	do-nuhRs-tahk	Thursday
Freitag	fRay-tahk	Friday
Samstag	zAms-tahk	Saturday
Sonnabend	zon-a-bent	Saturday
Sonntag	zon-tahk	Sunday
am Wochenende	am vo-CHen-en-duh	on the weekend
Welcher Tag ist heute?	vel-Chuhr tahk ist hoi-tuh	What day is today?

To express *on* when talking about a specific day, Germans use the contraction *am*, a combination of the preposition *an* and *dem* (*dem* being the dative form of the masculine definite article, *der*).

Am Montag gehe ich in die Stadt.

Am mohn-tahk gey-uh iH in dee shtAt

On Monday I go downtown.

To express that you do something on a specific day every week, simply add an *-s*, just as you do in English, to the end of the day, only don't capitalize it unless it begins the sentence:

Ich gehe montags in die Stadt.
mohn-tahks gey-huh iH in dee shtat
 On Mondays I go downtown.

Try responding to the following questions:

1. Welcher Tag ist heute?
vel-CHuhr tahk ist hoi-tuh
 What day is today?
2. Was machen Sie montags?
vas mA-CHuhn zee mon-taks
 What do you do on Mondays?
3. Was machen Sie am Wochenende?
vas mA-CHuhn zee Am vo-Chen-en-duh
 What do you do on the weekend?
4. Welcher Tag ist morgen?
vel-CHuhr tahk ist moR-gen
 What day is tomorrow?



Achtung

According to traditional German law, all stores (with the exception of bakeries that opted to open for two hours) had to close on Sunday. Train stations could always have an open grocery store, florist, or card shop—train stations being *Touristenzone*, a tourist zone. However, Berlin and several formerly East German cities declared themselves to be *Touristenzone*.



As a Rule

Remember, the days of the week, the months of the year, and the four seasons are masculine. So when you place them after either an accusative or a dative preposition, such as *an*, *in*, and *vor*, they'll take the dative case. Although you might recognize these prepositions as taking either the accusative or the dative case, when they appear in conjunction with time, they always take the dative case.

A Mouthful of Months

Now that you know how to chat about the weather, you can ask friendly natives what the weather will be like in April, September, or even next month. The following table lists the months of the year.

Months of the Year

German	Pronunciation	English
der Monat	deyR moh-nAt	month
das Jahr	dAs yahR	year
Januar	yah-new-ahR	January
Februar	feb-Rew-ahR	February
März	mäRts	March
April	A-pRil	April
Mai	mahee	May
Juni	yew-nee	June
Juli	yew-lee	July
August	ou-goost	August
September	zep-tem-buhR	September
Oktober	ok-toh-buhR	October
November	noh-vem-buhR	November
Dezember	dey-tsem-buhR	December



Culture Shock

Every February before Lent, cities in Germany “go crazy” (these days are referred to as the *Tolle Tage* [toh-luh tah-guh], or “crazy days”). *Karneval* (kAR-ne-vAl), otherwise known down south as *Fasching* (fah-sheeng), is a major event in Catholic parts of the country. If you’re in Köln, Mainz, or München during the final days before Lent, expect parades, partying, and costumes everywhere!

To make clear that something is expected to happen in a particular month, use the contraction *im*, a combination of the accusative or dative preposition *in* + *dem* (expressing masculine dative case).

In Kiel, regnet es am stärksten im März.

in keel reyk-nuht es Am shtäRks-tuhn im mäRts

In Kiel, it rains hardest in March.

Now answer the following questions:

1. Wann ist Ihr Geburtstag?
vAn ist eeR guh-bewRts-tahk
When is your birthday?
2. Wann machen Sie in diesem Jahr Urlaub?
vAn mA-CHuhn zee in dee-zuhm yahR ewR-loup
When are you taking your vacation this year?
3. Welcher ist Ihr Lieblingsmonat?
vel-HuhR ist eeR leep-leenks-moh-nAt
What's your favorite month?
4. Wann beginnt die Schule?
van buh-gint dee shew-luh
When does school begin?

The Four Seasons

As you engage in German conversations, you'll probably want to talk about the seasons. The information you need is in the following table. Notice how logical and concise the German for "season of the year" is: *Jahres* (of the year) + *Zeit* (time).

The Seasons of the Year

German	Pronunciation	English
die Jahreszeit	dee yah-Ruhs-tsayt	season
der Winter	deyR vin-tuhR	winter
der Frühling	deyR fRüh-ling	spring
das Frühjahr	das fRüh-yahR	spring
der Sommer	deyR zo-muhR	summer
der Herbst	deyR heRpst	autumn, fall

To express *in* when you are speaking of the seasons, contract *in* + *dem* to form the German contraction *im*:

Im Winter fahre ich in die Alpen.
im vin-tuhR fah-Ruh iH in dee Al-puhn
 I'm going to the Alps in the winter.

Try to answer the following questions concerning *die Jahreszeiten*:

1. Wann schneit es viel?
van shnayt es feel
 When does it snow lots?
2. Wann fallen die Blätter von den Bäumen?
van fa-luhn dee blä-tuhr fon deyn boi-muhn
 When do the leaves fall from the trees?
3. Wann blühen die Blumen?
van blüh-uhn dee blew-muhn
 When do the flowers bloom?
4. Wann scheint die Sonne oft?
van shaynt dee zo-nuh oft
 When does the sun shine often?



Culture Shock

Overall, the weather in many German-speaking countries is moderate: Your sweat won't evaporate off your brow in summer, and in winter, your breath won't condense into ice cubes that fall clinking to the ground. If you're visiting Munich, pack a raincoat; it has more rainfall than other cities in Germany. In the mountainous regions of Switzerland and Austria, where glaciers keep the snow from melting all year round, you can get the best of both worlds—summer skiing in a T-shirt!

You Have a Date for What Date?

The Fourth of July, your own birthday, and the year you were first kissed: What do these things have in common? Well, if you want to chat about them, you have to learn a few words that deal with dates. You can start with some general terms that deal with chunks of time.

German	Pronunciation	English
eine Stunde	<i>ay-nuh shtoon-duh</i>	an hour
ein Tag	<i>ayn tahk</i>	a day
eine Woche	<i>ay-nuh vo-CHuh</i>	a week
ein Monat	<i>ayn moh-naht</i>	a month
ein Jahr	<i>ayn yahR</i>	a year
zwei Jahre	<i>tsvay yah-Ruh</i>	two years
einige Jahre	<i>ay-nee-guh yah-Ruh</i>	some years
nächstes Jahr	<i>näH-stuhs yahR</i>	next year
letztes Jahr	<i>lets-tuhs yahR</i>	last year

Making a Date

Whether you have a dentist appointment or a romantic rendezvous, you will have to express the date of the appointment differently than you do in English. Here is a formula for expressing the date correctly in German:

day of the week + *der* (ordinal) number + month + year

Montag, der zweiundzwanzigste April 2000
mohn-tahk, deyR tsvay-tsvay-stig-stuhtsvay-tau-zuhnt
 Monday, the 25th of April 2000

You write and punctuate dates in German differently than you do in English. Compare the following date (May 6, 2000) in English and in German.

May 6, 2000 (5/6/00)
der 6. Mai 2000 (6.5.00)

When writing letters in German, the place from which you are writing is given first, followed by the date. Note that the accusative *den* is used when expressing a definite time when no preposition is present.

Annapolis, den 25.4.2000

Days of the month are expressed with ordinal numbers: *der erste Januar*, *der zweite Februar*, *der dritte März*, and so on.

At first glance, the way you express the year in German looks like it could take a year to say. If you were to express the year 2000, for example, you would say:

*zweitausend
tsvay-tau-zuhnt*

To get information about the date, you should be able to ask the following questions:

*Welcher Tag ist heute?
vel-HuhR tahkist hoy-tuh
What day is today?*
*Der wievielte ist heute?
deyR vee-feel-tuhhist hoy-tuh
What's today's date?*

Someone who answers your question will probably begin his or her response with one of the following phrases:

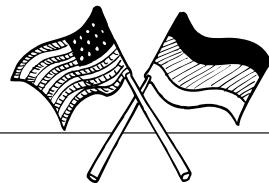
*Heute ist der ...
hoy-tuh ist dey ...
Today is ...*

Do you constantly forget important dates? Practice what you've just learned by listing the following dates in German:

Example: Weihnachten

Answer: Weihnachten ist am 25. Dezember.

1. Valentinstag
2. Dein Geburtstag
3. Der Hochzeitstag deiner Eltern
4. Neujahr



We Are Family

Any language borrows lexical material from other languages. Some languages borrow more than others and borrow more from some sources than others. While nouns make up the highest proportion of transfers followed by adjectives, along the way, English has borrowed a few grammatical words, as the borrowing of the Old Norse pronoun *they* into Old English. More modern English borrowings from Germanic languages include: from Dutch: *cookie*, *golf*, *landscape*; German: *waltz*, *yodel*; Icelandic: *geyser*, *saga*; Norse: *creek*, *muggy*, *sky*, *squall*; Swedish: *ombudsman*, *glogg*; Norwegian: *lemming*, *ski*, *slalom*.

Time Expressions

You don't always speak in terms of dates—sometimes “in a week” or “a few days ago” will do. The expressions in the following table will help you schedule events, make plans, and arrange trysts. (Some of these expressions will already be familiar from Chapter 13, “Heading for the Hotel.”)

Time Expressions

German	Pronunciation	English
in	<i>in</i>	in
vor	<i>for</i>	ago
nächste Woche	<i>näH-stuh vo-Huh</i>	next week
letzte Woche	<i>lets-tuh vo-Huh</i>	last week
der Abend	<i>deyR ah-buhnd</i>	evening
vorgestern	<i>for-ges-tuhRn</i>	day before yesterday
gestern	<i>ges-tuhRn</i>	yesterday
heute	<i>hoy-tuh</i>	today
morgen	<i>moR-guhn</i>	tomorrow
übermorgen	<i>üh-buhR-moR-guhn</i>	day after tomorrow
am nächsten Tag	<i>Am näH-stuhm tahk</i>	the next day
heute in einer Woche	<i>hoy-tuh in ay-nuh vo-Huh</i>	a week from today
heute in zwei Wochen	<i>hoy-tuh in tsvay vo-Huhn</i>	two weeks from today
der Morgen	<i>deyR moR-guhn</i>	morning
der Nachmittag	<i>deyR naH-mi-tahk</i>	afternoon

Now translate the following sentences into English.

1. Heute in einer Woche habe ich Geburstag.
2. Gestern war schönes Wetter.
3. Montags spiele ich Fußball.
4. Übermorgen reisen wir nach Deutschland.

The Least You Need to Know

- Learning a few weather expressions will help you figure out whether you should leave your umbrella in the closet.
- The days of the week in German are *Montag, Dienstag, Mittwoch, Donnerstag, Freitag, Samstag* (but *Sonnabend* in northern Germany), and *Sonntag*.
- The months of the year in German are *Januar, Februar, März, April, Mai, Juni, Juli, August, September, Oktober, November, and Dezember*.
- The four seasons are *Frühling, Sommer, Herbst, and Winter*.



Let's Sightsee

In This Chapter

- Enjoying the pleasures of sightseeing
- Expressing your attitude with modals
- Expressing your reactions to suggestions
- Making suggestions in an inclusive way

You turn on the radio in your hotel room, and a voice says that today will be a warm, sunny day. If you're in Berlin, it's the perfect weather to see *das Brandenburger Tor* (the Brandenburg Gate), which stood as a symbol for the division of Germany after the Berlin Wall was built. If you're in Köln, you can visit the famous Dom and then sit down for a few hours at an outdoor café.

You look through your guidebook to see which museums are open and where they are located. Then you take the elevator downstairs and get a map of the city from the receptionist at the front desk. Now you are ready to venture out into a German, Swiss, or Austrian city to explore the parks, the streets, or the shopping districts. After reading this chapter, not only will you be able to find your way around—you'll be well on your way to giving your opinions in German.

What Do You Want to See?

What's it going to be? The ancient rooms of a castle, the remains of the Berlin Wall, or the paintings in a museum? To express what you can see in a given place, you will need to use *man sieht* (*mAn zeet*), which means “one sees.” Remember that *sehen* is a very strong verb. Complete conjugation for the present tense is given in Chapter 9, “Click Your Heels Together and Say: There’s No Place Like Deutschland.”

The expression *man sieht* ... is quite versatile—you can use it to talk about practically anything. Practice the following expressions.

In Berlin sieht man das Brandenburger Tor.

in beR-leen zeet mAn dAs bRAAn-den-booR-guhR toR

In Berlin you see the Brandenburg Gate.

Im Zirkus sieht man Elefanten.

im tsiR-koos zeet mAn ey-ley-fAn-tuhn

In the circus you see elephants.

Im Kino sieht man einen Film.

im kee-no zeet mAn ay-nuhn film

In the cinema you see a movie.



As a Rule

The basic word order rule for German can be expressed by the pseudo-mathematical expression XV_2 , which translates to the verb always coming in the second position in the sentence (unless you’re commanding or posing a yes/no question). X is the subject, an adverb, or a prepositional phrase, as in *Morgen gehe ich ins Kino*. In other words, if the subject does not begin the sentence, the subject will follow the verb. Either way, you end up with the verb in the second position!

Use the phrase *man sieht* to complete the following items. Because you’ll be discussing “where” something is seen and *in* is either an accusative or dative preposition (depending on whether or not there is motion), you’ll be using the dative case and contractions for ease. Remember that *der* and *das* in the dative become *dem*, contracting with the preposition *in* to become *im*. The feminine *die* becomes *der* in the dative.

Example: das Aquarium/die Fische (the aquarium/the fish)

Answer: Im Aquarium sieht man die Fische.

1. der Nachtclub/eine Vorstellung (the nightclub/the show)
2. die Kathedrale/die Glasmalerei (the cathedral/the stained glass)
3. das Schloß/die Wandteppiche (the castle/the tapestries)
4. der Zoo/die Tiere (the zoo/the animals)
5. das Museum/die Bilder und Skulpturen (the museum/the paintings and sculptures)
6. das Kino/der Film
7. die Disco/die Tänzer
8. die Bibliothek/alte Bücher

May, Must, Can—What Kind of Mode Are You In?

To make suggestions in German, you will need to use *modal verbs*, or simply verbs used with other verbs. In the sentence *Wir müssen nach Hause gehen*, for example, the modal verb *müssen* modifies the act of the main verb, *gehen*, expressing the attitude of the speaker—the equivalent of “must.” Adding a modal to another verb is like having kids: Life is never the same again. These little guys modify the action of the main verb (just like junior turns everything upside down) and significantly alter the meanings of sentences. For example, “We must go home” is much different from “We go home.”

When a modal is used with another verb, the modal alters or modifies the other verb’s meaning. The six principal modal auxiliary verbs in German and what they express are as follows:

- *sollen* (zo-luhn), ought to: obligation, expectation
- *müssen* (mü-suhn), to have to: necessity, probability
- *dürfen* (dÜR-fuhn), to be allowed to: permission, politeness
- *können* (kö-nuhn), to be able to: ability, possibility
- *wollen* (vo-luhn), to want to: wish, desire, intention
- *mögen* (möh-guhn), to like (something): liking, wish



What's What?

Modal verb A verb used with another verb to signal contrasts in speaker attitude. The six principal modal verbs in German are *sollen*, *müssen*, *dürfen*, *können*, *wollen*, and *mögen*.

Because the present tense of modal auxiliary verbs is irregular, the best thing for you to do is to grit your teeth and memorize the conjugations (see the following six tables). The original present-tense forms fell into disuse, and the original strong (vowel-changing) past tense took on present meaning. Thus, all modals except *sollen* take a stem change in the singular. As you'll see, the first-person and third-person singular have the same form. Again, this phenomenon is related to the usage of the past-tense form. Simply put, learn the infinitive and the singular stem, and you'll have it made!

Conjugation of a Modal Auxiliary Verb: *sollen*

Person	Singular	English	Plural	English
First	ich soll <i>iH zol</i>	I ought to	wir sollen <i>veeR zo-luhn</i>	we ought to
Second	du sollst <i>dew zolst</i>	you ought to	ihr sollt <i>eeR zolt</i>	
(Formal)	Sie sollen <i>zee zo-luhn</i>		Sie sollen <i>zee zo-luhn</i>	
Third	er, sie, es soll <i>eR, zee, es zol</i>	he, she, it ought to	sie sollen <i>zee zo-luhn</i>	they ought to

Did you notice that the first- and third-person singular are identical? These are also the only forms with modals that don't take the regular ending. And did you pick up on how the first-person and third-person plural exactly resemble the infinitive?

Conjugation of a Modal Auxiliary Verb: *mögen*

Person	Singular	English	Plural	English
First	ich mag <i>iH mahk</i>	I like	wir mögen <i>veeR möh-guhn</i>	we like to
Second	du magst <i>dew mahkst</i>	you like	ihr mögt <i>eeR möhkt</i>	you like to
(Formal)	Sie mögen <i>zee möh-guhn</i>		Sie mögen <i>zee möh-guhn</i>	
Third	er, sie, es mag <i>eR, zee, es mahk</i>	he, she, it likes	sie mögen <i>zee möh-guhn</i>	they like to

Conjugation of a Modal Auxiliary Verb: dürfen

Person	Singular	English	Plural	English
First	ich darf <i>iH dARf</i>	I am allowed to	wir dürfen <i>veeR düR-fuhn</i>	we are allowed to
Second	du darfst <i>dew dARfst</i>	you are allowed to	ihr dürft <i>eeR düRft</i>	you are allowed to
(Formal)	Sie dürfen <i>zee düR-fuhn</i>		Sie dürfen <i>zee düR-fuhn</i>	
Third	er, sie, es darf <i>er, zee, es dARf</i>	he, she, it is allowed to	sie dürfen <i>zee düR-fuhn</i>	they are allowed to

Conjugation of a Modal Auxiliary Verb: können

Person	Singular	English	Plural	English
First	ich kann <i>iH kAn</i>	I am able to	wir können <i>veeR kö-nuhn</i>	we are able to
Second	du kannst <i>dew kAnst</i>	you are able to	ihr könnt <i>eeR könt</i>	you are able to
(Formal)	Sie können <i>zee kö-nuhn</i>		Sie können <i>zee kö-nuhn</i>	
Third	er, sie, es kann <i>er, zee, es kAn</i>	he, she, it is able to	sie können <i>zee kö-khn</i>	they are able to

Conjugation of a Modal Auxiliary Verb: müssen

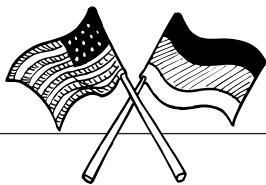
Person	Singular	English	Plural	English
First	ich muß <i>iH moos</i>	I have to	wir müssen <i>veeR mü-suhn</i>	we have to
Second	du mußt <i>dew moost</i>	you have to	ihr müßt <i>eeR müst</i>	you have to
(Formal)	Sie müssen <i>zee mü-suhn</i>		Sie müssen <i>zee mü-suhn</i>	
Third	er, sie, es muß <i>er, zee, es moos</i>	he, she, it has to	sie müssen <i>zee mü-suhn</i>	they have to

Conjugation of a Modal Auxiliary Verb: wollen

Person	Singular	English	Plural	English
First	ich will <i>iH vil</i>	I want to	wir wollen <i>veeR vo-luhn</i>	we want to
Second	du willst <i>dew vilst</i>	you want to	ihr wollt <i>eeR volt</i>	you want to
(Formal)	Sie wollen <i>zee vo-luhn</i>		Sie wollen <i>zee vo-luhn</i>	
Third	er, sie, es will <i>er, zee, es vil</i>	he, she, it wants to	sie wollen <i>zee vo-luhn</i>	they want to

The Power of Suggestion

Imagine that you are in a group traveling through Germany. A friend of yours who visited Hamburg a year ago has told you to be sure to visit the St. Pauli's Fischmarkt after going out dancing and reveling on a Saturday night. She says that people who don't feel like sleeping gather there in the early hours of Sunday morning with the market workers and eat breakfast. You don't know how others in your group would feel about going to St. Pauli's seafood fest, but you do know that there's only one way to find out: by suggesting it! To make suggestions in German, use the modals *sollen*, *dürfen*, *können*, or *wollen* plus the infinitive.



We Are Family

While both the *can* of English and the *können* of German may be used in the contemporary sense of "receive permission," did you know that the Old English *cunnan* meant "know"? This meaning was retained until the sixteenth or seventeenth centuries (Early Modern English) and is still retained in German: *Ich kann Deutsch*, "I know German."

If your suggestions don't seem to have the desired effect, use the modal *müssen* to express "must." Use *mögen* to express the things you like to do (on a regular basis). Note that the modal is conjugated and is in the second position in the sentence (but you knew that!) and that the verb carrying the meaning is placed in infinitive form at the end of the sentence. Okay, so maybe you didn't know that word order rule just yet. But it can be easily explained: You're inflecting the modal to show agreement with the subject (person, number), and the accompanying verb is referred to as a *dependent infinitive*—unvarying in form and always sent to the end of the sentence. After all, why stack verbs if you can separate them?

Remember that five out of the six modal auxiliary verbs (*dürfen*, *können*, *mögen*, *müssen*, and *wollen*) change their stem vowel in the first-, second-, and third-person singular forms.

sollen + gehen

German	Pronunciation	English
Sollen wir zum Fischmarkt gehen?	<i>zo-luhn veeR tsoom fish-mARkt gey-huhn</i>	Should we go to the fish market?
Wir sollen zum Fischmarkt gehen.	<i>veeR zo-luhn tsoom fish-mARkt gey-huhn</i>	We should go to the fish market.

wollen + gehen

German	Pronunciation	English
Wollt ihr zum Fischmarkt gehen?	<i>volt eeR tsoom fish-mARkt gey-huhn</i>	Do you want to go to the fish market?
Wir wollen zum Fischmarkt gehen.	<i>veeR vo-luhn tsoom fish-mARkt gey-huhn</i>	We want to go to the fish market.

mögen + gehen

German	Pronunciation	English
Magst du zum Fischmarkt gehen?	<i>mahkst dew tsoom fish-mARkt gey-huhn</i>	Do you like to go to the fish market?
Ich mag zum Fischmarkt gehen.	<i>iH mahk tsoom fish-mARkt gey-huhn</i>	I like to go to the fish market.

müssen + gehen

German	Pronunciation	English
Müssen sie zum Fischmarkt gehen?	<i>mü-suhn zee tsoom fish-mARkt gey-hun</i>	Must they go to the fish market?
Sie müssen zum Fischmarkt gehen.	<i>zee mü-suhn tsoom fish-mARkt gey-huhn</i>	They must go to the fish market.

dürfen + gehen

German	Pronunciation	English
Darf ich zum Fischmarkt gehen?	<i>dARf iH tsoom</i> <i>fish-mARkt gey-huhn</i>	Am I allowed to go to the fish market?
Ich darf zum Fischmarkt gehen.	<i>iH dARf tsoom</i> <i>fish-mARkt gey-huhn</i>	I'm allowed to go to the fish market.

können + gehen

German	Pronunciation	English
Können wir nach Hause gehen?	<i>kö-nuhn veeR nahCH</i> <i>hou-suh gey-huhn</i>	Can we go home?
Wir können nach Hause gehen.	<i>veeR kö-nuhn nahCH</i> <i>hou-suh gey-huhn</i>	We can go home.

Making Suggestions

It's a gorgeous summer day, and the living is easy. Suggest five things you and your group of travelers can do together and express each suggestion in three different ways.

Try your hand at inserting the correct form of the modal (and sending the dependent infinitive to the end) in the following sentences:

1. Ich komme später. (können)
2. Was machst du? (wollen)
3. Christina lernt viel. (müssen)
4. Dieser Film ist sehr gut. (sollen)
5. Wolfram kommt nicht mit. (dürfen)

Responding to Suggestions

You don't want to be someone who is always telling everyone else what you should do, what you must do, and what you can do all the time, do you? You'll probably want to give other people a chance to make suggestions, and when they do, you'll want to respond. In the following sections you'll learn some common ways of responding to suggestions.

Just Say Yes, No, Absolutely Not

If you're irritated with whomever is making a given suggestion, by all means answer with a brusque "yes" or "no." Otherwise, you may want to take a somewhat gentler approach and decline a suggestion with, "Yes, but ...," or "No, because ..."

Ja, es interessiert mich ... (sehr)
yah, es in-tuh-Re-seeRt miH (zeeR)
 Yes, I'm (very) interested ...

Nein, es interessiert mich (überhaupt) nicht ...
nayn, es in-tuh-Re-seeRt miH (üh-buhR-houpt) niHt
 No, I'm not (at all) interested ...

Ja, ich bin daran interessiert.
yah, ich bin dah-RAn in-tuh-Re-seeRt
 Yes, I'm interested in that.

Nein, ich bin nicht daran interessiert.
nayn, iH bin niHt dah-RAn in-tuh-Re-seeRt
 No, I'm not interested in that.

Das macht mir Spaß.
das maCHt meeR shpahs
 That's fun.

Ich möchte lieber ...
iH möCH-tuh lee-buhr ...
 I would rather...



Achtung

Don't confuse the first- and third-person singular form of the modal *wollen* ("want to") with the English look-alike "will." *Beka will eine Radtour machen* means "Beka wants to go on a bike ride"—not that she will go on one!

To express boredom, dislike, or disgust say:

German	Pronunciation	English
Ich mag ... nicht.	<i>iH mahk ... niHt</i>	I don't like ...
Ich habe keine Lust.	<i>iH hah-buh kay-nuh loost</i>	I don't feel like it.
Ich verabschäue ...	<i>iH feR-ap-shoy-uh</i>	I abominate ...
Es ist langweilig.	<i>es ist lAnk-vay-liH</i>	It's boring.
Das ist grauenhaft.	<i>das ist gRou-en-hAft</i>	That is horrible.



As a Rule

When used in the sense of “to like,” *mögen* usually stands by itself, without a dependent infinitive. *Ich mag den Film nicht. Magst du Schokolade?* *Möchte* is a different form of the modal *mögen*. The meaning of *mögen* is “to like”; the meaning of *möchte* is “would like (to).” *Ich möchte Musik hören*, “I would like to listen to music.”

What Do You Think?

When someone suggests that the two of you go to the opera, and the suggestion appeals to you, answer with, “*Ich finde die Oper toll.*” If you begin your answers with *Ich finde*, you can be pretty much assured that you’re going to be saying something that makes sense. Here are some alternative ways to show your enthusiasm:

Ich liebe die Oper!
iH lee-buh dee o-puhR
I love opera!

Ich mag die Oper.
iH mahk dee oh-puhR
I like opera.

To express joy, excitement, or anticipation at doing something, give your positive opinion by saying:

Es ist ...
es ist
It is ...

Das ist ...
dAs ist
That is ...

Ich finde es ...
iH fin-duh es
I find it ...

Here are some common German superlatives:

German	Pronunciation	English
fantastisch!	fAn-tAs-tish	fantastic!
schön!	shöhn	beautiful!
wunderschön!	voon-deR-shöhn	wonderful!
super!	zew-puhR	super!
unglaublich!	oon-glooup-liH	unbelievable!
sensationell!	zen-zah-tseeon-el	sensational!

More Suggestions

Once again, it's time to put what you know to work. Imagine that you are planning a trip with a close friend. Your friend is a bit of a dreamer and keeps suggesting a million different things for the two of you to do. Practice letting your friend down gently by giving an affirmative answer and then a negative answer to his or her suggestions.

Example: Laß uns nach Berlin reisen!

Answer: Super! Ich mag Berlin.

Nein, ich will nicht nach Berlin reisen.

1. Laß uns eine Kirche besichtigen!
2. Laß uns eine Ausstellung sehen!
3. Laß uns nach Europa reisen!
4. Laß uns Bilder anschauen!
5. Laß uns in die Oper gehen!
6. Laß uns Norwegisch lernen!
7. Laß uns mit der U-bahn fahren!
8. Laß uns ein Auto mieten!

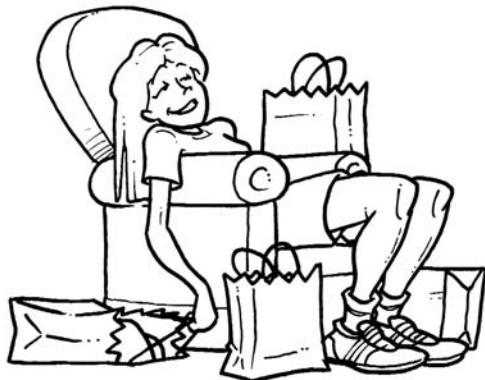


Culture Shock

The German language is rich in slang and colloquialisms. The many ways of saying "great" or "cool" include *klasse*, *prima*, *spitze*, *toll*, *geil*, *riesig* (literally, "gigantic"), and *elefantös*. (Turn elephant into an adjective and this is what you get!)

The Least You Need to Know

- You can get around a city by knowing a few basic German words for sightseeing attractions and the phrases that describe what you plan to do there.
- After you've memorized the irregular conjugation of the six modal auxiliary verbs (*sollen*, *müssen*, *dürfen*, *können*, *wollen*, and *mögen*), making suggestions is easy: Use the modal auxiliary verb + the dependent infinitive at the end of the sentence.
- You can begin your response to virtually any suggestion with the expression *Ich finde es ...*
- To make a suggestion, use the expression *Lass uns* and finish it with an infinitive, as in *Lass uns nach München fahren*.



Shop Till You Drop

In This Chapter

- Stores and what they sell
- Clothing, colors, sizes, materials, and designs
- Accusative and dative personal pronouns
- Demonstrative adjectives: this, that, these, and those

Once you've seen the sights and been to the restaurants, you may want to spend a day or two shopping. Do you like to buy souvenirs for your friends? Do you enjoy shopping for yourself, or do you really dislike trying to locate the right size, color, material, and design in a jungle of hangers, racks, salespeople, and merchandise? Whether you love it or hate it, this chapter will help you prepare to shop.

Store-Bought Pleasures

One of the least expensive (and, for some, most enjoyable) ways to shop is with your eyes. The following table will start you on your way to guilt-free browsing in your favorite German stores (*die Geschäfte*).

Stores

Store	What You Can Buy There
das Bekleidungsgeschäft (dAs <i>be-klay-doонks-guh-shäft</i>) clothing store	die Bekleidung, f., (<i>dee buh-klay-doong</i>): clothes
das Blumengeschäft (dAs <i>blew-muhn-guh-shäft</i>) florist	die Blumen, f., (<i>dee blew-muhn</i>): flowers
das Lederwarengeschäft (dAs <i>ley-deR-vah-Ren-guh-shäft</i>) leather goods store	die Gürtel, m., (<i>dee güR-tuhl</i>), die Lederjacken, f., (<i>dee ley-deR-yA-kuhn</i>), die Portemonnaies, n., (<i>dee poRt-mo-nayz</i>): belts, leather jackets, wallets
das Musikgeschäft (dAs <i>mew-zik-guh-shäft</i>) music store	die CDs, f., (<i>dee tse-des</i>), die Kassetten, f., (<i>dee kA-se-tuhn</i>): CDs, tapes
das Sportgeschäft (dAs <i>shpoRt-guh-shäft</i>) sport shop	die Sportbekleidung, f., (<i>dee shpoRt-buh-klay-doong</i>), die Turnschuhe, m., (<i>dee tooRn-shew-huh</i>), die Sportgeräte, n., (<i>dee shpoRt-guh-Räh-tuh</i>): sports clothing, sneakers, sports equipment
der Geschenkartikelladen (deyR <i>guh-shenk-AR-ti-kuhl-lah-duhn</i>) gift shop	die Miniaturdenkmäler, n., (<i>dee mee-nee-ah-tooR-denk-mäh-luhR</i>): die Souvenirs, n., die T-shirts, n., (<i>dee tee-shiRts</i>), die Stadtpläne, m., (<i>dee shtAt-pläh-nuh</i>): miniature monuments, souvenirs, shirts, maps
der Kiosk (deyR <i>kee-osk</i>) newsstand	die Zeitungen, f., (<i>dee tsay-toon-guhn</i>), die Zeitschriften, f., (<i>dee tsayt-shRif-tuhn</i>): newspapers, magazines
der Tabakladen (deyR <i>tA-bAk-lah-duhn</i>) tobacconist	die Zigaretten, f., (<i>dee tsee-gah-Re-tuhn</i>), die Zigarren, f., (<i>dee tsee-gA-Ruhn</i>), die Feuerzeuge, n., (<i>dee foy-uhR-tsoy-guh</i>): cigarettes, cigars, lighters
die Apotheke (dee <i>A-po-tey-kuh</i>) pharmacy	die Medikamente, n., (<i>dee meh-dih-kah-men-tuh</i>): medicine
die Buchhandlung (dee <i>bewCH-hAnt-loong</i>) bookstore	die Bücher, n., (<i>dee bü-CHuhR</i>): books
die Drogerie (dee <i>dRoh-guh-Ree</i>) drug store	die Schönheitsartikel, m., (<i>dee schön-hayts-Ar-tih-kuhl</i>): beauty articles
die Papierwarenhandlung (dee <i>pah-peeR-wah-Ruhn-hAn-dloong</i>) stationery store	die Stifte, m., (<i>dee shtif-tuh</i>), die Schreibwaren, f., (<i>dee shRayp-vah-Ruhn</i>): pens, stationery

Store	What You Can Buy There
die Parfümerie (dee pAR-fü-muh-Ree) perfume store	das Parfüm, (<i>dAs paR-füm</i>): perfume
das Schmuckgeschäft (dAs shmoock-guh-shäft) jewelry store	der Schmuck (<i>deyR shmook</i>): jewelry

The Clothes Make the Mann

If you happen to visit Münich or Düsseldorf, you may want to check out the clothing stores. The vocabulary in the following table will help you purchase something in the latest fashion, or *in der neusten Mode* (*in deyR noy-stuhn moh-duh*).

Clothing

German	Pronunciation	English
das Hemd	<i>dAs hemt</i>	shirt
die Bluse	<i>dee blew-zuh</i>	blouse
das Kleid	<i>dAs klayt</i>	dress
das T-shirt	<i>dAs tee-shiRt</i>	T-shirt
der Anzug	<i>deyR An-tsewk</i>	suit
der Badeanzug	<i>deyR bah-duh-An-tsewk</i>	bathing suit
der Büstenhalter	<i>deyR bü-stuhn-hAl-tuhR</i>	bra
der Gürtel	<i>deyR güR-tuhl</i>	belt
der Hut	<i>deyR hewt</i>	hat
der Pullover	<i>deyR pool-oh-vuhR</i>	pullover
der Regenmantel	<i>deyR Rey-guhn-mAn-tuhl</i>	raincoat
der Rock	<i>deyR Rok</i>	skirt
der Schal	<i>deyR shahl</i>	scarf
der Schlafanzug	<i>deyR shlahf-An-tsook</i>	pajamas
die Handschuhe	<i>dee hAnt-schew-huh</i>	gloves
die Hose	<i>dee hoh-zuh</i>	pair of pants
die Jacke	<i>dee yA-kuh</i>	jacket
die Jeans	<i>dee jeens</i>	jeans
die Krawatte	<i>dee kRah-vA-tuh</i>	necktie
der Mantel	<i>deyR mAn-tuhl</i>	coat

continues

Clothing (continued)

German	Pronunciation	English
der Schlips	<i>deyR schlips</i>	necktie
die Shorts	<i>dee shoRts</i>	shorts
die Mütze	<i>dee mü-tsuh</i>	cap
das Sakkō	<i>das za-ko</i>	sports jacket
die Schuhe	<i>dee shew-huh</i>	shoes
die Socken (pl.)	<i>dee zo-kuhn</i>	socks
die Strumpfhose	<i>dee shtRoompf-hoh-zuh</i>	tights
die Turnschuhe	<i>dee tooRn-shew-uh</i>	sneakers
die Tennisschuhe	<i>dee te-nis-shew-uh</i>	tennis shoes
die Unterhose	<i>dee oon-tuhR-hoh-zuh</i>	underpants

Wear It Well

Now that you've bought it, you can finally wear it. The following table helps you express the concept of wearing clothing with the very strong verb *tragen* (*tRah-guhn*) "to wear" or "to carry."

The Verb *tragen*

Person	Singular	English	Plural	English
First	ich trage <i>iH tRah-guh</i>	I wear	wir tragen <i>veeR tRah-guhn</i>	we wear
Second	du trägst <i>dew tRähkst</i>	you wear	ihr tragt <i>eeR tRahkt</i>	you wear
(Formal)	Sie tragen <i>zee tRah-guhn</i>		Sie tragen <i>zee tRah-guhn</i>	
Third	er, sie, es trägt <i>eR, zee, es tRäkt</i>	he, she, it wears	sie tragen <i>zee tRah-guhn</i>	they wear

What do you normally wear on your feet before you put on your shoes? What do you normally wear on your head when it's cold out? See whether you can fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verb *tragen* and with the correct vocabulary.

Example: Zum Sport _____ ich _____.

Answer: Zum Sport trage ich Turnschuhe.

1. Unter unseren Schuhen _____ wir _____.

2. Wenn ich schlafe, _____ ich einen _____.
3. Unter deiner Hose _____ du eine _____.
4. Wenn es regnet, _____ ich einen _____.
5. Im Winter _____ ihr warme _____.
6. Wenn man in die Oper geht, _____ man einen _____ mit einem _____.
7. Im Sommer _____ viele Leute _____ und _____.

Colors

Certain colors are associated with certain moods or states of being. Don't be too quick to use the colors in the following table figuratively—at least not in the same way you would use them in English. *Er ist blau* (*eR ist blou*), which translates into "he is blue" does not mean "he is sad." Germans use this phrase to indicate that someone has had too much too drink. However you use them, the colors (*die Farben*) in the following table will help you describe people, places, and things.

Colors

German	Pronunciation	English
beige	beyj	beige
blau	blou	blue
braun	bRoun	brown
gelb	gelp	yellow
grau	gRou	gray
grün	gRün	green
lila	lee-lah	purple
orange	oR-An-juh	orange
rosa	Roh-zah	pink
rot	Rot	red
schwarz	shvaRts	black
weiß	vays	white

To describe any color as light, simply add the word *hell* (*hel*) as a prefix to the color to form a compound adjective:

hellrot	hellgrün	hellblau
<i>hel-Rot</i>	<i>hel-gRin</i>	<i>hel-blou</i>
light red	light green	light blue

To describe a color as dark, add the word *dunkel* (*doon-kuhl*) as a prefix to the color to form a compound adjective:

dunkelrot	dunkelgrün	dunkelblau
<i>doon-kuhl-Rot</i>	<i>doon-kuhl-gRün</i>	<i>doon-kuhl-blou</i>
dark red	dark green	dark blue

The following table offers some additional adjectives that are useful when describing clothing.

Fashionable Adjectives

German	Pronunciation	English
breit	<i>brayt</i>	wide
eng	<i>eng</i>	narrow
gemustert	<i>guh-moos-tuhRt</i>	patterned
gepunktet	<i>guh-poونk-tuhت</i>	polka-dotted
gestreift	<i>guh-shtRayft</i>	striped
kariert	<i>kah-ReeRt</i>	plaid
modisch	<i>mo-dish</i>	fashionable

To express need or desire, you can use *möchten*, which—although it is the subjunctive form of the modal verb *mögen*—is often used as a present-tense verb on its own. *Ich möchte* is the equivalent of “I would like.” Don’t confuse it with *mögen*, which means “to like (something).” You can make a big mistake by confusing the two. If you’re in a clothing store and you say, “*Ich möchte Kleider*” (“I would like some dresses”) instead of “*Ich mag Kleider*” (“I like dresses”), you might end up with an armful of dresses and be expected to try them on, whether you’re in the mood for trying on dresses or not. Now try to translate the following sentences into German. Remember that colors and patterns are adjectives, so they will be declined according to what type of word precedes the adjective and the following noun (see Chapter 11, “I’d Like to Get to Know You”). Also, the item that you “like” functions as the direct object in the sentence and thus takes the accusative case.

Example: I’d like a green dress.

Answer: Ich möchte ein grünes Kleid.

1. I’d like a light red skirt.
2. I’d like a dark blue suit.

3. I'd like a light yellow hat.
4. I'd like a gray jacket.
5. I'd like a polka-dotted tie.
6. I'd like a plaid pair of pants.
7. I'd like a fashionable bathing suit.
8. I'd like a striped shirt.

Material Preferences

Some people can't tolerate polyester, others find silk pretentious, and others won't wear anything that isn't at least 95 percent cotton. When you do finally give in to your sartorial cravings and purchase some clothes, make it easier on yourself and on the salesperson assisting you: explain your material preferences. The following table will help you pick the material (*die Materialien*) you prefer when you shop.

Materials

German	Pronunciation	English
das Leder	<i>dAs ley-deR</i>	leather
das Leinen	<i>dAs lay-nuhn</i>	linen
das Nylon	<i>dAs nay-lon</i>	nylon
das Polyester	<i>dAs poh-lee-es-tuhR</i>	polyester
das Wildleder	<i>dAs vilt-ley-deR</i>	suede
der Flanell	<i>deyR flah-nel</i>	flannel
der Kaschmir	<i>deyR kAsh-meeR</i>	cashmere
der Kord	<i>deyR koRt</i>	corduroy
die Baumwolle	<i>dee boum-wo-luh</i>	cotton
die Seide	<i>dee zay-duh</i>	silk
die Wolle	<i>dee vo-luh</i>	wool

To explain that you want something made out of a certain material, use the dative preposition *aus* followed by only the noun.

Ich möchte ein Kleid aus Seide.

iH möH-tuh ayn klayt ous zay-duh

I'd like a silk dress.

What's the Object?

In Chapter 8, “Fitting Form with Function,” you learned about the accusative (direct object) case and the dative (indirect object) case relative to nouns. Now you’re going to see how these cases affect pronouns.



What's What?

Indirect object The person, animal, or other animate object to whom/which something is given or for whom something is done. The dative case marks the indirect object in German.

If a friend tells you that she loves her favorite pair of shoes and that she wears her favorite pair of shoes all the time and that she takes off her favorite pair of shoes only when she gets blisters from dancing too much, you would probably want to take off one of *your* shoes and hit her over the head with it. She could be less long-winded if she stopped repeating *favorite pair of shoes* (a direct object noun in English) and replaced it with *them* (a direct object pronoun in English). In German the direct object is in the accusative case and is often called the accusative object. The animate object who is receiving the action of the verb is the indirect object and is marked in the dative case in German, also called the dative object. If you’ve forgotten what you learned about cases in Chapter 8, this summary should refresh your memory.

Nouns or pronouns in the accusative case answer the question of whom or what the subject is acting on and can refer to people, places, things, or ideas.

	Nominative (Subj.)	Verb	Accusative (Direct Obj.)
With noun	Ich (I)	trage (wear)	meine Lieblingsschuhe (my favorite shoes)
With pronoun	Ich (I)	trage (wear)	sie (them)
With noun	Sie (they)	lieben (love)	das Leben (life)
With pronoun	Sie (they)	lieben (love)	es (it)

Indirect object nouns or pronouns (in German, nouns or pronouns in the dative case) answer the question of to whom or to what the action of the verb is being directed.

	Nominative (Subj.)	Verb	Dative (Indirect Obj.)	Accusative (Direct Obj.)
With noun	Ich (I)	kaufe (buy)	meinem Freund (my friend)	eine Mütze. (a cap)
With pronoun	Ich (I)	kaufe (buy)	ihm (him)	eine Mütze. (a cap)
With noun	Sie (she)	gibt (gives)	ihrer Schwester (her sister)	ein Geschenk. (a gift)
With pronoun	Sie (she)	gibt (gives)	ihr (her sister)	ein Geschenk. (a gift)

The English language uses direct and indirect pronouns to avoid repeating the same nouns over and over again. In German, direct object pronouns are in the accusative case, and indirect object pronouns are in the dative case. The following table provides a comprehensive chart of accusative personal pronouns in German. We've already used this paradigm to show subject (personal) pronouns and to conjugate verbs.

Accusative Personal Pronouns (Object Pronouns)

	Singular	English	Plural	English
First	mich (<i>miH</i>)	me	uns (<i>oonz</i>)	us
Second (Formal)	dich (<i>diH</i>) Sie (<i>zee</i>)	you you	euch (<i>oyH</i>)	you
Third	ihn (<i>een</i>) sie (<i>zee</i>) es (<i>es</i>)	him her it	sie (<i>zee</i>)	them

The accusative case of the direct object should be easy enough to learn if you remember that the German *mich* has the same initial sounds as the English “me,” (the object of a sentence or the object of a prepositional phrase). Then *dich* rhymes with *mich* but borrows the *d* sound from *du*. As far as third-person singular masculine is concerned, it ends in an *n*, just like the accusative masculine *den* or *einen*. The German *uns* closely resembles the English “us.”

Try your hand at replacing the accusative noun phrases, indicated in boldface, with the appropriate accusative personal pronouns:

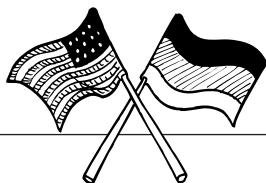
1. Ich **trage** eine enge Hose.
2. Du **trägst** einen schönen Hut.
3. Kerstin **trägt** ein breites Hemd.
4. Frank **trägt** weiße Tennisschuhe.

Es is used as a direct object pronoun for neuter nouns, most of which are things. There are, however, a few exceptions. *Es* means “her,” for example, in the sentence *Ich liebe es*, when *es* refers to *das Mädchen*.

Because English relies on prepositions to express the function of someone receiving something (indirect object) and German relies on the dative case to indicate this function, we've included that little English helper preposition for dative personal pronouns in the following table.

Dative Personal Pronouns (Indirect Object Pronouns)

	Singular	English	Plural	English
First	mir (<i>meeR</i>)	(to) me	uns (<i>oonz</i>)	(to) us
Second (Formal)	dir (<i>diH</i>) Ihnen (<i>ee-nuhn</i>)	(to) you	euch (<i>oyH</i>)	(to) you
Third	ihm (<i>eem</i>) ihr (<i>eeR</i>) ihm (<i>eem</i>)	(to) him (to) her (to) it	ihnen (<i>ee-nuhn</i>)	(to) them



We Are Family

The similarities between *uns* versus “us” and *fünf* versus “five” are more than coincidental. Old English (as well as Old Saxon and Old Frisian) underwent a sound change that resulted in the loss of nasals, like *n* before fricative sounds such as *f* and *s*. Can you guess what *Gans* means? “Goose!”

Egads! How to assimilate this information? Again, recall the dative definite articles: masculine = *dem*, feminine = *der*, neuter = *dem*, plural = *den*. You'll notice that the ends of *ihm*, *ihr*, *ihm*, and *ihnen* share some similarities in their final sounds. Latch on to your English “him” and “her” for another reminder.

And now for a little practice substituting the economical dative personal pronouns for the long-winded indirect object noun phrases, indicated in boldface:

1. Ich gebe meinen lieben Studenten Schokolade.
2. Bernadette schenkt ihrer toleranten Schwester Blumen.
3. Thomas dankt seinem nervösen Freund für den Kaffee.
4. Wir geben dem freundlichen Kind eine Olive.



As a Rule

When dealing with neuter nouns ending in *-chen* or *-lein*, you can use either the pronoun *es* (following the grammatical gender) or the pronoun *er* or *sie*, depending on the logical gender of the noun.

- Was mach Ihr Söhnchen?
- Es (or er) geht ...
- Das Mädchen will nicht mehr singen.
- Es (or Sie) ist müde.

Position of Object Pronouns

In swank social circles, position is everything. It's the same with direct and indirect objects in German. If we're dealing with noun phrases, the indirect (dative) object precedes the direct object (accusative):

Ich schreibe dem Vater eine Postkarte.
iH shRay-buh deym fah-tuhR ay-nuh post-kAR-tuh
 I write a postcard to the father.

However, if the direct object of a sentence is a pronoun, it will precede the indirect object:

Ich schreibe sie ihm. Ich schreibe sie dem
 Vater.
*iH shRay-buh zee eem iH shRay-buh zee deym
 fah-tuhR*
 I write it to him. I write it to the father.

Note that *eine Postkarte* is replaced with the feminine pronoun *sie*, not with the ubiquitous neuter English "it" equivalent (*es*).



Achtung

Remember, *ihn* and *ihm* are used for nouns with the masculine noun marker *der*; *sie* and *ihr* are used for nouns with the feminine noun marker *die*; and *es* and *ihm* are used for nouns with the neuter noun marker *das*. For masculine, feminine, and neuter nouns with the plural noun marker *die*, use *sie* for direct object pronouns and *ihnen* for indirect object pronouns.

Us, You, and Them: Using Direct Object Pronouns

A German friend invites you to accompany her shopping in Düsseldorf. She won't buy anything unless she receives an affirmative second opinion. Use direct object pronouns to answer the questions she asks you in the dressing room.

Example:

Magst du die graue Bluse?

Ja, ich mag sie.

Nein, ich mag sie nicht.

1. Magst du den schwarzen Schal
2. Magst du die dunkelgrünen Schuhe
3. Magst du die hellrote Hose
4. Magst du das blaue Hemd

To Us, to You, to Them: Using Indirect Object Pronouns

When she finishes shopping for herself, your friend wants to buy a few presents for certain members of her family. Unfortunately, she can't think of anything interesting to buy them. Offer her suggestions (in the form of commands), replacing the indirect object (dative noun phrase) with a pronoun and expressing the direct object in the accusative case according to the following example. Remember that *ein* in the accusative masculine becomes *einen*.

Example:

Hans/ ein Hut (m., der Hut) Schenke ihm einen Hut.

1. die Eltern/ ein Schal (m., der Schal)
2. die Schwester/ ein Kleid (n., das Kleid)
3. der Bruder/ eine kurze Hose (f., die kurze Hose)
4. die Oma/ eine Strumpfhose (f., die Strumpfhose)

Now rewrite these four commands using *only* pronouns. Because the direct object will be a pronoun, the direct object pronoun will precede the indirect object.

Example:

Schenke ihm einen Hut. → Schenke ihn ihm.

Asking for Something

Here are some phrases to help you through the most common in-store shopping situations:

Kann ich Ihnen helfen?

kAn iH ee-nuhn hel-fuhn

May I help you?

Was wünschen Sie?

vAs vün-shuhn zee

What would you like?

Nein danke, ich schaue mich nur um.

nayn dAn-kuh, iH shou-uh miH nooR oom

No, thank you, I am (just) looking.

Ja, ich würde gern ... sehen.

yah, iH vüR-duh geRn ... sey-huhn

Yes, I would like to see

Ich suche

iH zew-Chuh ...

I'm looking for

Haben sie einen Schlußverkauf?

hah-buhn zee ay-nuhn shloos-veR-kouf

Do you have an end-of-season sale?

I'll Take This, That, One of These, and Some of Those

To ask your salesperson (or the cashier or anyone else within asking distance) for his or her opinion about a suit, tie, hat, or skirt, you'll need to use a *demonstrative adjective*. The demonstrative adjective *dieser* ("this") allows you to be specific about an item. You encountered these types of *der* words in Chapter 13, "Heading for the Hotel." The important thing to remember is that in German, demonstrative adjectives must agree in number, gender, and case with the noun they modify. Because demonstrative adjectives inflect like definite articles, the following table reviews the declension of *dieser* in all four cases.



What's What?

Demonstrative adjectives

Adjectives such as *dieser* ("this") allow you to point out someone or something specific.

Demonstrative Adjectives: This, That, These, Those

Case Genders	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural All
Nom.	dieser Hut <i>dee-zuhR hewt</i>	diese Hose <i>dee-zuh hoh-zuh</i>	dieses Kleid <i>dee-zuhs klayt</i>	diese <i>dee-zuh</i>
Acc.	diesen Hut <i>dee-zuhm hewt</i>	diese Hose <i>dee-zuh hoh-zuh</i>	dieses Kleid <i>dee-zuhs klayt</i>	diese <i>dee-zuh</i>
Dat.	diesem Hut <i>dee-zuhm hewt</i>	dieser Hose <i>dee-zuhR hoh-zuh</i>	diesem Kleid <i>de-zuhm klayt</i>	diesen <i>dee-zuhn</i>
Gen.	dieses Huts <i>dee-suhs hewts</i>	dieser Hose <i>dee-zuhr hoh-zuh</i>	dieses Kleids <i>dee-zuhs klays</i>	dieser <i>dee-zuhR</i>

Expressing Opinions

You've tried on a million hats, and not one of them is right. Just when you're about to give up, you find the perfect hat. If you're happy with an item, you may want to express your pleasure. On the other hand, perhaps you are dissatisfied with the fit or style of something. You may express your opinion with the following:

German	Pronunciation	English
Das gefällt mir.	<i>dAs guh-fält miR</i>	I like it. (literally: It is pleasing to me.)
Das steht mir gut.	<i>dAs shteyt miR gewt</i>	That suits me well.
Es ist angenehm.	<i>es ist An-guh-neym</i>	It is nice.
Es ist elegant.	<i>es ist ey-ley-gAnt</i>	It's elegant.
Es ist praktisch.	<i>es ist pRAk-tish</i>	It's practical.
Es gefällt mir nicht.	<i>es guh-fält miR niHt</i>	I don't like it.
Das steht mir nicht.	<i>dAs shteyt miR niHt</i>	That doesn't suit me.
Es ist schrecklich.	<i>es ist shRek-liH</i>	It is horrible.
Es ist zu klein.	<i>es ist zew klayn</i>	It's too small.
Es ist zu groß.	<i>es ist zew gRohs</i>	It's too big.
Es ist zu eng.	<i>es ist zew eng</i>	It's too tight.
Es ist zu lang.	<i>es ist zew lAng</i>	It's too long.
Es ist zu kurz.	<i>es ist zew kooRts</i>	It's too short.
Es ist zu schreiend.	<i>es ist zew shRi-ent</i>	It's too loud.

What's Your Preference?

Many questions concerning style and size begin with the interrogative pronoun *welcher*, another *der* word introduced in Chapter 13. *Welcher* follows the same declension as the demonstrative pronoun *dieser*, shown in the demonstrative adjectives table.

Sample Question:

Welches Hemd gefällt Ihnen am besten?
vel-Huhs hemt guh-fält ee-nuhn Am bes-tuhn
 Which shirt do you like best?

Answer:

Dieses Hemd dort gefällt mir am besten.
dee-suhs hemt doRt guh-fält miR Am bes-tuhn
 I like that shirt there best.

Now it's time to practice what you've learned about the interrogative pronoun *welcher*. Respond to the questions in the following exercise with the correctly declined form of *welcher*.

Example: Ich suche ein Geschäft.

Answer: Welches Geschäft?

1. Diese Krawatte gefällt uns.
2. Der Anzug steht dir gut.
3. Das T-shirt schenke ich meinem Bruder.
4. Ich suche meine Schuhe.
5. Ich mag dieses Kleid.
6. Sie möchte diesen Schlafanzug dort.

Did you figure out that the article of clothing in the first three sentences was the subject and hence in the nominative case? And what about the final three sentences? Yup, direct objects, thus expressed in the accusative case.



Culture Shock

In conversational German, you will frequently hear something like *Der gefällt mir* rather than *Dieser Hut gefällt mir*, as the definite article, when spoken with heavy stress, takes on a demonstrative role.

The Least You Need to Know

- You should be able to recognize the German names of stores and what they sell.
- You can use the verb *tragen* to talk about what you are wearing.
- In German, direct object pronouns are in the accusative case, and indirect object pronouns are in the dative case.
- The demonstrative adjective *dieser* helps you to indicate someone or something by expressing this or that (and in the plural form, these or those). Its interrogative partner, *welcher*, can help you clarify which one.



The Meat and Kartoffeln of a Home-Cooked Meal

In This Chapter

- Where to buy various kinds of food
- How to read a wine label
- How to express quantity
- Identifying what you want and asking for it

In Chapter 18, “Shop Till You Drop,” you learned how to shop for fashion items. You told the salespeople what you wanted and answered their questions. You learned about colors and patterns, plus how to gush about things. Now your wallet is a little lighter, your suitcase a little heavier, and your stomach feels a little emptier than it did when you set out earlier in the day. It’s too early for dinner, so you decide to stop for a snack.

What do you feel like eating? You could get a sandwich (ein belegtes Brot, *ayn bey-lek-tuhs bRoht*) at a café (das Cafe, *dAs kah-fey*) or stop in a supermarket (der Supermarkt, *deyR zew-peR-mARkt*) for bread (das Brot, *dAs bRoht*) and cheese (der Käse, *deyR käh-zuh*) and make your own. This chapter will help you get the food you want in just the right amount.

Shopping Around

One way to save money when you’re traveling is to buy the fixings to make your own lunches and dinners (or at the very least, your own snacks). The list of foods and food

shops in the following table should help you keep your appetite sated while you shop and sightsee. Bear in mind that the supermarket or an open-air market are the only two establishments where you are likely to find exclusively foodstuff.

Foods and Food Shops

German	Pronunciation	English
der Fisch	deyR fish	fish
das Fischgeschäft	dAs fish-guh-shäft	fish store
das Lebensmittelgeschäft	dAs ley-buhns-mi-tuhl-guh-shäft	grocery store
der Nachtisch	deyR nahCH-tish	dessert
der Proviant	deyR pRoh-vee-Ant	provisions
der Supermarkt	deyR zew-peR-mARkt	supermarket
das Brot	dAs bRoht	bread
die Bäckerei	dee bä-kuh-Ray	bakery
der Bäcker	deyR bä-kuhR	baker
die Früchte	dee fRÜH-tuh	fruits
das Gebäck	dAs guh-bäk	pastry (sweet)
die Konditorei	dee kon-dee-toR-ay	café, pastry shop
die Meeresfrüchte	dee mee-Ruhs-fRÜH-tuh	seafood
das Obst	dAs opst	fruit
das Gemüse	dAs guh-müh-zuh	vegetables
die Obst- und Gemüsehandlung	dAs opst oont guh-müh-zuh-hAnt-loong	produce shop
das Fleisch	dAs flaysh	meat
die Metzgerei	dee mets-guh-Ray	butcher shop
der Metzger	deyR mets-guhR	butcher
die Spirituosen	dee Spee-Ree-too-oh-zuhn	liquors
die Süßigkeiten	dee züh-sik-kay-tuhn	candies
der Wein	deyR vayn	wine
die Weinhandlung	dee vayn-hAnt-loong	wine store

Where Are You Going?

You've familiarized yourself with all the food and pastry shops near your hotel. You're armed with nothing but your appetite and a few *Deutsche Mark*—soon to be Eurodollars! When it's time to go out into the world for supplies to stock your

miniature hotel refrigerator, use the verb *gehen* and the preposition *zu* + the correctly declined definite article to identify the store you're about to visit. Keep in mind that the preposition *zu* is always followed by the dative case. Of course, once you're there, you are *in* + dative case!

Dative Preposition and Article	Contraction	Example	English
zu + dem = (masc. & neut.)	zum	Ich gehe zum Supermarkt. <i>iH gey-huh tsoom zew-peR-mARkt</i>	I go to the supermarket.
zu + der = (fem.)	zur	Ich gehe zur Weinhandlung. <i>iH gey-huh tsooR vayn-hant-loong</i>	I go to the liquor store.

You know what you want, now figure out where to go to get those items!

Example: Gemüse: Ich gehe zur Obst- und Gemüsehandlung.

1. Wein
2. Fleisch
3. Brot
4. Fisch

Alright! So you've figured out where to go for certain items. Of course, there is more than one alternative and source for vegetables. Some cities have a daily open-air market; in other cities these markets might be open just one or two days a week. You can always go to a supermarket, but don't overlook the smaller stores and produce handlers proudly displaying their offerings along the sidewalk.

At the Grocery Store (im Lebensmittelgeschäft)

German	Pronunciation	English
das Gemüse	<i>dAs guh-müh-zuh</i>	vegetables
das Sauerkraut	<i>dAs zou-eR-kRout</i>	pickled cabbage
der Kohl	<i>deyR kohl</i>	cabbage
der Kohlrabi	<i>deyR kohl-Rah-bee</i>	turnip
der Kopfsalat	<i>deyR Kopf-zah-laht</i>	lettuce
der Mais	<i>deyR mays</i>	corn

continues

At the Grocery Store (continued)

German	Pronunciation	English
der Pfeffer	deyR pfe-fuhR	pepper
der Pilz	deyR pilts	mushroom
der Reis	deyR Rays	rice
der Sellerie	deyR ze-luh-Ree	celery
der Spargel	deyR shpAR-guhl	asparagus
der Spinat	deyR spee-naht	spinach
die Aubergine	dee oh-beR-jee-nuh	eggplant
die Bohne	dee boh-nuh	bean
die Erbse	dee eRp-suh	pea
die Essiggurke	dee e-siH-gooR-kuh	sour pickle
die Gurke	dee gooR-kuh	cucumber
die Kartoffel	dee kAr-to-fuhl	potato
die Karotte	dee kah-ro-tuh	carrot
die Radieschen (pl.)	dee RA-dees-Huhn	radishes
die Tomate	dee toh-mah-tuh	tomato
die Zwiebel	dee zvee-buhl	onion

Auf dem Markt is the way to express being at the open-air market. While there, you can find almost anything: fresh flowers, produce, eggs, cheese, meat, sausage, fish, bread, and so on. Check out the following tables.

At the Fruit Store (*auf dem Markt*)

German	Pronunciation	English
das Obst	dAs opst	fruits
der Apfel	deyR Ap-fel	apple
der Pfirsich	deyR pfeeR-ziH	peach
die Ananas	dee A-nah-nAs	pineapple
die Aprikose	dee Ap-ree-koh-zuh	apricot
die Banane	dee bah-nah-nuh	banana
die Birne	dee beeR-nuh	pear
die Blaubeere	dee blou-bey-Ruh	blueberry
die Erdbeere	dee eRt-bey-Ruh	strawberry
die Haselnuß	dee hah-zuhl-noos	hazelnut
die Himbeere	dee him-bey-Ruh	raspberry
die Johannisbeere	dee yoh-hA-nis-bey-Ruh	currant

German	Pronunciation	English
die Kastanie	<i>dee kAs-tah-nee-uh</i>	chestnut
die Kirsche	<i>dee keeR-shuh</i>	cherry
die Mandel	<i>dee mAn-duhl</i>	almond
die Melone	<i>dee mey-loh-nuh</i>	melon
die Nüsse	<i>dee nü-suh</i>	nuts
die Orange	<i>dee oh-RAn-juh</i>	orange
die Pampelmuse	<i>dee pAm-puhl-mew-zuh</i>	grapefruit
die Pflaume	<i>dee pfloU-muh</i>	prune
die Preiselbeere	<i>dee pRay-suhl-bey-Ruh</i>	cranberry
die Walnuß	<i>dee vAl-noos</i>	walnut
die Wassermelone	<i>dee vA-suhR-mey-loh-nuh</i>	watermelon
die Rosine	<i>dee Roh-zee-nuh</i>	grape
die Zitrone	<i>dee tsee-tRoh-nuh</i>	lemon

At the Butcher or Delicatessen (*beim Metzger*)

German	Pronunciation	English
das Fleisch	<i>dAs flaysh</i>	meat
das Kalbfleisch	<i>dAs kAlp-flaysh</i>	veal
das Lamm	<i>dAs lAm</i>	lamb
das Rindfleisch	<i>dAs Rint-flaysh</i>	beef
das Rippensteak	<i>dAs Ri-puhn-steyk</i>	rib steak
das Rumpfsteak	<i>dAs Roompf-steyk</i>	rump steak
das Schnitzel	<i>dAs shnit-suhl</i>	cutlet
das Wienerschnitzel	<i>dAs vee-nuhR-shnit-suhl</i>	breaded veal cutlet
der Hammelbraten	<i>deyR hA-mel-bRah-tuhn</i>	roast mutton
der Rinderbraten	<i>deyR Rin-deR-bRah-tuhn</i>	roast beef
der Schinken	<i>deyR shin-kuhn</i>	ham
der Speck	<i>deyR shpek</i>	bacon
die Bratwurst	<i>dee bRaht-vooRst</i>	fried sausage
die Leber	<i>dee ley-buhR</i>	liver
die Leberwurst	<i>dee ley-buhR-vooRst</i>	liver sausage
die Wurst	<i>dee vooRst</i>	sausage
das Huhn	<i>dAs hewn</i>	chicken

continues

At the Butcher or Delicatessen (continued)

German	Pronunciation	English
das Kaninchen	<i>dAs kah-neen-Huhn</i>	rabbit
der Hase	<i>deyR hah-zuh</i>	hare
der Hasenbraten	<i>deyR hah-zuhn-bRah-tuhn</i>	roast hare
der Hirschbraten	<i>deyR hiRsh-bRah-tuhn</i>	venison
der Truthahn	<i>deyR tRewt-hahn</i>	turkey
die Ente	<i>dee en-tuh</i>	duck
die Gans	<i>dee gants</i>	goose

At the Fish Store (auf dem Markt)

German	Pronunciation	English
der Fisch	<i>deyR fish</i>	fish
der Hummer	<i>deyR hoo-muhR</i>	lobster
der Kabeljau	<i>deyR kah-bel-you</i>	cod
der Krebs	<i>deyR kReyps</i>	crab
der Lachs	<i>deyR lAks</i>	salmon
der Tintenfish	<i>deyR tin-tuhn-fish</i>	squid
der Thunfisch	<i>deyR tewn-fish</i>	tuna
die Auster	<i>dee ous-tuhR</i>	oyster
die Flunder/der Rochen	<i>dee floon-duhR/deyR Ro-CHuhn</i>	flounder
die Forelle	<i>dee foh-Re-luh</i>	trout
die Froschschenkel (m.)	<i>dee fRosh-shen-kuhl</i>	frog legs
die Garnele	<i>dee gahR-ney-luh</i>	shrimp
die Krabben (f.)	<i>dee kRA-buhN</i>	shrimp, prawns
die Sardine	<i>dee zAR-dee-nuh</i>	sardine
die Scholle	<i>dee sho-luh</i>	flatfish
die Seezunge	<i>dee zey-tsoon-guh</i>	sole

At the Dairy (auf dem Markt)

German	Pronunciation	English
das Ei/die Eier (pl.)	<i>dAs ay dee ay-eR</i>	eggs
der Käse	<i>deyR käh-zuh</i>	cheese

German	Pronunciation	English
der Joghurt	<i>der yoh-gooRt</i>	yogurt
die Butter	<i>dee boo-tuhR</i>	butter
die Magermilch	<i>dee mah-guhR-milH</i>	skim milk
die Sahne	<i>dee zah-nuh</i>	cream
die saure Sahne	<i>dee zou-Ruh zah-nuh</i>	sour cream
die Schlagsahne	<i>dee shlAk-zah-nuh</i>	whipped cream
die Vollmilch	<i>dee fol-milH</i>	whole milk

Although many supermarkets offer a combined bakery and pastry shop, selling both bread items and pastries, outside of that setting you will most likely encounter *eine Bäckerei* that sells only bread items, perhaps some to-go type sandwiches, and coffee for drinking at a stand-up table in the bakery. Should you desire a torte, piece of cake, or other delectable pastry, frequent *eine Konditorei* where you may point to the type of pastry you'd like to savor in the establishment or get the sweet *zum mitnehmen*, to take with you.

At the Bakery and Pastry Shop (in der Bäckerei und in der Konditorei)

German	Pronunciation	English
das Brot	<i>dAs bRoht</i>	bread
das Brötchen	<i>dAs bRöht-Huhn</i>	roll
der Semmel	<i>deyR ze-muhl</i>	roll
das Plätzchen	<i>dAs pläts-Huhn</i>	cookie
das Roggenbrot	<i>dAs Ro-guhm-bRoht</i>	rye bread
das Toastbrot	<i>dAs tohst-bRoht</i>	white bread (toast)
das Vollkornbrot	<i>dAs fol-koRn-bRoht</i>	whole-grain bread
das Weißbrot	<i>dAs vays-bRoht</i>	white bread
der Apfelstrudel	<i>deyR Ap-fuhl-shtRew-duhl</i>	apple strudel
der Berliner	<i>deyR beR-lee-nuhR</i>	jelly doughnut
der Kuchen	<i>deyR kew-CHuhn</i>	cake
die Schwarzwälder-kirschtorte	<i>dee shvARTs-välduhR-keeRsh-toR-tuh</i>	Black Forest (cake)
Kirschtorte	<i>kiRsh-toR-tuh</i>	cherry pie
die Torte	<i>dee toR-tuh</i>	tart

At the Supermarket (im Supermarkt)

German	Pronunciation	English
die Getränke	dee guh-tRän-kuh	drinks
das Bier	dAs beeR	beer
das Mineralwasser	dAs mee-nuh-Rahl-vA-suhR	mineral water
der Kaffee	deyR kA-fey	coffee
der Saft	deyR zAft	juice
der Tee	deyR tey	tea
der Wein	deyR vayn	wine
die Limonade	dee lee-moh-nah-duh	soft drink
die Milch	dee milH	milk
kohlensäurehaltig	koh-len-zoy-Re-hAl-tiH	carbonated
nicht kohlensäurehaltig	niHt koh-len-zoy-Re-hAl-tiH	noncarbonated

When you go into a grocery store, be prepared to either bring your own reusable cloth bags or pay a small fee for the shop's sturdy plastic bags. At discount grocery stores like *Aldi*, you'll also need to put a deposit on the cart. Expect the checker to push the items into your cart after which you'll bag them at another counter. Also bear in mind that Germany is environment friendly (*umweltfreundlich*), and you'll be charged for a deposit on most glass containers.

Prost!

On wine labels in Germany, you will come across four different categories of grapes used for wines: *Spätlese* (*shpät-ley-suh*), indicating a dry wine; *Auslese* (*ous-ley-suh*), indicating a fairly dry wine made from ripe grapes; *Beerenauslese* (*beyR-uhn-ous-ley-suh*), indicating a sweet wine made from a special kind of very ripe grape; and *Trockenbeerenauslese* (*tRo-kuhn-bey-Ruhn-ous-ley-suh*), indicating a very sweet (usually quite expensive) wine. Here are some terms you should know if you're a wine lover:

German	Pronunciation	English
(sehr) trocken	(seyR) tRo-kuhn	(very) dry
süß	zühs	sweet
mild	milt	mild
leicht	layHt	light

If you're a beer drinker, put this book down, go to your local brew pub, and take a sip of a good German beer. Your taste buds will tell you more about German beer than we possibly can. Here are a few terms and phrases that might help you in a German *Kneipe* (*knay-puh*, f.) or pub:

German	Pronunciation	English
ein Altbier	<i>ayn Alt-beeR</i>	a bitter ale
ein Bier vom Faß	<i>ayn beeR fom fAs</i>	a draft beer
ein dunkles Bier	<i>ayn doon-kluhs beeR</i>	a dark beer
Ein Bier, bitte.	<i>ayn beeR, bi-tuh</i>	A beer, please.
ein helles Bier	<i>ayn he-luhs beeR</i>	a light beer
ein Pils	<i>ayn pilts</i>	a bitter (light beer)
eine Berliner	<i>ay-nuh BeR-li-nuhR</i>	
Weiße mit Schuß	<i>vay-suh mit shoos</i>	a Weißbier with a dash of raspberry juice

You can use the verb *trinken* to order a beer or that special glass of wine. The following table is not quite complete. Because *trinken* is a normal strong verb (incurring no stem-vowel change in the present tense), you can go ahead and prove your mastery of present-tense verb endings by applying them to the stem here so conveniently provided!

Conjugation of the Verb Trinken

Person	Singular	English	Plural	English
First	ich trink	I drink	wir trink	we drink
Second	du trink	you drink	ihr trink	you drink
Formal (sing. and plural)	Sie trink			
Third	er, sie, es trink	he, she, it drinks	sie trink	they drink

Worked up a thirst, have you? Picture yourself in a *Biergarten* in München. How would you ask someone what he or she wants to drink? How would you answer someone if you were asked? How would you explain to someone what the people around you are imbibing? Fill in the blanks with the correct form of *trinken*.

Example: Der Mann an der Theke _____ ein Bier vom Faß.

Answer: Der Mann an der Theke trinkt ein Bier vom Faß.

- Was möchten Sie _____?
- Ich möchte ein Bier _____.
- Die beiden Frauen am Nachbartisch _____ Kaffee.
- Mattias und ich _____ gern milden Wein.
- Am liebsten _____ ich Limonade.
- Was _____ du am liebsten?

It's the Quantity That Counts

You've been invited to an outdoor buffet in the countryside. The hostess has asked you to bring cheese and meat. The hostess has invited just a few other people, so you figure a pound each of cheese and meat ought to be enough. When you go to *der Supermarkt*, however, the man behind the counter does not understand how much cheese or meat you want. In Germany the metric system is used for measuring quantities of food. Liquids are measured in kilograms. Let the following table help you order the right amount of meat and cheese so you don't have any leftovers.

Getting the Right Amount

German	Pronunciation	Amount
zwei Pfund (ein Kilo)	<i>tsvay pfoont</i> <i>(ayn kee-loh)</i>	2 pounds of
ein Sack	<i>ayn zAk</i>	a bag of
eine Tüte	<i>ay-nuh tüh-tuh</i>	
eine Flasche	<i>ay-nuh flA-shuh</i>	a bottle of
eine Schachtel	<i>ay-nuh shACH-tuhl</i>	a box of
eine Dose	<i>ay-nuh doh-zuh</i>	a can of
eine Kiste	<i>ay-nuh kis-tuh</i>	a case of
ein Liter	<i>ayn lee-tuhr</i>	a liter of
ein Dutzend	<i>ayn doo-tsent</i>	a dozen
ein halbes Pfund (250 Gramm)	<i>ayn hAl-buhs pfoont</i> <i>(250 gRAM)</i>	a half pound of
ein Gefäß	<i>ayn guh-fähss</i>	
ein (Einmach) Glas	<i>ayn (ayn-mACH) glAs</i>	a jar of
ein Packet	<i>ayn pA-keyt</i>	a package of
ein Pfund (ein halbes Kilo) (500 Gramm)	<i>ayn pfoont</i> <i>(ayn hAl-puhs kee-loh)</i> <i>(500 gRAM)</i>	a pound of
ein Viertel	<i>ayn feeR-tuhl</i>	a quarter of
eine Scheibe	<i>ay-nuh shay-buh</i>	a slice of

What if you want to try a bit of something before buying it, or if you simply want to have a taste or a bite of someone else's dessert after dinner? Here are a few expressions you may find useful.



As a Rule

You'll notice that the German measurements and weights are in the singular. Rather economical, if you consider it. The *zwei* in front of *Pfund* already conveys the idea of more than one pound! Speaking of pounds, *ein Pfund* is approximately *ein halbes Kilo* (half a kilogram). Naturally, any rule of the fist (*Faustregel*) has exceptions—the feminine measurement quantities do take the plural: *two Flaschen Mineralwasser*.

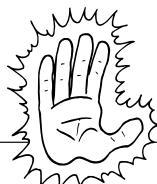
German	Pronunciation	English
ein bisschen	<i>ayn bis-Huhn</i>	a little bit of
etwas	<i>et-vAs</i>	some
genug	<i>guh-newk</i>	enough
mehr	<i>meyR</i>	more
viel	<i>veel</i>	a lot of
wenig	<i>vey-niH</i>	little/not much
weniger	<i>ve-nee-guhR</i>	less/fewer
zu viel	<i>tsew veel</i>	too much
zu wenig	<i>tsew vey-niH</i>	too little/not enough

A Trip to the Market

You have written a list of foods you will need to prepare a meal later in the evening for a group of friends. As you approach the outdoor farmer's market where you want to do your shopping, however, you realize that your English list of ingredients will be of little use to you. As you pass by the stands, someone calls out: "Frische Äpfel!" Someone else calls out: "Zwölf Eier für nur zwei Mark!" To make yourself understood, you must translate everything on your list into German and politely request the items.

Example: (a slice of cheese)

Answer: Ich möchte eine Scheibe Käse.



Achtung

To ask for a slice of cheese in German, you say, "Ich möchte eine Scheibe Käse" (iH möH-tuh ay-nuh shay-buh käh-zuh). To ask for a specific kind of cheese, however, you say (pointing at the cheese), "Ich möchte eine Scheibe von diesem Käse dort" (iH möH-tuh ay-nuh shay-buh fon dee-zuhm käh-zuh doRt) or "I want a slice of that cheese there."

1. a bottle of wine
2. a half pound of shrimp
3. a can of tomatoes
4. a bag of cherries
5. a dozen eggs
6. one kilogram of salmon
7. three pounds of butter
8. a half kilogram of sausage
9. a liter of cream
10. a case of beer

Getting What You Want

Are you tired of the crowds in supermarkets? Go to one of the smaller neighborhood stores on a less-frequented side street near your hotel. These are sometimes referred to as a *Tante-Emma-Laden* (literally, an "Aunt Emma Store"). Although the selection is less extensive than at a supermarket, you'll find most every-

thing you desire. Someone there will probably be happy to help you with your shopping. Be prepared for the following questions:

Was möchten Sie?

vAs möH-tuhn zee

What would you like?

Was wünschen Sie?

vAs viin-shuhn zee

What can I do for you?

Kann ich Ihnen helfen?

kAn iH ee-nuhn hel-fuhn?

May I help you?

You might begin your answer with one of the following phrases:

Ich möchte ...

iH möH-tuh

I would like ...

Können Sie mir ... geben?

kö-nuhn zee MeeR ... gey-buhn

Could you give me ...?

bitte
bi-tuh
please

You might then be asked:

Sonst noch etwas?

zonst noH et-vAs

Something else?

Ist das alles?

ist dAs A-luhs

Is that all?

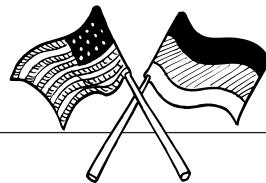
An appropriate response would be to give additional items you need or to answer:

Ja (Danke), das ist alles.

ya (dAn-kuh), dAs ist A-luhs

Yes (thank you), that's all.

You are *auf dem Markt*. Construct a dialogue between you and a clerk. Are you prepared to state specific amounts and to respond to the clerk's questions?

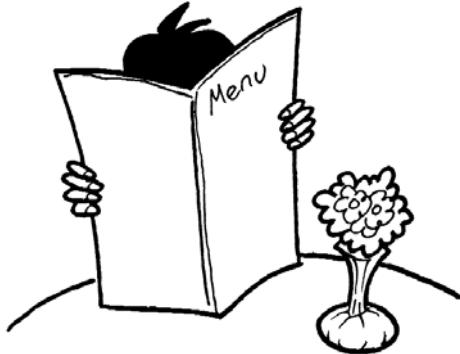


We Are Family

German and English did drift apart during the Middle English period, 1100–1500, when many Old English words—those in fashion from 450–1100—were supplanted primarily by French vocabulary. French food-oriented loanwords that overshadowed the previous Germanic lexicon include dinner, supper, taste, broil, fry, serve, beverage, sauce, salad, gravy, fruit, grape, beef, pork, mutton, salmon, sugar, and mustard.

The Least You Need to Know

- You should know the names of German foods and types of stores.
- *Ich möchte ...* followed by the desired item (and amount) will get you almost anything you want.
- The best German wines are white.
- Don't forget your "please" and "thank you" with *bitte* and *danke schön*.



Restaurant Hopping

In This Chapter

- Figuring out the gastronomic possibilities
- How to order in a restaurant, bar, or café
- How to get what you want, exactly the way you want it
- Special diets

You're in München and you're starving. As you take the crowded elevator down from your hotel room to the lobby, your stomach starts to growl. The five or six other people riding in the elevator with you stare politely at the ceiling. You've been so busy using your brilliant mind to figure out where to go and what to buy that you've neglected a humbler, but just as important, part of your body: your stomach.

Germany is a country well-known for hearty, satisfying repasts. Of course, before you can even begin to satisfy your hunger, you must know how to order whatever it is you want in German (it wouldn't hurt to be able to understand the specials when the waiter recites them, either). By the end of this chapter, you will be able to order meals in German and make specific requests.

Where Can I Get Something to Eat Around Here? (Wo kann ich denn hier etwas zu essen bekommen?)

You'll be happy to know that when hunger strikes, many types of eating establishments are waiting to feed you. The one you choose depends on the following factors: the kind of meal you want, the kind of service you want, and the size of your budget. Are you looking for breakfast, *das Frühstück* (*dAs fRih-shtük*), for lunch, *das Mittagessen* (*dAs mi-tahk-e-suhn*), or for dinner, *das Abendessen* (*dAs ah-buhnt-e-suhn*)? Germany has many different words for places where one can eat or drink something. Try one of these:

- *der Imbiß* (*deyR-im-bis*), fast-food stand; snack counter
- *das Café* (*dAs kA-fey*), coffee house serving mainly desserts
- *das Restaurant* (*dAs Res-tou-Rohn*), general word for "restaurant"
- *das Lokal* (*dAs loh-kal*), general word for an establishment that serves food and drinks
- *die Gaststätte* (*dee gAst-shtä-tuh*), full-service restaurant
- *der Gasthof/das Gasthaus* (*deyR gAst-hof, dAs gAst-hous*), small inn with pub or restaurant
- *die Kneipe* (*dee knay-puh*), small, simple pub or bar
- *die Studentenkneipe* (*dee shtew-den-tuhn-knay-puh*), typical place where students gather
- *das Wirtshaus* (*dAs veeRts-hous*), pub serving mainly alcoholic beverages and some food



Culture Shock

Water, water everywhere and not a drop to drink! In Germany you won't find the obligatory glass of water on your table. A word of caution. If you ask for water in a restaurant, *ein Glas Wasser bitte*, you will most likely get a glass of mineral water, and a bubbly one at that. If you really want just plain tap water, ask for *Leitungswasser* (*lay-tungz-vA-suhr*).

I Could Eat a Horse (Ich habe einen Mordshunger)

When you do finally pick a restaurant, you'll probably have to know how to do a few things before you get there. You may have to call to find out the exact location of the restaurant. If the restaurant is a good one and it's the weekend, you'll need to make a reservation. But never forego the opportunity to stumble across a wonderful *Lokal* by strolling around, perusing the menu posted outside, and sneaking in for a peek. The following list contains some phrases you may find useful when dining out:

German	Pronunciation	English
Ich möchte einen Tisch reservieren.	<i>iH mö-Htuh ay-nuhn tish Rey-zuhR-vee-Ruhn</i>	I would like to reserve a table.
für heute Abend	<i>fühR hoy-tuh ah-bent</i>	for this evening
für morgen Abend	<i>fühR moR-guhn ah-bent</i>	for tomorrow evening
für Samstag Abend	<i>fühR zAms-tahk ah-bent</i>	for Saturday night
für zwei Personen	<i>fühR tsvay peR-zoh-nuhn</i>	for two people
auf der Terrasse, bitte	<i>ouf deyR te-RA-suh, bi-tuh</i>	on the terrace, please
im Biergarten	<i>im beeR-gAR-tuhn</i>	in the beergarden
am Fenster	<i>Am fen-stuhR</i>	at the window
im Raucherbereich	<i>im Rou-CHuhR-buh-RayH</i>	in the smoking section
im Nicht-Raucherbereich	<i>im niHt-Rou-HuhR-buh-RayH</i>	in the nonsmoking section
an der Theke	<i>An deyR tey-kuh</i>	at the bar

Remember that when you use one of these prepositional phrases in a sentence after the conjugated modal verb *möchte*, the dependent infinitive, *reservieren*, should come at the end of the sentence, as in the following examples:

Ich möchte einen Tisch für heute Abend reservieren.

iH mö-Htuh ay-nuhn tish fühR hoy-tuh ah-bent Rey-zuhR-vee-Ruhn

I'd like to reserve a table for this evening.

Ich möchte einen Tisch für Samstag Abend für zwei Personen auf der Terasse reservieren.

iH mö-Htuh ay-nuhn tish fühR zAms-tahk ah-bent, fühR tsvay peR-zoh-nuhn, ouf deyR te-RA-zuh Rey-zuhR-vee-Ruhn

I'd like to reserve a table for two on the terrace for Saturday evening.

Dining Out

It's Saturday night, and you want to try the fare at one of the fanciest restaurants in Berlin. Call and make a reservation by the window in the nonsmoking section. The person on the other end of the line may ask you this question:

Einen Tisch für wie viele Personen?

ay-nuhn tish fühR vee-fee-luh peR-zoh-nuhn

A table for how many people?

Answer this way:

Einen Tisch für vier Personen, bitte.
ay-nuhn tish füHr feR peR-zoh-nuhn, bi-tuh
A table for four, please.

Now you've arrived at the restaurant, and the hostess has seated you in the nonsmoking section by the window, just as you asked. Now what? Bear in mind that German restaurant service is different from American service. Maybe the reason is that in Germany food servers earn a respectable wage and aren't dependent on the generosity of diners to earn enough to feed themselves! Your waitperson in Germany will not rush you. In fact, you may have to assert yourself to get certain things done. Not to say that you're pushy, but you are in control of your dining experience—you own that table until you are ready to depart. The next table provides some useful phrases *im Restaurant*:

Eating Out

German	Pronunciation	English
Wir möchten bestellen.	<i>veeR möH-tuhn buh-shte-luhn</i>	We would like to order.
Was bekommen Sie?	<i>vas buh-ko-muhn zee</i>	What would you like?
Ich nehme ...	<i>eeH ney-muh ...</i>	I'll take ...
Hat's geschmeckt?	<i>hAts guh-shmekt</i>	Did it taste good?
Ja, es hat sehr gut geschmeckt.	<i>ya, es hAt zeer goot guh-shmekt</i>	Yes, it was very tasty.
Zahlen bitte!	<i>tsah-luhn bi-tuh</i>	Check, please.



As a Rule

In all but the most exclusive restaurants in German-speaking countries, if the restaurant is very crowded, it is acceptable and quite normal for people to ask to share a table. Simply ask: *Ist hier noch frei?* "Is this seat taken?" If it is still available, you'll hear, *Ja, hier ist noch frei*. If it's already taken, listen for the word *besetzt* (*buh-zetst*), as in *Nein, hier ist besetzt*, telling you that the seat is taken.

Unfortunately, when your appetizer comes, you have no cutlery with which to eat. Also, you're thirsty; you need a glass of something. The terms in the following table should be of use to you when you are in a restaurant and want to identify and label everything on your table.

A Table Setting

German	Pronunciation	English
das Besteck	dAs be-stek	cutlery
das Geschirr	dAs guh-sheeR	crockery
das Messer	dAs me-suhR	knife
der Löffel	deyR lö-fuhl	spoon
die Kellnerin	dee kel-nuh-Rin	waitress
der Kellner	deyR kel-nuhR	waiter
der Salzstreuer	deyR zAlts-shtRoy-uhR	salt shaker
der Suppenteller	deyR zoo-puhm-te-luhR	soup dish
der Teelöffel	deyR tey-lö-fuhl	teaspoon
der Teller	deyR te-luhR	dinner plate
die Gabel	dee gah-buhl	fork
die Pfeffermühle	dee pfe-fuhR-müh-luh	pepper mill
die Serviette	dee zeR-vee-e-tuh	napkin
die Speisekarte	dee shpay-zuh-kAR-tuh	menu
die Tasse	dee tA-suh	cup
die Tischdecke	dee tish-de-kuh	tablecloth
die Untertasse	dee oon-teR-tA-suh	saucer

Gimme What I Need

If something is missing from your table setting and you need to ask the waiter or busboy for it, the verb *fehlen* (*fay-luhn*) will empower you to state what is missing; *fehlen* takes the dative case. The great thing about dative verbs in general is that they allow the subject of the utterance to be on the item being discussed. For instance, your fork is missing: *Mir fehlt die Gabel* translates literally into “to me is missing the fork.” But isn't this what you really mean? And doesn't this give you a chance to practice all the dative personal pronouns you learned in Chapter 18, “Shop Till You Drop”?

Try your hand at describing what's missing from the table by using the dative verb *fehlen*. Begin with the dative pronoun for the person who's missing the item.

Example: Your napkin is missing → *Dir fehlt die Serviette*. Note that the form of the verb is in the third-person singular, as the subject of the sentence is *die Serviette*, the napkin, and you will begin each statement with the dative personal pronoun, referring to *whose* whatever is missing.

1. My cup is missing.
2. His spoon is missing.
3. Her knife is missing.
4. Our pepper mill is missing.

You Need What?

Suppose the table isn't already set, and you *need* something. Remember how to express a need? In Chapter 14, "Yippee, You've Made It to the Hotel," you learned how to ask for extra amenities for your hotel room. Now, tell your waiter what you need by using those items from the preceding table and the verb *brauchen*. Remember, the items following the verb will be in the accusative case and must be declined correctly.

Example: How would you ask for a plate?

Ich brauche einen Teller.

1. How would you ask for a menu?
2. How would you ask for a glass?
3. How would you ask for a napkin?
4. How would you ask for a saucer?

Waiter, Do You Have Any Recommendations?

If you want a waiter, you can shout *Herr Ober* (*heR oh-buhR*), and there he'll be. Your waiter tonight asks whether you want to start with something to drink. Use the phrase *ich hätte gern* (*iH hä-tuh geRn*) followed by whatever it is you would like (in the accusative case). To tell the waiter that you want an aperitif, for example, you would say: *Ich hätte gern einen Aperitif, bitte*.

Soups (die Suppen)

German	Pronunciation	English
die Bauernsuppe	<i>dee bou-eRn-zoo-puh</i>	cabbage and sausage soup
die Bohnensuppe	<i>dee bohn-nuhn-zoo-puh</i>	bean soup
die Frühlingssuppe	<i>dee fRüh-links-zsoo-puh</i>	spring vegetable soup
die Kraftbrühe mit Ei	<i>dee kRAft-bRÜh-huh mit ay</i>	beef broth with raw egg
die Linsensuppe	<i>dee lin-zuhn-zoo-puh</i>	lentil soup
die Ochsenschwanzsuppe	<i>dee ox-zuhn-shvAnts-zoo-puh</i>	oxtail soup
die Tomatensuppe	<i>dee toh-mah-tuhn-zoo-puh</i>	tomato soup

Meats (das Fleisch)

German	Pronunciation	English
das Bündnerfleisch	<i>dAs bünt-nuhR-flaysh</i>	thinly sliced, air-dried beef
das Deutsche Beefsteak	<i>dAs doyt-shuh beef-steyk</i>	Salisbury steak
das Gulasch	<i>dAs goo-lAsh</i>	beef stew with spicy paprika
das Lammkotelett	<i>dAs lAm-kot-let</i>	lamb chop
das Naturschnitzel	<i>dAs nah-tooR-shnit-suhl</i>	unbreaded veal cutlet
das Rippensteak	<i>dAs Ri-puhn-steyk</i>	rib steak
das Rumpfsteak	<i>dAs Roompf-shteyk</i>	rump steak
das Schweinskotlett	<i>dAs shvayns-kot-let</i>	pork chop
das Wiener Schnitzel	<i>dAs vee-nuhR shnit-suhl</i>	breaded veal cutlet
der Bauernschmaus	<i>deyR bou-eRn-shmous</i>	smoked pork, sausages, dumpling, tomato, and sauerkraut
der Hackbraten	<i>deyR hAk-bRah-tuhn</i>	meatloaf
der Kalbsbraten	<i>deyR kAlps-bRah-tuhn</i>	roast veal
der Rinderbraten	<i>deyR Rin-duhR-bRah-tuhn</i>	roast beef
der Sauerbraten	<i>deyR zou-uhR-bRah-tuhn</i>	marinated pot roast
der Speck	<i>deyR shpek</i>	bacon
die Leber	<i>dee ley-buhR</i>	liver

That's the Way I Like It

With certain dishes, you have a choice about how they're served or cooked. For example, if you order eggs, you'll want to let the waiter know how you like your eggs cooked. Your waiter may ask you something like this:

Wie wollen (möchten) Sie sie (ihn, es)?

vee vo-luhn (möh-tuhn) zee zee (een, es)

How do you want them (it)?

The adjectives in the following table give you ways to answer.

How Would You Like It Prepared?

German	Pronunciation	English
angebräunt	<i>An-guh-bRoynt</i>	browned
blutig	<i>blew-tiH</i>	rare
durchgut	<i>dewRch-guh-koHt</i>	well-done
gedünstet	<i>guh-düns-tuht</i>	steamed
paniert	<i>pah-neeRt</i>	breaded
püriert	<i>püh-ReeRt</i>	pureed
das Omelett	<i>dAs om-let</i>	omelette
das Spiegelei	<i>dAs shpee-guhl-ay</i>	fried eggs
die Rühreier	<i>dee RühR-ay-uhR</i>	scrambled eggs
hartgekocht	<i>hART-guh-koCHt</i>	hard-boiled
pochiert	<i>po-sheeRt</i>	poached
weichgekocht	<i>vayH-guh-koCHt</i>	soft-boiled

Is anything more frustrating in a restaurant than having your favorite food arrive at your table overcooked, undercooked, too greasy, or over easy instead of scrambled? Practice expressing what you want—the way you want it. These words may come in handy when someone else is doing the cooking.

Example: Ich möchte meine Eier _____ (soft-boiled).

Answer: Ich möchte meine Eier weichgekocht.

1. Sie möchtet ihr Steak _____ (rare).
2. Hans möchte seinen Fisch _____ (breaded).
3. Wir möchten unsere Kartoffeln _____ (pureed).
4. Ich möchte mein Gemüse _____ (steamed).
5. Ich hätte gern _____ (fried eggs).

Spice It Up

If your tongue's idea of heaven is hot chilies and spicy salsa, German food might seem a little bland. Spice things up by asking for seasonings at the local café or grocery store. The following table provides a list of some common herbs, spices, and condiments.

Herbs, Spices, and Condiments

German	Pronunciation	English
das Basilikum	<i>dAs bah-zee-lee-koom</i>	basil
das Öl	<i>dAs öhl</i>	oil
das Oregano	<i>dAs O-Rey-gah-no</i>	oregano
das Salz	<i>dAs zAlts</i>	salt
der Dill	<i>deyR dil</i>	dill
der Essig	<i>deyR e-siH</i>	vinegar
der Honig	<i>deyR hoh-niH</i>	honey
der Knoblauch	<i>deyR knoh-blouCH</i>	garlic
der Meerrettich	<i>deyR mey-Re-tiH</i>	horseradish
der Pfeffer	<i>deyR pfe-fuhR</i>	pepper
der Senf	<i>deyR zenf</i>	mustard
der Zucker	<i>deyR tsoo-kuhR</i>	sugar
die Butter	<i>dee boo-tuhR</i>	butter
die Marmelade	<i>dee mAR-muh-lah-duh</i>	jam
die Mayonnaise	<i>dee mah-yoh-nay-zuh</i>	mayonnaise

Special Diets

Do you get little red spots all over your face when you eat strawberries? Are you on the latest cabbage/ice cream/onion and seltzer water fad diet? Be prepared to use the following phrases to get things your way.

German	Pronunciation	English
Ich bin auf (einer) Diät.	<i>iH bin auf (ay-nuhR) dee-eyt</i>	I am on a diet.
Ich bin Vegetarier.	<i>iH bin vey-gey-tah-ree-uhR</i>	I'm a vegetarian.
Ich kann nichts essen, was ... enthält.	<i>iH kAn niHst e-suhn, vAs ... ent-hält</i>	I can't eat anything with ... in it.

continues

German	Pronunciation	English
Ich kann kein (e, -en) ... essen (trinken).	iH kAn kayn (uh, -uhn) ... e-suhn (tRin-khn)	I can't have ...
die Meeresfrüchte	dee mey-Ruhs-fRüH-tuh	seafood
die gesättigten Fette	dee guh-zä-tiH-tuhn fe-tuh	saturated fats
Ich suche nach einem Gericht mit—niedrigem Cholesteringehalt.	iH zew-CHuh nACH ay-nuhm guh-RiHt mit nee-dRee-guhm ko-les-tey-Reen-guh-hAlt	I'm looking for a dish ... (that is) ... low in cholesterol.
niedrigem Fettgehalt	nee-dRee-guhR fet-guh-hAlt	low in fat
niedrigem Natriumgehalt	nee-dRee-guhR nA-tRee-oom-guh-hAlt	low in sodium
keine Milchprodukte	kayn milH-pRo-dukt	nondairy
salzfrei	zAlts-fRay	salt-free
zuckerfrei	tsoo-kuhR-fRay	sugar-free

Send It Back, Please

Did the dressing you ordered on the side come mixed in with your salad? Did your medium-rare veal chop arrive well done? When you want to send something back, you should be prepared to explain the problem to your server.

Possible Problems

German	Pronunciation	English
... ist kalt	ist kAlt	... is cold
... ist zu blutig	ist tsew blew-tiH	... is too rare
... ist übergar	ist üh-buhR-gahR	... is overdone
... ist zäh	ist tsäh	... is tough
... ist angebrannt	ist An-guh-bRAnt	... is burned
... ist zu salzig	ist tsew zAl-tsiH	... is too salty
... ist zu süß	ist tsew zühs	... is too sweet
... ist zu scharf	ist tsew shARf	... is too spicy
... ist verdorben	ist veR-doR-buhn	... is spoiled

And now you're done. Where's the check? In the server's mind and pocket, of course. Unlike in the United States where the server places the bill on the table fairly soon after you put down your fork, the Germans let you take your time. You pay the bill when you're ready by telling your *Ober*: *Zahlen, bitte*. The server will bring you the bill and expect you to pay on the spot. Efficient, eh?

How About Some Strudel, Sweetie?

Do you have a sweet tooth? Then your favorite part of the meal is probably the end of it. In Germany your sweet tooth will be satisfied (your other teeth may acquire a few extra cavities, if you're not careful). Cake is normally eaten around 4:00 in the afternoon for *Kaffee* (KA-fey), an early afternoon coffee break. The following table lists some of the most delicious desserts.

Delectable Desserts (leckere Nachspeisen)

German	Pronunciation	English
der Apfelstrudel	deyR ap-fuhl-shtrew-duhl	apple strudel
der Kuchen	deyR kew-CHuhn	coffee-cake type cake, often including fruit or poppy-seeds
der Obstsalat	deyR opst-zah-laht	fruit salad
der Pfirsich Melba	deyR pfeeR-ziH mel-bah	peach Melba
der Schokoladenpudding	deyR shoh-koh-lah-duhn-poo-ding	chocolate pudding
die Pfannkuchen	dee pfAn-kew-CHuhn	crepes (pl.)
die Rote Grütze	dee Roh-tuh gRü-tsuh	berry pudding
die Sachertorte	dee zA-CHuhR-toR-tuh	chocolate cake
die Schwarzwälder Kirschtorte	dee shvARTs-väl-duhR keeRsh-toR-tuh	Black Forest cake
die Torte	dee toR-tuh	layered cake or fruit tart

If you're an ice-cream lover, of course, you'll want to go to an ice cream vendor—just look for anything containing the word *Eis*. You'll find ice-cream parlors where you can sit and relax for a long while at cute little tables. Or if you prefer eating on the run, find an ice cream vendor who sells ice cream by the very small scoop—*eine Kugel*. You'll want to try at least three varieties! The following terms will help you get the amount and flavor you want.

German	Pronunciation	English
das Eis	dAs ays	ice cream
das Erdbeereis	dAs eRt-beyR-ays	strawberry ice cream
das Haselnußeis	dAs hah-zuhl-noos-ays	hazelnut ice cream
das Schokoladeneis	dAs shoh-koh-lah-den-ays	chocolate ice cream
das Vanilleeis	dAs vah-ni-lee-uh-ays	vanilla ice cream

continues

German	Pronunciation	English
der Eisbecher	deyR ays-be-HuhR	dish of ice cream
mit Schlagsahne	mit shlAk-zah-nuh	with whipped cream
mit Schokoladensoße	mit shoh-koh-lah-den-zoh-suh	with chocolate sauce
in einer Waffe	in ay-nuhR vA-fuh	in a waffle cone

Are You Thirsty? (*Hast du Durst?*)

If you're not a wine or beer drinker, you may want to know how to order certain nonalcoholic beverages with your dinner. The following table provides a list of drinks you might enjoy at any time before, during, or after dinner or at the *Eiscafé* in the late afternoon.

Beverages (Getränke)

German	Pronunciation	English
der Kaffee	deyR kA-fey	coffee
einen Kaffee mit Milch	ay-nuhn kA-fey mit milH	a coffee with milk
einen Kaffee mit Zucker	ay-nuhn kA-fey mit tsoo-kuhR	a coffee with sugar
einen schwarzen Kaffee	ay-nuhn shvAr-tsuhn kA-fey	a black coffee
einen entkoffinierten Kaffee	ay-nuhn ent-ko-fi-neer-tuhm kA-fey	a decaffeinated coffee
einen Eiskaffee	ay-nuhn ays-kA-fey	an iced coffee
der Capuccino	dehR ka-poo-chee-no	cappuccino, often served with whipped cream
mit Schlagsahne	mit shlAk-zah-nuh	with whipped cream
der Tee	deyR tey	tea
einen Tee mit Zitrone	ay-nuhn tey mit tsee-tRoh-nuh	a tea with lemon
das Mineralwasser	dAs mi-nuh-Rahl-vA-suhr	mineral water
ein kohlensäure-haltiges	ayn koh-luhn-zoy-Ruh-hAl-ti-guhs	noncarbonated

Can I Have a Doggy Bag?

Of course not! *Andere Länder, andere Sitten* is a German saying that means other countries have different customs. If you're not a big eater or you aren't very hungry, tell

the server: *Ich habe keinen großen Hunger*, literally, “I don’t have a big hunger—I’m not very hungry.” Or state that you want a small portion: *Ich möchte eine Kleinigkeit essen*.

Good Morning, Say Cheese

In Germany, cheese often accompanies *Wurst* as a part of a well-rounded breakfast. Yogurt, coffee, tea, juice, fresh rolls, cereal, butter, jam, honey, fresh fruit, and other yummy things help round out the typical German breakfast. Here are some expressions that will help you determine the cheese that is most to your liking.

German	Pronunciation	English
der Käse	deyR käh-zuh	cheese
mild	milt	mild
scharf	shARf	sharp
hart	hART	hard
weich	vayH	soft
würzig	viiR-tsiH	spicy

As for the rest of breakfast, most places where you might stay overnight offer a buffet-style breakfast. You merely choose between *Kaffee oder Tee* and select whatever else you desire. You danced ‘til dawn, and now you are hungry. You say, *Ich habe Hunger!* Go over to that *Fruhstücksbuffet* and describe what you would like to eat:

Ich möchte ...

Ich nehme ...

Ich hätte gern ...

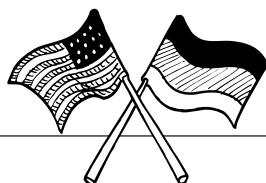
It Was Delicious

Don’t keep your satisfaction to yourself when you like what you’ve eaten. To express joy, pleasure, amazement, and wonder when a meal has been exceptional, use the following superlative phrases.

Das Essen war ausgezeichnet!

dAs e-suhn vahR ous-guh-tsayH-nuht

The meal was great!



We Are Family

German word-building strategy (derivational morphology) is rather similar to that of English, so knowledge of one part of a German word often allows you to guess the meaning of the entire word. Old English (OE) suffixes were directly related to those in older Germanic dialects: the OE *-nes*, recognized in Modern English as *-ness*, as in “smallness” or “happiness,” is comparable to the Germanic *-keit*, observable in *Kleinigkeit* or *Fröhlichkeit*.



Culture Shock

In most German restaurants, das Trinkgeld (*tRink-gelt*)—the tip—is included in the price of the meal (generally 15 percent). Still, it is common practice to round up the bill. If your bill is DM 10,50, for example, you might give the waiter 12 or 13 marks and say, “*Es stimmt so*,” the equivalent of “Keep the change.”

Das Steak war vorzüglich!
dAs steyk vahR foR-tsŶhk-liH
The steak was excellent!

Die Bedienung ist großartig!
dee buh-dee-nung ist gRohs-AR-tiH
The service is great!

This chapter ends with the very last thing you need to know in a restaurant: how to ask for your bill. Remember, *Zahlen, bitte!* Well, there's another way of expressing yourself. Take your pick!

Die Rechnung bitte.
dee ReH-noong bi-tuh
The check, please.

The Least You Need to Know

- You can find someplace to eat by asking: *Wo kann ich denn hier etwas zu essen bekommen?*
- In Germany, the customer controls the pace of service in a restaurant.
- You can read a German menu with very little difficulty.
- Express your pleasure after a meal by using German superlatives.



Monkey Business

In This Chapter

- Having fun in German
- Extending, accepting, and refusing invitations
- Using adverbs to describe abilities

You've visited tourist attractions, you've strolled through quiet parks, and you've bought souvenirs for your friends back home. The meals you've eaten have been delicious. Now that both your appetite and your curiosity have been satisfied, you want to have a little fun.

It's up to you. Do you feel like going to the movies? playing some tennis? shooting a little pool? hearing some live jazz? Perhaps you want to dress up, find a casino, and try your luck at fortune's wheel. After reading this chapter, you'll be ready to try almost anything; to brag about your talents and skills; and to invite someone to join you for a drink, a stroll, or a night on the town.

Are You a Sports Fan?

Whatever your sport, you will probably be able to participate in it while in Germany (if your favorite sports are spectator sports, you're in luck—soccer is the national favorite). In the following sections, you will learn the terms for many sports, where these sports are played, and how to tell someone which games you enjoy.

What's Your Game?

Even those who claim to detest spectator sports have a game they play or used to play that is close to their hearts. No doubt you can find at least one game you enjoy playing out of those listed in the following table.

Sports (Sportarten)

German	Pronunciation	English
Sport treiben	<i>shpoRt tRay-buhn</i>	to play sports
Billiard spielen	<i>bee-lee-ahRt shpee-luhn</i>	to play billiards
Tennis spielen	<i>te-nis shpee-luhn</i>	to play tennis
Federball spielen	<i>feh-duhR-bAl shpee-luhn</i>	to play badminton
Basketball spielen	<i>bAs-ket-bAl shpee-luhn</i>	to play basketball
Schach spielen	<i>shACH shpee-luhn</i>	to play chess
bergsteigen	<i>beRk-shtay-guhn</i>	to mountain climb
Radfahren	<i>Rat-fah-Ruhn</i>	to bicycle
angeln	<i>An-geln</i>	to fish
Handball spielen	<i>hant-bAl shpee-luhn</i>	to play handball
wandern	<i>vAn-duhRn</i>	to hike
reiten	<i>Ray-tuhn</i>	to ride horseback
Skifahren	<i>skee fah-Ruhn</i>	to ski
Wasserski laufen	<i>vA-suhR-skee lou-fuhn</i>	to water ski
Schlittschuh laufen	<i>shlit-shew lou-fuhn</i>	to ice skate
segeln	<i>sey-guhln</i>	to sail
schwimmen	<i>shvi-muhn</i>	to swim
wandern	<i>vAn-duhRn</i>	to hike
Aerobic machen	<i>eh-Roh-bik mA-Chuhn</i>	to do aerobics
Bodybuilding machen	<i>bo-dee bil-dink mA-Chuhn</i>	to do weight training

Welchen Sport treibst du gern? What sport do you like to play? To say that you enjoy a sport, use the construction ...

Ich + conjugated verb + gern.

Ich schwimme gern.

iH shvi-muh geRn

I like to swim.

For sports that are made up of a noun and a verb (*Rad fahren*, *Wasserski laufen*), use the following construction:

Ich + conjugated verb + gern + noun.

Ich laufe gern Wasserski.

iH lou-fuh geRn vA-suhR-skee

I like to water ski.

Where to Play Your Game

Have you ever tried to play a game of basketball on a soccer field? Or a game of tennis in a boxing ring? Can you imagine water skiing in a swimming pool? If you're stranded in a German-speaking country and determined to play your game, you can probably figure out a way to play it anywhere—or you can make life easy on yourself and memorize the expressions in the following table.

Where to Go for Sports

German	Pronunciation	English
das Eisstadion	dAs ays-shtah-deon	ice skating rink
der Fußballplatz	deyR fews-bAl-plAts	soccer field
der Sportplatz	deyR shpoRt-plAts	playing field
der Basketballplatz	deyR bAs-ket-bAl-plAts	basketball court
das Gebirge	dAs guh-beeR-guh	mountain
das Sportstadion	dAs shpoRt-shtah-dee-on	sport stadium
das Schwimmbad	dAs shvim-baht	swimming pool
das Hallenbad	dAs hA-luhn-baht	indoor swimming pool
das Freibad	dAs fray-baht	outdoor swimming pool
der Tennisplatz	deyR te-nis-plAts	tennis court
der Boxring	deyR boxRing	boxing arena
die Skipiste	dee skee-pis-tuh	ski slope
die Sporthalle	dee shpoRt-hA-luh	gymnasium
die Autorennbahn	dee ou-toh-Ren-bahn	car-racing track
der See	deyR zey	lake
der Fluss	deyR floos	river

Now put what you've learned to use by filling in the blanks with the appropriate vocabulary. Notice that if you're talking about where you can engage in these sports, the construction involves an either/or preposition + the dative case. And if you're going there, the construction is accusative. But here we've provided the appropriate prepositions and articles for you.

Example: Tennis spiele ich auf dem _____.

Answer: Tennis spiele ich auf dem Tennisplatz.

1. Ich wandere am liebsten im _____.
2. Fußball spielen wir auf dem _____.
3. Zum Skifahren gehe ich auf die _____.



Culture Shock

Although Germans are tennis fans, they are soccer fanatics. No single U.S. game can compete with it in popularity. Few Germans are immune to the excitement of the matches played among the country's 18 best first-division teams, *Fußball-Bundesliga*. But when they're not watching *Fußball*, Germans can be found engaging in leisure activities at sport clubs, *Sportvereine*, where healthy exercise is balanced with social interaction.

4. Anna schwimmt gern im _____.
5. Wir segeln gern auf dem _____.
6. Schlittschuh laufen kann man im _____.

Express Your Desire with *Mögen*

In Chapter 17, “Let’s Sightsee,” you learned to use modals in the present tense to express your attitude. To tell someone that you would like to do something, use the verb *mögen* (*möh-guhn*) “to like” in the *subjunctive* mood; that is, make it sound a little politer and more inviting: *ich möchte* (*iH möH-tuh*), or “I would like.” Of course, you will end the sentence with a dependent infinitive; otherwise, no one will know what you would like to do. You’ll notice that the first- and third-person singular have the same ending, which is consistent with what you already know about modals. Naturally, the plural forms are as you would expect. *Mögen* is conjugated in the following table.

The Verb *Mögen* in the Subjunctive

Person	Singular	English	Plural	English
First	ich möchte <i>iH möH-tuh</i>	I would like	wir möchten <i>veeR möH-tuhn</i>	we would like
Second	du möchtest <i>dew möH-test</i>	you would like	ihr möchtet <i>eeR möH-thut</i>	you would like
(Formal)	Sie möchten <i>zee möH-tuhn</i>		Sie möchten <i>zee möH-tuhn</i>	
Third	er, sie, es möchte <i>eR, zee, es möH-tuh</i>	he, she, it would like	sie möchten <i>zee möH-tuhn</i>	they would like

Now fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of *möchten*.

Example: Ich _____ Fußball spielen.

Answer: Ich möchte Fußball spielen.

1. Mattias _____ Basketball spielen.
2. Anne _____ bergsteigen.
3. Wir _____ wandern.
4. Franz und Klara _____ reiten.
5. Ihr _____ in der Sporthalle Federball spielen.
6. Hans und Franz _____ am Fluß angeln.

Extending an Invitation

If you are traveling alone, or if your traveling companion starts to snore in his or her chair after lunch, you may need to find someone to play your favorite sport with (unless you get an adrenaline rush from solitaire).

Before you invite someone, you should probably find out whether he or she enjoys engaging in whatever activity you're about to propose. Use the verb *mögen* in the subjunctive (*möchten*), followed by the subject and whatever verb you choose, as illustrated in the following construction:

Möchten Sie or möchtest du + (sport) verb

Möchten Sie bergsteigen gehen?

möH-tuhn zee beRk-shtay-guhn

Would you like to go mountain climbing?

Möchtest du Tennis spielen?

möH-test dew te-nis shpee-luhn

Would you like to play tennis?



What's What?

Subjunctive is a type of mood, grammatically speaking, that marks speakers' attitudes toward the truth of their assertions or obligation, permission, or suggestion. The verb form in the subjunctive mood indicates that something is relatively unlikely or contrary to fact, which is where we leave off with *möchten*, since expressing politeness is often something extraordinary and unreal!

Accepting an Invitation

Not only is accepting an invitation a way to show the natives you're friendly—you'll probably end up having a great time if you do! Whether it's a romantic dinner, a

doubles tennis match, or simply a walk in the park, the following phrases will help you gracefully accept any invitation.

German	Pronunciation	English
Selbstverständlich.	<i>zelpst-feR-shtänt-liH</i>	Of course.
Natürlich.	<i>nah-tüR-liH</i>	Naturally.
Warum nicht?	<i>vah-Room niHt</i>	Why not?
Ja, das ist eine gute Idee.	<i>yah, dAs ist ay-nuh gew-tuh ee-dey</i>	Yes, that's a good idea.
Wenn du (Sie) willst (wollen).	<i>ven dew (zee) vilst (vo-luhn)</i>	If you like.
Fantastisch.	<i>fAn-tAs-tish</i>	Fantastic.

Refusing an Invitation—Making Excuses

Of course, if you always say yes to invitations, you probably won't have any time left for yourself. In fact, if you love traveling, chances are you also enjoy spending time alone in museums, cathedrals, cafés, airports, and sleeping compartments on trains. It may be just as important for you to learn how to gracefully refuse an invitation (especially to someone's sleeping compartment on a train!) as it is for you to learn how to gracefully accept one. Sooner or later, you'll probably find the following phrases useful.

German	Pronunciation	English
Das ist unmöglich.	<i>dAs ist oon-mök-liH</i>	That's impossible.
Nein, ich habe keine Lust.	<i>nayn, iH hah-buh kay-nuh loost</i>	No, I don't feel like it.
Nein, ich habe keine Zeit.	<i>nayn, iH hah-buh kay-nuh tsayt</i>	No, I have no time.
Es tut mir leid.	<i>es toot meeR layt</i>	I'm sorry.
Ich bin müde.	<i>iH bin müh-duh</i>	I'm tired.
Ich bin beschäftigt.	<i>iH bin buh-shäf-tiHt</i>	I'm busy.

Showing Indecision and Indifference

Your best buddy asks you to go ice skating. You haven't been ice skating since you were nine and figure you'll look like a jerk trying, but you're a good sport. So you shrug and let him know it's all the same to you. Try a few of these useful phrases to show your indifference (and if you're lucky he'll catch on that you'd really rather watch cheese grow mold than go ice skating).

German	Pronunciation	English
Das ist mir egal.	<i>dAs ist meer ey-gahl</i>	It makes no difference to me.
Was du willst.	<i>vAs dew vilst</i>	Whatever you'd like.
Ich weiß nicht.	<i>iH vays niHt</i>	I don't know.
Vielleicht.	<i>fee-layHt</i>	Maybe.
Mal sehen.	<i>mahl zeh-uhn</i>	We'll see.

Do You Accept or Refuse?

If you know how to tell someone which sports you like, chances are you'll be asked to play sooner or later. Practice what you've learned in this chapter to accept and refuse invitations. Give the German for the following sentences.

Example: Would you like to play tennis? No, I don't feel like it.

Answer: Möchten Sie Tennis spielen? Nein, ich habe keine Lust.

1. Would you like to play basketball? Yes, that's a good idea.
2. Would you like to hike? No, I'm tired.
3. Would you like to play soccer? Why not?
4. Would you like to fish? No, I don't have the time.
5. Would you like to play soccer? No, I'm tired.
6. Would you like to ride bikes? Naturally.

Let's Do Something Else

There are many reliable ways of having a good time, and new ways are being invented every day. If sports aren't your thing, you may want to suggest some other kind of activity. To tell someone that you would like to go to the opera, you might say:

Ich möchte in die Oper gehen.
iH möH-tuh in dee oh-puhR gey-huhn
 I would like to go to the opera.

If you'd like to go to the movies, you could say:

Ich möchte ins Kino gehen.
iH möH-tuh ins kee-noh gey-huhn
 I'd like to go to the movies.

Use the phrases in the following table to make creative suggestions.

Places to Go and Things to Do

Place	English	Activity	English
in die Oper gehen <i>in dee oh-puhR gey-huhn</i>	to go to the opera	die Musik hören <i>dee mew-zeek höh-Ruhn</i>	to listen to music
zum Strand gehen <i>tsoom stRAnt gey-huhn</i>	to go to the beach	schwimmen, sich sonnen <i>shvi-muhn, siH zo-nuhn</i>	to swim, to lie in the sun
in die Diskothek gehen <i>in dee dis-koh-teyk gey-huhn</i>	to go to the discotheque	tanzen <i>tAn-tsuhn</i>	to dance
ins Ballett gehen <i>ins bA-let gey-huhn</i>	to go to the ballet	die Tänzer anschauen <i>dee tän-tsuhR An-shou-uhn</i>	to watch the dancers
ins Kasino gehen <i>ins kah-zee-noh gey-huhn</i>	to go to the casino	spielen <i>shpee-luhn</i>	to play
ins Kino gehen <i>ins kee-noh gey-huhn</i>	to go to the movies	einen Film sehen <i>ay-nuhn film zey-huhn</i>	to see a movie
ins Theater gehen <i>ins tey-ah-tuhR gey-huhn</i>	to go to the theater	ein Theaterstück sehen <i>ayn tey-ah-tuhR-shtük zey-huhn</i>	to see a play
ins Konzert gehen <i>ins kon-tseRt gey-huhn</i>	to go to a concert	ein Orchester hören <i>ayn oR-kes-tuhR höh-Ruhn</i>	to hear a concert
zu Hause bleiben <i>tsoo hou-zuh blay-buhn</i>	to stay at home	meditieren <i>me-dee-tee-Ruhn</i>	to meditate
faulenzen <i>fou-len-tsuhn</i>	to lie around		

Entertaining Options

Sometimes, after the shops and the restaurants, the sightseeing and the sweating, there's nothing better than sitting in front of the television with a glass of milk in one hand and a plate of cookies in the other. You could cozy up with the *Fernsehzeitung* (*feRn-zey-tsay-toong*, the German *TV Guide*) and settle in for a pleasant evening. Alternatively, you might go to the local movie theater (if it's not too far away). In the following sections, you will learn some important entertainment vocabulary.

At the Movies and on TV

If your television has cable, you can put the plate of cookies down and flip through the movie guide to see what's showing. If your television has a VCR, you may want to rent a movie. The different kinds of movies and shows are listed for you in the following table. If you're at a hotel and are too lazy to figure out what's on TV, be a pest. Call the reception desk and ask ...

Was gibt es im Fernsehen?

vAs gipt es im feRn-zey-huhn

What's on TV?

Welche Art von Film gibt es?

vel-Huh Art fon film gipt es

What kind of film is it?

Television Programs and Movies (Fernsehprogramme und Filme)

German	Pronunciation	English
der Abenteuerfilm	<i>deyR ah-ben-toy-uhR-film</i>	adventure film
die Komödie	<i>dee koh-möh-dee-uh</i>	comedy
der Dokumentarfilm	<i>deyR doh-kew-men-tAR-film</i>	documentary
das Drama	<i>dAs dRah-mah</i>	drama
der Horrorfilm	<i>deyR ho-Ror-film</i>	horror movie
der Krimi	<i>deyR kRee-mee</i>	thriller
die Liebesgeschichte	<i>dee lee-bes-guh-shiH-tuh</i>	love story
die Nachrichten	<i>dee nACH-RiH-tuhn</i>	news
die Seifenoper	<i>dee zay-fuhn-oh-puhR</i>	soap opera
der Spielfilm	<i>deyR shpeel-film</i>	feature film
der Wetterbericht	<i>deyR ve-tuhR-buh-RiHt</i>	weather
der Zeichentrickfilm	<i>deyR tsay-Huhn-tRik-film</i>	cartoon

At a Concert

If you go to a concert in Germany, you'll certainly want to tell your friends about it. In Germany, as in America, when referring to the cellist, or to the pianist, you can simply refer to the instrument: The cello was exceptional, or *Das Cello war außergewöhnlich* (*dAs che-loh vAR ou-suhR-guh-vöhn-liH*). The following table lists the most common musical instruments.

Musical Instruments (Musikinstrumente)

German	Pronunciation	English
das Akkordeon	<i>dAs A-koR-de-ohn</i>	accordion
das Cello	<i>dAs che-loh</i>	cello
die Geige	<i>dee gay-guh</i>	violin
die Klarinette	<i>dee klah-Ree-ne-tuh</i>	clarinet
die Trommel	<i>dee tRo-mel</i>	drum
die Pauke	<i>dee pou-kuh</i>	bass drum
die Posaune	<i>dee po-sou-nuh</i>	trombone
das Schlagzeug	<i>dAs shlAk-tsoyK</i>	drums
die Flöte	<i>dee flöh-tuh</i>	flute
die Gitarre	<i>dee gee-tA-Ruh</i>	guitar
die Harfe	<i>dee hAR-fuh</i>	harp
das Horn	<i>dAs hoRn</i>	horn
die Oboe	<i>dee oh-boh-uh-a</i>	oboe
das Klavier	<i>dAs kIA-veeR</i>	piano
das Saxophon	<i>dAs zak-soh-fohn</i>	saxophone
die Trompete	<i>dee tRom-pey-tuh</i>	trumpet
die Mundharmonika	<i>dee moont-hAR-moh-nee-kah</i>	mouth organ

Expressing Your Opinion

When you enjoy a film or a concert, you can express your enjoyment by using the following phrases:

German	Pronunciation	English
Ich liebe den Film/ das Konzert!	<i>iH lee-buh deyn film/</i> <i>dAs kon-tseRt</i>	I love the film/ the concert!
Es ist ein guter Film/ ein gutes Konzert.	<i>es ist ayn gew-tuhR film/</i> <i>ayn gew-tuhs kon-tseRt</i>	It is a good film/ a good concert.
Er ist amüsant.	<i>eR ist ah-müh-zAnt</i>	It is amusing.

German	Pronunciation	English
Er ist spannend.	<i>eR ist shpA-nuhnt</i>	It is exciting.
Es ist bewegend.	<i>es ist buh-vey-guhmt</i>	It is moving.
Er/es ist orginell.	<i>eR/es ist oR-gee-nel</i>	It is original.
Er/es ist interessant.	<i>eR/es ist in-tey-Re-sAnt</i>	It is interesting.

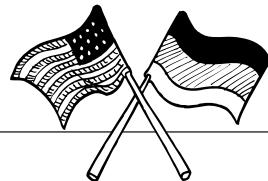
If you found the film or show disappointing, use any of these phrases to show your disapproval:

German	Pronunciation	English
Ich hasse den Film/ das Konzert.	<i>iH hA-suh deyn film/ dAs kon-tseRt</i>	I hate the film/ the concert.
Er/es ist schlecht.	<i>eR/es ist shleHt</i>	It is bad.
Er/es ist absoluter Schrott.	<i>eR/es ist ap-soh- lew-tuhR shRot</i>	It is total garbage.
Es ist immer wieder das gleiche.	<i>es ist i-muhR vee-duhR dAs glay-Huh</i>	It is always the same thing.

Adverbs: Modifying Verbs

Adverbs are used to modify verbs or adjectives. You can use adverbs to describe how well, how badly, or in what way something is done, as in “He plays the piano wonderfully,” or “I swim amazingly well.” English adverbs are formed by adding the ending *-ly* to adjectives, resulting in words like *happily, quickly, slowly, moderately*, and so on.

In German, almost all adjectives can be used as adverbs. In addition, many words are adverbs only. They express location relevant to the speaker, such as *dort* (*doRt*), or “there,” and *hier* (*heeR*), or “here.” The only adverbs with endings are words that express a higher degree, that is, adverbs that appear in the comparative and superlative forms. To form the comparative of adverbs, add *-er* to the adverb: *Der Abenteuerfilm ist spannender als die Dokumentation*. To compare two things, simply insert *als* between the items to be compared. To form the superlative, add *am* before the superlative and



We Are Family

In Old English (450–111 C.E.), the most productive category of adverbs was that of qualitative adverbs formed from adjectives simply by adding *-e* or *-lic* to the adjective stem. Although the Old English *-lic* (now *-ly*) was originally an adjective suffix (*homely, friendly*), it has since become the standard way of forming an adverb. The Old High German (500–1050) adjectival equivalent—*lich* is still evident in adjectives (*freundlich, sportlich*) and adverbs such as *endlich*.



What's What?

Adverbs Words used to modify verbs or adjectives.

-sten to the adverb: *Der Abenteuerfilm ist am spannendsten*. Naturally, something that is best/worst/most ... does not need a comparison: *Kalte Suppe ist am schlechtesten!*

The best way to understand the difference between adverbs and adjectives is that adjectives modify nouns (and therefore take an ending if they precede a noun), whereas adverbs modify verbs, in the sense of specifying the time, manner, or place. Compare the use of *gut* and *laut* as adjectives and adverbs in the following sentences.

Boris Becker ist ein guter Tennisspieler. (adj.)

bo-Ris be-keR ist ayn gew-tuhR te-nis-shpee-luhR

Boris Becker is a good tennis player.

Ich kann auch gut spielen. (adv.)

iH kAn ouH gewt shpee-luhn

I can also play well.

In der Disko hört man nur laute Musik. (adj.)

in deyR dis-koh höRt mAn newR lou-tuh mew-seek

In the disco you only hear loud music.

Das Orchester spielt das Stück viel zu laut. (adv.)

dAs oR-kes-tuhR shpeelt dAs shtiük feel tsew lout

The orchestra plays the piece far too loudly.



As a Rule

The word *adverb* implies its principal function—which is to be added to, or to modify, a verb. But don't let the name fool you. Adverbs can also modify adjectives, as they do in the following sentences:

Das Frühstück war sehr gut.

dAs fRüH-shtük vAR seyR gewt

The breakfast was very good.

Seine Geschichte war höchst langweilig.

say-nuh guh-shiH-tuh vAR höCHst lAnk-vay-liH

His story was very boring.

Adverbs That Are What They Are

Although most adjectives can be used as adverbs, many words can be used only as adverbs. The following table lists common adverbs that do not double as adjectives.

Plain Old Adverbs

German	Pronunciation	English
anschließend	<i>An-shlee-suhnt</i>	then, afterward
bald	<i>bAlt</i>	soon
da	<i>dA</i>	there
danach	<i>dA-nahCH</i>	then
dort	<i>doRt</i>	there
endlich	<i>ent-liH</i>	at last
früh	<i>fRüh</i>	early
ganz	<i>gAnts</i>	quite, entirely
gelegentlich	<i>gey-ley-get-liH</i>	occasionally
gestern	<i>ges-tuhRn</i>	yesterday
heute	<i>hoy-tuh</i>	today
hier	<i>heeR</i>	here
immer	<i>i-muhR</i>	always
jetzt	<i>yetst</i>	now
manchmal	<i>mAnH-mahl</i>	sometimes
nie	<i>nee</i>	never
noch	<i>noCH</i>	still
nur	<i>nuR</i>	only
oft	<i>oft</i>	often
plötzlich	<i>plöts-liH</i>	suddenly
sehr	<i>seyR</i>	very
seit	<i>sayt</i>	since
sofort	<i>soh-foRt</i>	immediately
spät	<i>shpährt</i>	late
zusammen	<i>tsew-sA-muhn</i>	together

Here are some sample sentences that use these adverbs:

Heute spielen wir Fußball.
hoy-tuh shpee-luhn veeR fews-bAl
 Today we play soccer.

Ich möchte sofort ins Schwimmbad gehen.

iH möH-tuh zo-foRt ins shvim-bAt gey-huhn

I'd like to go into the swimming pool immediately.

Position of Adverbs

Brace yourself: You're not through with adverbs yet. Adverbs can be divided into categories. The most common categories of adverbs are time, manner, and place. *Heute* in *Sie geht heute ins Kino* (zee geyt hoy-tuh ins kee-noh), or "Today she goes to the movies," uses an adverb of time; *langsam* in the sentence *Er läuft langsam* (eR loyft lang-sahm), or "He runs slowly," is an adverb of manner; *Hier* in *Hier fühle ich mich wie zu Hause* (heeR füh-luh iH miH vee tsew hou-zuh), or "I feel at home here," is an adverb of place. So what happens when you have multiple adverbs in one sentence? How do you know which adverb to put where? The answer is easy if you remember this clue:



Achtung

The adverb of time *morgen* means "tomorrow." *Der Morgen*, however, means "the morning." To say tomorrow morning, use *morgen früh*, not *morgen Morgen*. For example, *Wir gehen morgen früh nach Hause*. ("We're going to the house tomorrow morning.")

TeMPO. Adverbs of *time* come first. Adverbs of *manner* next. Then come adverbs of *place*. Or, if you prefer the German acronym, ZAP: *Zeit, Art, Platz*.

Er fährt heute mit dem Fahrrad dorthin. (time, place)

eR fähRt hoy-tuh mit deym fah-rAt doRt-hin

He drives there today on his bicycle.

If two adverbs of the same type occur in a sentence, the more general adverb precedes the more specific adverb:

Er fährt morgen um 8 Uhr dorthin. (general time, specific time, place)

eR fähRt moR-guhn oom ACHt ewR doRt-hin

He drives there at eight o'clock tomorrow morning.

How Well Do You Do Things?

Now you're ready to use adverbs to describe your stunning abilities. The following table contains some common adverbs (all of which, incidentally, can be used as adjectives) that you can use to tell someone how good (or bad) you are at doing something.

Common Adverbs for Describing Abilities

German	Pronunciation	English
schnell	<i>shnel</i>	fast
langsam	<i>lA nk-sahm</i>	slow
gut	<i>gewt</i>	good
schlecht	<i>shleHt</i>	bad
ausgezeichnet	<i>aus-guh-tsayH-nuht</i>	excellent
schrecklich	<i>shRek-liH</i>	terribly
grauenhaft	<i>gRou-en-hAft</i>	horribly
wunderbar	<i>vewn-duhR-bahR</i>	wonderfully

Just How Good Are You at Adverbs?

Are you a good golfer? How well do you sing? Can you run for miles, or are you a good sprinter? How well do you dance? Use adverbs to tell how well you perform the following activities.



As a Rule

Nicht is the German negative particle. It follows the inflected verb (*Mein Bruder raucht nicht.*), pronouns, and most noun objects (*Du kennst meinen Bruder nicht.*) *Nicht* precedes most other elements: *Ich bin nicht nervös. Ich fahre nicht gern. Dieses Bier ist nicht für mich.*

Example: (Deutsch sprechen) Ich spreche Deutsch langsam.

1. tanzen	5. laufen
2. Klavier spielen	6. singen
3. kochen	7. Tennis spielen
4. Golf spielen	8. Wandern

The Least You Need to Know

- *Sport treiben* is the expression for playing sports, but the verb *spielen* is used to express participation in a specific sport. *Ich treibe viel Sport. Jeden Tag spiele ich Tennis.*
- If you like to do something, use the adverb *gern* + a noun or a verb.
- The verbs *möchten* and *wollen* can be used to extend, accept, and refuse invitations.
- Adverbs are words that modify both verbs and adjectives. Most German adverbs also can function as adjectives.

Part 5

Angst

All the fun and games you've been enjoying have left you frazzled and worn out. Part 5 introduces many useful terms you'll need to confront and remedy some problems concerning repair of your beauty, health, clothing, and other possessions. Better yet, you'll also learn how to ask for the kind of haircut you want and to express various kinds of aches and pains (along with their locations on your body).





Dealing with a Bad Hair Day, an Empty Camera, a Broken Watch, and Blisters

In This Chapter

- Personal services
- Problems and solutions
- Comparing and contrasting

You've been eating, buying things, watching TV—having, to put it mildly, a good old time. And then, all of a sudden, the problems start. You've stained your favorite silk shirt, you have an ingrown toenail, your shoes have worn down so much that you can actually feel the city streets through the soles when you walk! And that's not all. Yesterday you sat on your glasses and broke one of the lenses, you ripped the hem of your jacket on a door handle, and you lost your address book. Don't worry. Everything you need to repair yourself is just a few blocks—or perhaps even just a phone call—away. By the end of this chapter, all your problems will be under control.

My Hair Needs Help, Now!

Is your perm coming out? Are your roots showing? Maybe you just want to return to your native land with a new do. Whatever your reasons for wanting to venture into a hair salon, you will need to have the basic vocabulary to get your hair styled just so.

Beautify Yourself

In Germany, *der Friseur-Salon* (deyR fRee-zsühR-zah-lon), or hairdresser, is generally for both men and women. When a woman goes to get her hair done, she says, *Ich gehe zum Friseur* (iH gey-huh tsoom fRee-zühR). If you want special services such as pedicures, manicures, or facials, you would go to a beauty salon: *Ich gehe zum Kosmetik-salon* (iH gey-huh tsoom kos-mey-tik-sah-lohn).

To get what you want, begin your requests to the beauty consultant with the following phrase:

Ich hätte gern ...

iH hä-tuh geRn

I would like ...

Most salons provide the services listed in the following table.

Hair Care

German	Pronunciation	English
eine Tönung (f.)	ay-nuh töh-noong	a tint
ein Haarschnitt (m.)	ayn hahR-shnit	a haircut
eine Dauerwelle (f.)	ay-nuh dou-uhR-ve-luh	a perm
eine Färbung (f.)	ay-nuh fär-boong	a coloring
eine Pediküre (f.)	ay-nuh pey-dee-küh-Ruh	a pedicure
eine Gesichtsmassage (f.)	ay-nuh guh-ziHts-mA-sah-juh	a facial
eine Haarwäsche (f.)	ay-nuh hahR-vä-shuh	a shampoo
eine Maniküre (f.)	ay-nuh mA-nee-küh-Ruh	a manicure

The article following the phrase *ich hätte gern* should be in the accusative case. To let someone know you'd like a haircut, say:

Ich hätte gern einen Haarschnitt.

iH hä-tuh geRn ay-nuhn hahR-shnit

I'd like a haircut.

Another way of getting services in a beauty salon is by using the subjunctive mood of the modal verb *können*. The following table contains some phrases that use *können* in the subjunctive to help you make polite requests.

Other Services

German	Pronunciation	English
Könnten Sie mir bitte den Pony zurechtschneiden?	<i>kön-tuhn zee meeR bi-tuh deyn po-nee tsew-ReHt-shnay-duhn</i>	Could you please cut my bangs?
Könnten Sie mir bitte die Haare glätten?	<i>kön-tuhn zee meeR bi-tuh dee hah-Ruh glä-tuhn</i>	Could you please straighten my hair?
Könnten Sie mir bitte die Haare fönen?	<i>kön-tuhn zee meeR bi-tuh dee hah-Ruh föh-nuhn</i>	Could you please blow-dry my hair?



As a Rule

Unlike English, which uses the possessive adjective when referring to body parts (*my hair, my finger*), German makes use of the handy dative case to refer to the person whose appendage something is, and the simple definite article: *Könnten Sie mir bitte die Haare fönen?* You used a similar concept when you were missing a fork back in Chapter 20, “Restaurant Hopping”: *Mir fehlt die Gabel*.

Expressing Your Preferences

Getting a haircut in a foreign country is truly a brave thing to do because—let’s face it—it’s hard enough to get the kind of haircut you want when both you and your hairdresser speak the same language. The phrases in the following table might help.

Hairstyles

German	Pronunciation	English
lang	<i>lAng</i>	long
mittellang	<i>mi-tuhl-lAng</i>	medium length

continues

Hairstyles (continued)

German	Pronunciation	English
kurz	<i>kooRs</i>	short
gewellt	<i>guh-velt</i>	wavy
lockig	<i>lo-kiH</i>	curly
glatt	<i>glAt</i>	straight
stufig	<i>shtew-fiH</i>	layered
geflochten	<i>guh-floCH-tuhn</i>	braided
schwarz	<i>shvARts</i>	black
kastanienbraun	<i>kAs-tah-nee-uhm-bRoun</i>	auburn
rot	<i>Roht</i>	red
in einer dunkleren Farbe	<i>in ay-nuhR doonk-luh-Ruhn fAR-buh</i>	in a darker color
in einer helleren Farbe	<i>in ay-nuh he-luh-Ruhn fAR-buh</i>	in a lighter color
in der gleichen Farbe	<i>in deyR glay-Huhn fAR-buh</i>	in the same color

Suppose you are allergic to particular beauty products, chemicals, or lotions. Or perhaps you can't abide certain smells. Do you detest the way most hair spray leaves your hair feeling like straw? If you don't like certain hair care products, speak up. Begin your request to the hairdresser with either of the following phrases:

Ich möchte kein(-e, -en)

iH möH-tuh kayn(-uh, -uhn)

I don't want any

Bitte, benutzen Sie kein(-e, -en)

bi-tuh, buh-noot-tsuhn zee kayn(-uh, -uhn)

Please, don't use

German	Pronunciation	English
das Haargel	<i>dAs hahR-geyl</i>	gel
das Haarspray	<i>dAs hahR-spRay</i>	hair spray
das Shampoo	<i>dAs shAm-pew</i>	shampoo
der Haarschaum	<i>deyR hahR-shoum</i>	mousse
die Haarlotion	<i>dee hahR-loh-tseeohn</i>	lotion
die Pflegespülung	<i>dee pfley-guh-shpiih-loonk</i>	conditioner

I Need Help

There will undoubtedly be times, particularly if you take what you've learned of the German language and venture into a German-speaking country, when you will find yourself in need of a helping hand. The problem is, how do you get this helping hand to help you? The sections that follow will help you prepare for an encounter at the dry cleaner's, at the Laundromat, at the shoemaker, and so on.

Help!

When you have minor problems—a stain, a broken shoelace, a ripped contact lens—which occur in a universe where chaos seems to dispel what little order there is, you will find the following phrases useful.

Um wie viel Uhr öffnen Sie?

oom vee-feel ewR öf-nuhn zee

What time do you open?

Um wie viel Uhr schließen Sie?

oom vee-feel ewR shlee-suhn zee

What time do you close?

An welchen Tagen haben Sie geöffnet (geschlossen)?

An vel-Huhn tah-guhn hah-buhn zee guh-öf-net (guh-shlo-suhn)

What days are you open (closed)?

Können Sie mein(-e, -en) ... reparieren?

kö-nuhn zee mayn(-uh, -uhn) ... Re-pah-Ree-Ruhn

Can you fix my ... for me?

Können Sie ihn (es, sie) heute reparieren?

kö-nuhn zee een (es, zee) hoy-tuh Re-pah-Ree-Ruhn

Can you fix it (them) today?

Kann ich bitte eine Quittung bekommen?

kAn iH bi-tuh ay-nuh kvi-toong buh-ko-muhn

Can I have a receipt, please?

At the Dry Cleaner—in der Wäscherei

You wake up in the morning after what must have been a wild night (you are fully dressed, shoes still on, tie loosely knotted). You can't remember anything that happened from the moment you started cha-cha dancing on your table after the third round of drinks, but you begin to make out traces of lipstick, chocolate sauce, and wine on the front of your shirt. Whatever happened, you don't want to remember it now—not in the middle of a migraine headache.

Why not take your shirt to the cleaner's and wash the whole night away? The person helping you will probably ask you something like, "Wo liegt das Problem?" (*vo leekt dAs pRo-blem*) Knowing how to explain your problem and ask for the necessary type of service is crucial.

Das Hemd ist schmutzig.

dAs hempt ist shmoot-sik

The shirt is dirty.

Mir fehlt ein Knopf.

meeR feytl ayn knopf

I'm missing a button.

Ich habe ein Loch in meiner Hose.

iH hah-buh ay-nuh loH in may-nuhR hoh-zuh

I have a hole in my pants.

Da ist ein Flecken.

da ist ayn fle-kuhn

There's a stain.

You've explained the problem. Now you must be clear about what you want done to correct it. Try these phrases:

Können Sie diese(-s, -n) ... für mich reinigen, bitte?

kö-nuhn zee dee-suh(-s, -n) ... füHr miH ray-ni-guhn, bi-tuh

Can you clean this (these) for me, please?

Können Sie diese(-s, -n) ... für mich bügeln, bitte?

kö-nuhn zee dee-suh(-s, -n) ... füHr miH büh-guhln, bi-tuh

Can you iron this (these) for me, please?

Können Sie diese(-s, -n) ... für mich stärken, bitte?

kö-nuhn zee dee-suh(-s, -n) ... füHr miH shtäR-kuhn, bi-tuh

Can you starch this (these) for me, please?

Können Sie diese(-s, -n) ... für mich nähen bitte?

kö-nuhn zee dee-suh(-s, -n) ... füHr miH näh-huhn, bi-tuh

Can you sew this (these) for me, please?

At the Laundromat—im Waschsalon

If the laundry that has piled up in the corner of your hotel room is made up of basic, run-of-the-mill dirty clothes, you may want to stuff everything into a bag and wander the city streets in search of the nearest Laundromat. These phrases will be of use to you in your search:

Ich suche einen Waschsalon.

iH zew-Huh ay-nuhn vash-sah-lohn

I'm looking for a Laundromat.

Ich habe viel dreckige Wäsche.

iH hah-buh feel dRe-ki-guh vä-shuh

I have a lot of dirty clothes.

Ich möchte meine Wäsche waschen lassen.

iH möH-tuh may-nuh vä-shuh vA-shuhn lA-suhn

I want to have my clothes washed.

Welche Waschmaschine kann ich benutzen?

vel-Huh vAsh-mA-shee-nuh kAn iH buh-noo-tsuhn

Which washing machine can I use?

Welcher Trockner ist frei?

vel-HuhR tRok-nuhR ist fRay

Which dryer is free to use?

Wo kann ich Waschpulver kaufen?

vo kAn iH vAsh-pool-vuhR kou-fuhn

Where can I buy laundry soap?

At the Shoemaker—beim Schuster

Did both heels snap off your favorite leather boots? Have you been walking so much that you have worn the soles of your shoes away, the way the princess does in the fairy tale by the *Gebrüder Grimm*? Perhaps you simply want to be able to see your smiling face reflected in your polished patent leather dress shoes as you bend down to pick up a lucky *Pfennig* from the sidewalk. Whatever your reasons for visiting your local shoemaker, the following phrases will help you make your desires clear.

Können Sie ... für mich reparieren?

kö-nuhn zee ... fühR miH rey-pah-ree-Ruhn

Can you fix ... for me?

diese Schuhe

dee-suh shew-huh

these shoes

diese Stiefel

dee-suh shtee-fuhl

these boots

diesen Absatz

dee-suhn ap-zats

this heel

diese Sohle

dee-suh zoh-luh

this sole

Haben Sie Schnürsenkel?

hah-buhn zee shnüR-zen-kuhl

Do you have shoelaces?

Können Sie meine Schuhe putzen, bitte?

kö-nuhn zee may-nuh shew-huh poot-zuhn, bi-tuh

Can you polish my shoes, please?

I Need These Shoes

Your clothes are filthy. Your best dress is ripped. Your shoes are a wreck. The heels are worn down, and the shoes themselves are encrusted with mud. You have a party to go to later in the evening! What should you do? You can start by using what you've learned to translate the following sentences into German.

Example: Can you fix these shoes for me?

Answer: Können Sie deise Schuhe für mich reparieren?

1. I'm looking for a Laundromat.
2. Can you dry clean this dress for me?
3. What time do you close?
4. Can you polish my shoes, please?
5. I have lots of dirty clothes.
6. Where can I polish these shoes?

At the Optometrist—beim Optiker

Almost everyone with less than perfect vision has had the unfortunate experience of looking for hours for a favorite (and only) pair of glasses. Finally you plop yourself down on the sofa, frustrated and exhausted, to the muffled (but no less ominous) sound of breaking glass. If you happen to sit on your glasses while in Deutschland, these phrases may come in handy:

Können Sie diese Brille reparieren, bitte?

Kö-nuhn zee dee-zuh bRi-luh Rey-pah-REE-Ruhn, bi-tuh

Can you repair these glasses for me, please?

Das Glass (das Gestell) ist zerbrochen.

dAs glAs (dAs guh-shtel) ist tseR-bRo-CHuhn

The lens (the frame) is broken.

Können Sie diese Kontaktlinsen ersetzen.

kö-nuhn zee dee-zuh kon-tAkt-lin-zuh eR-ze-tsuhn

Can you replace these contact lenses?

Verkaufen Sie Sonnenbrillen?

feR-kou-fuhn zee zo-nuhn-bRi-luhn

Do you sell sunglasses?



As a Rule

Word order To form a yes/no question in German, place the inflected verb first, as you do in English: Are you looking for a Laundromat? *Suchen Sie einen Waschsalon?* If the question begins with a question word, such as *wann* ("when"), *warum* ("why"), *wo* ("where"), or *wie viel* ("how much"), the inflected verb comes in second position: *Wo finde ich einen Waschsalon?*

At the Jeweler—beim Juwelier

Has your watch stopped? If you want to catch your train or plane on time, you may want to have your watch repaired. Try these phrases when you're at the jewelry store:

Meine Armbanduhr ist kaputt.

may-nuh ARm-bAnt-ewR ist kA-poot

My watch is broken.

Können Sie diese Armbanduhr reparieren?

kö-nuhn zee dee-zuh ARm-bAnt-ewR Re-pah-Ree-Ruhn

Can you repair this watch?

Meine Armbanduhr läuft zu schnell (langsam).
may-nuh ARm-bAnt-ewR loyft tsew shnel (lAng-sAm)
My watch is fast (slow).

Verkaufen Sie Batterien?
feR-kou-fuhn zee bah-tuh-Ree-uhn
Do you sell batteries?

Your watch is broken, and you are due to meet a friend later in the day. Stop by a jewelry store in Zürich and explain your problem to the jeweler. Be specific about the kind of repair you want.

At the Camera Shop—beim das Fotogeschäft

If you lost or forgot your camera, or if you simply need to buy some film, you will probably want to stop at a camera shop. Here are some phrases that may come in handy:

Ich brauche einen Fotoapparat.
iH bRou-Huh ayn foh-toh-ah-pah-Raht
I need a camera.

Ich brauche eine Videokamera.
iH bRou-Huh ayn vee-dee-oh-kah-muhR-ah
I need a video camera.

Haben Sie Farbfilme (Schwarzweißfilm) mit 20 (36) exposures?
hah-buhn zee fARp-fil-muh (shvARts-vays-film) mit 20 (36) foh-tos
Do you have color (black-and-white) film with 20 (36) Photos?

Können Sie diesen Film entwickeln, bitte?
kö-nuhn zee dee-zuhn film ent-vi-kuhlн, bi-tuh
Can you develop this film, please?

If the sun has been shining for weeks and you're looking gorgeous and the photographs that your wife, husband, friend, or companion have been taking of you just aren't coming out right, you may need a new camera. Walk into the nearest camera shop and tell the photo assistant what you need. Don't forget to order a few rolls of film.

Help, I Lost My Passport!

Here are the phrases you will need to get through some common angst-inducing situations.

1. Wo ist ...?

vo ist

Where is ...?

das Polizeiamt

dAs poh-li-tsay-Amt

the police station

das amerikanische Konsulat

dAs ah-mey-Ree-kah-ni-shuh kon-zew-laht

the American consulate

die amerikanische Botschaft

dee ah-mey-Ree-kah-ni-shuh bot-shAft

the American Embassy

2. Ich habe ... verloren

iH hah-buh ... feR-loh-Ruhn

I have lost ...

meinen Pass (m.)

may-nuhn pAs

my passport

mein Portemonnaie (n.)

mayn poRt-moh-neY

my wallet

meine Handtasche (f.)

may-nuh hAnt-tA-shuh

my purse

3. Helfen Sie mir, bitte.

hel-fuhn zee meeR, bi-tuh

Help me, please.

4. Ich brauche einen Dolmetscher.

iH bRou-Huh ay-nuhn dol-met-HuhR

I need an interpreter.

5. Spricht jemand hier Englisch?

shpRiHt yeh-mAnt heeR eng-lish

Does anyone here speak English?

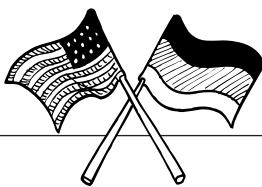


What's What?

Positive form Simple adverbs or adjectives.

Comparative form The “more” form adjectives and adverbs take when compared.

Superlative form The “most” form adjectives and adverbs take when they are compared.



We Are Family

In Present-Day German, most monosyllabic adjectives and adverbs incur a sound change in the comparative and superlative forms. This sound change can be traced back to the days of Old High German (500–1050 C.E.), when adjectives and adverbs took an ending that promoted the shifting in sounds. The endings have been lost, but the sound change remains: *alt* → *älter*. Hmm ... is there a similarity between that German comparison for *old* and the English *old* → *elder*?

Comparison Shopping

Just because you're in a foreign country doesn't mean you shouldn't shop around. Whether it's a hotel, a jewelry store, a clothing store, or a train station, ask about prices. Then go to other hotels, stores, and so on and ask about their prices. Find the best deal and take it!

Adverbs and Adjectives Compared

When you are explaining to someone why you bought this here and that there, you will have to know how to use adjectives and adverbs to compare things. Adverbs and adjectives have three forms—the *positive* form, *billig* (*bi-liH*, “cheap”), the *comparative* form, *billiger* (*bi-li-guhR*, “cheaper”), and the *superlative* form, *der/die/das billigste* (*deyR/dee/dAs bi-lik-stuh*) or *am billigsten* (*Am bi-lik-stuhn*)—all of which mean “the cheapest.” The form of the definite article and the ending on the adjective vary according to case and gender.

Adjectives and adverbs are compared in English either by adding *-er* (or modifying the adjective with *more*) to form the comparative or by adding *-est* (or using *most*), to form the superlative. The process is quite similar and even simpler in German: The ending *-er* is used to form the comparative for both adjectives and adverbs of any length (*intelligenter*), and *-(e)st* is used to form the superlative (*der intelligenteste*). Notice that when the comparison of an adjective precedes a noun, the superlative ending for that adjective is *-(e)ste*, as it will take an inflection to agree with the noun it's modifying. For adverbs, the superlative ending becomes *-(e)sten*, since the preposition/article contraction *am* precedes it (*an + dem*).

The following list gives you the adjective *stark* (*shtARK*, or “strong”) in the base, comparative, and superlative form. Notice the addition of an umlaut in the comparative and superlative forms. This spelling change occurs quite frequently with one-syllable adjectives and adverbs.

Adjective Type	German	Pronunciation	English
Positive	der starke Regen	<i>deyR shtahR-kuh rey-guhn</i>	the heavy rain
Comparative	der stärkere Regen	<i>deyR shtäR-kuh-Ruh rey-guhm</i>	the heavier rain
Superlative	der stärkste Regen	<i>deyR shtäRk-stuh rey-guhn</i>	the heaviest rain

The following list gives you the adverb *stark* in the positive, comparative, and superlative form.

Adjective Type	German	Pronunciation	English
Positive	Es regnet stark.	<i>es Reyk-net shtARK</i>	It rains hard.
Comparative	Es regnet stärker.	<i>es Reyk-net shtäR-kuhR</i>	It rains harder.
Superlative	Es regnet am es stärksten.	<i>Reyk-net am shtäRk-stuhn</i>	It rains the hardest.



As a Rule

The superlative of an adjective is formed by adding *-st* to the positive form. The *-st* is expanded to *-est* if the adjective stem ends in *-d*, *-t*, or a sibilant such as *-s*, *-st*, *-ß*, or *-z*, as in: *Im Winter sind die Tage am kürzesten*. Remember that if the adjective precedes a noun, it is attributive in function and takes an adjective ending to agree in number, gender, and case: *Trier ist die älteste Stadt in Deutschland*. The one exception to this rule of adding an *-e* before the *-st* is the superlative of *groß*: *größt-*, as in *Bayern ist das größte Land Deutschlands*.

The following two tables list the adjectives you will need (in their comparative and superlative forms) to be a good comparison shopper.

Adjectives Used to Compare

Positive	English	Comparative	Superlative
billig <i>bi-liH</i>	cheap	billiger <i>bi-li-guhR</i>	am billigsten <i>Am bi-lik-stuhn</i>
schön <i>shöhn</i>	beautiful	schöner <i>shöh-nuhR</i>	am schönsten <i>Am schöhn-stuhn</i>
groß <i>gRos</i>	big	größer <i>gRöh-suhR</i>	am größten <i>Am gRös-tuhn</i>
klein <i>klayn</i>	small	kleiner <i>klay-nuhR</i>	am kleinsten <i>Am klayn-stuhn</i>
bunt <i>boont</i>	colorful	bunter <i>boon-tuhR</i>	am buntesten <i>Am boon-tes-tuhn</i>
weich <i>vayH</i>	soft	weicher <i>vay-HuhR</i>	am weichesten <i>Am vay-Hes-tuhn</i>
warm <i>vARm</i>	warm	wärmer <i>väR-muhR</i>	am wärmt-sten <i>Am väRm-stuhn</i>
teuer <i>toy-uhR</i>	expensive	teuerer <i>toy-uhR-uhR</i>	am teuersten <i>Am toy-uhR-stuhn</i>

Remember, when forming the comparative with adverbs, add the ending *-er* to the positive form of the adverb. To form the superlative, use the formula *am* + positive form of adverb + the ending *-(e)sten*.

Irregular Comparisons

Some adjectives and adverbs have irregular comparative and superlative forms. Yes, you guessed it: You're simply going to have to commit these to memory.

Positive	English	Comparative	English	Superlative	English
gern <i>geRn</i>	gladly	lieber <i>lee-buhR</i>	more gladly	am liebsten <i>Am leep-stuhn</i>	most gladly
gut <i>gewt</i>	good	besser <i>be-suhR</i>	better	am besten <i>Am be-stuhn</i>	the best
hoch <i>hoCH</i>	high	höher <i>höh-huhR</i>	higher	am höchsten <i>Am höH-stuhn</i>	the highest
nah <i>nah</i>	close	näher <i>näh-huhR</i>	closer	am nächsten <i>Am näH-stuhn</i>	the closest

Positive	English	Comparative	English	Superlative	English
oft <i>oft</i>	often	öfter <i>öft-uhR</i>	more often	am öftesten <i>Am öf-tes-tuhn</i>	the most often
viel <i>feel</i>	much	mehr <i>meyR</i>	more	am meisten <i>Am may-stuhn</i>	the most

Make a Comparison

How does your life this year compare with your life last year? Are you tall or short compared with your father? your mother? Do you feel weaker or stronger than you did last month? Use what you've learned about making comparisons to compare yourself with your family and friends.

The Least You Need to Know

- You can get the services you need and put your angst-ridden hours to an end with a few simple phrases.
- You will be able to recognize the locations offering these services, as the German expressions *Wäscherei* and *Waschsalon* contain the English cognate "wash"; *Schuster* sounds like "shoe"; and *Optiker* resembles the English "optician."
- The comparative and superlative forms in German are formed in much the same way as they are in English: by adding *-er* and *-(e)st*.
- Irregular forms of *gut*, *besser*, *am besten*; *viel*, *mehr*, *am meisten* also mirror their English equivalents.



What Does the Doctor Recommend?

In This Chapter

- Your body
- Symptoms, illnesses, and cures
- The irregular verb *tun* in the expression *weh tun*
- Expressing how long
- How to use reflexive verbs

Now you know from Chapter 22, “Dealing with a Bad Hair Day ...,” how to take care of all those little things that go wrong when you’re traveling. But what about slightly bigger problems? What happens if you get sick? Unfortunately, many travelers have minor aches, pains, headaches, and upset stomachs. Time differences, foreign food and water, air-conditioned airplanes, and hot hotel rooms, on top of trying to adjust to constantly changing conditions, can do a number on your body. In this chapter you’ll learn the key words and phrases you need to complain in German about everything from a headache to a not-so-happy tummy.

Where Does It Hurt?

The first thing you need to know is how to tell the doctor where, specifically, you’re experiencing pain or discomfort. Try some of the words in the following table.

Parts of the Body

German	Pronunciation	Plural	Pronunciation	English
das Auge	<i>dAs ou-guh</i>	die Augen	<i>dee ou-guhn</i>	eye(s)
das Bein	<i>dAs bayn</i>	die Beine	<i>dee bay-nuh</i>	leg(s)
das Gehirn	<i>dAs guh-hiRn</i>	die Gehirne	<i>dee guh-hiR-nuh</i>	brain(s)
das Gesicht	<i>dAs guh-ziT</i>	die Gesichter	<i>dee guh-ziT</i> <i>-tuhR</i>	face(s)
das Handgelenk	<i>dAs hAnt-guh-</i> <i>lenk</i>	die Handgelenke	<i>dee hAnt-guh-</i> <i>len-kuh</i>	wrist(s)
das Herz	<i>dAs heRts</i>	die Herzen	<i>dee heR-tsuhn</i>	heart(s)
das Knie	<i>dAs knee</i>	die Knie	<i>dee knee-uh</i>	knee(s)
das Ohr	<i>dAs ohR</i>	die Ohren	<i>dee oh-Ruhn</i>	ear(s)
der Arm	<i>deyR ARm</i>	die Arme	<i>dee Ar-muh</i>	arm(s)
der Busen	<i>deyR bew-zuhn</i>	die Busen	<i>dee bew-zuhn</i>	breast(s)
der Finger	<i>deyR fin-guhR</i>	die Finger	<i>dee fin-guhR</i>	finger(s)
der Fingernagel	<i>deyR fin-guR-</i> <i>ney-guhl</i>	die Fingernagel	<i>dee fin-guR</i> <i>-ney-guhl</i>	fingernails
der Fuß	<i>deyR fews</i>	die Füsse	<i>dee fü-suh</i>	foot (feet)
der Fußknöchel	<i>deyR fews-nö-</i> <i>Huhl</i>	die Fußknöchel	<i>dee fews</i> <i>-nö-Huhl</i>	ankle(s)
der Hals	<i>deyR hals</i>	die Hälse	<i>dee häl-zuh</i>	neck(s)
der Kopf	<i>deyR kopf</i>	die Köpfe	<i>dee köp-fuhf</i>	head(s)
der Körper	<i>deyR köR-puhR</i>	die Körper	<i>dee köR-puhR</i>	body(ies)
der Magen	<i>deyR mah-guhn</i>	die Mägen	<i>dee mä-guhn</i>	stomach(s)
der Mund	<i>deyR moont</i>	die Münden	<i>dee Mün-duhR</i>	mouth(s)
der Rücken	<i>deyR Rü-kuhn</i>	die Rücken	<i>dee Rü-kuhn</i>	back(s)
der Zahn	<i>deyR tsahn</i>	die Zähne	<i>dee tsäh-nuh</i>	tooth (teeth)
der Zeh	<i>deyR tsay</i>	die Zehen	<i>dee tsay-hun</i>	toe(s)
die Brust	<i>dee bRoost</i>	die Brüste	<i>dee bRüs-tuh</i>	chest(s)
die Hand	<i>dee hAnt</i>	die Hände	<i>dee hän-duh</i>	hand(s)
die Haut	<i>dee hout</i>	die Häute	<i>dee hoy-tuh</i>	skin(s)
die Kehle	<i>dee keh-luh</i>	die Kehlen	<i>dee keh-luhn</i>	throat(s)
die Nase	<i>dee nah-zuh</i>	die Nasen	<i>dee nah-zuhn</i>	nose(s)
die Schulter	<i>dee shool-tuhR</i>	die Schultern	<i>dee shool-tuhRn</i>	shoulder(s)
die Wirbelsäule	<i>dee viR-buhl-zoy-</i> <i>luh</i>			spine
die Zunge	<i>dee tsoon-guh</i>	die Zungen	<i>dee tsoon-guhn</i>	tongue(s)
die Lippe	<i>dee li-puh</i>	die Lippen	<i>dee li-puhn</i>	lip(s)

You Give Me a Pain in the ...

How would you tell a German that you have a headache? a sore throat? a stomach-ache? You could point to your head, your throat, or your stomach and contort your face in agony, perhaps grunting or yowling for emphasis. Or you could learn how to express these things in German. In the following sections, you will learn how to express pains, aches, and illnesses in German.

What Seems to Be the Problem?

When you go to the doctor, the first question will probably be *Was haben Sie?* (*vAs hah-buhn zee*) or “What’s troubling you?” Use the following formula to answer:

Ich habe + body part that hurts + -schmerzen

Examples:

Ich habe	<i>iH hah-buh</i>	I have a
Bauchschmerzen.	<i>bouH-shmeR-tsuhn</i>	stomachache.
Ich habe	<i>iH hah-buh</i>	I have a
Zahnschmerzen.	<i>tsahn-shmeR-tsuhn</i>	toothache.
Ich habe	<i>iH hah-buh</i>	I have a
Kopfschmerzen.	<i>kopf-shmeR-tsuhn</i>	headache.

Maybe your traveling companion was the one dumb enough to stay up all night drinking round after round of German beer on an empty stomach. To speak about someone else’s pains, conjugate the verb *haben*:

Er hat	<i>eR hAt</i>	He has a sore
Halsschmerzen.	<i>hAls-shmeR-tsuhn</i>	throat.

Another way of talking about your symptoms is by using the expression *weh tun* (*vey tewn*)—“to hurt”—which is a dative expression, requiring an indirect object pronoun (dative personal pronoun). Before you learn how to use this expression, familiarize yourself with the very strong verb *tun* (*toon*) “to do.”

Person	Singular	English	Plural	English
First	ich tue <i>iH tew-uh</i>	I do	wir tun <i>veeR tewn</i>	we do
Second	du tust <i>dew tewst</i>	you do	ihr tut <i>eeR tewt</i>	you do

continues

Person	Singular	English	Plural	English
(Formal)	Sie tun <i>zee tewn</i>	you do	Sie tun <i>zee tewn</i>	
Third	er, sie, es tut <i>er, zee, es tewt</i>	he, she, it does	sie tun <i>zee tewn</i>	they do

The basic formula you will need to create a sentence using the expression *weh tun* is as follows:

Body part + conjugated form of *tun* + indirect object pronoun + *weh*

Your indirect object pronoun must agree with the subject. Here's a review of the indirect object pronouns you learned in Chapter 18, "Shop Till You Drop."

Dative Pronouns	English	Dative Pronouns	English
mir	to me	uns	to us
dir	to you	euch	to you
Ihnen	to you	Ihnen	to you
ihm, ihr, ihm	to him, to her, to it	ihnen	to them

Examples:

Der Fuß tut mir weh.

deyR fews tewt meeR vey

My foot hurts me.



As a Rule

The order of the words in sentences that use *weh tun* can change without altering the meaning of the sentence. The subject remains "marked" as such in the nominative case:

Mir tut der Fuß weh.

Der Fuß tut mir weh.

More Symptoms

You may need to come up with something more specific than a vague ache or pain to give your doctor a shot at curing you. Consult the following table for specific symptoms.

Other Symptoms

German	Pronunciation	English
das Fieber	<i>dAs fee-buhR</i>	fever
der Schüttelfrost	<i>deyR shüü-tuhl-fRost</i>	chills
der (Haut)Ausschlag	<i>deyR (hout)ous-shlahk</i>	rash
der Absess	<i>deyR Ap-ses</i>	abscess
der blaue Fleck	<i>deyR blou-uh flek</i>	bruise
der Durchfall	<i>deyR dooRCH-fAl</i>	diarrhea
der gebrochene Knochen	<i>deyR ge-bRo-Huh-nuh kno-Huhn</i>	broken bone
der Husten	<i>deyR hew-stuhn</i>	cough
der Knoten	<i>deyR knoh-tuhn</i>	lump
der Krampf	<i>deyR kRAmpf</i>	cramps
der Schmerz	<i>deyR shmeRts</i>	pain
die Beule	<i>dee boy-luh</i>	bump
die Blase	<i>dee blah-zuh</i>	blister
die Magenverstimmung	<i>dee mah-guhn-feR-shti-moonk</i>	indigestion

Hatten Sie jemals ...?

hA-tuhn zee ye-y-mAls

Have you ever had ...?

Haben Sie eine Krankenversicherung?

hah-buhn zee ay-nuh kRAAn-kuhn-feR-zi-Huh-Roong

Do you have health insurance?

Leiden Sie unter ...?

lay-duhn zee oon-tuhR

Do you suffer from ...?

What's Wrong?

After your visit to the doctor, you may want to call your friends and relatives and give them a detailed description of your illness. Most maladies can be expressed with the verb *haben*. Here's the basic formula:

Subject pronoun + conjugated form of *haben* + (indefinite article) noun

Common Nouns Used for Expressing Sickneses

German	Pronunciation	English
das Asthma	<i>dAs Ast-mah</i>	asthma
der Herzinfarkt	<i>deyR heRts-in-fARkt</i>	heart attack
der Krebs	<i>deyR kReyps</i>	cancer
der Schlaganfall	<i>deyR shlahk-An-fAl</i>	stroke
der Sonnenstich	<i>deyR zo-nuhn-shtiH</i>	sunstroke
die Angina	<i>dee An-gee-nah</i>	angina
die Bauchschmerzen	<i>dee bouCH-shmeR-tsuhn</i>	stomachache
die Blinddarmentzündung	<i>dee blint-dahRm-ent-tsün-doong</i>	appendicitis
die Bronchitis	<i>dee bRon-Hee-tis</i>	bronchitis
die Erkältung	<i>dee eR-käl-toong</i>	cold
die Erschöpfung	<i>dee eR-shö-pfoong</i>	exhaustion
die Gicht	<i>dee giHt</i>	gout
die Grippe	<i>dee gRi-puh</i>	flu
die Kinderlähmung	<i>dee kin-deR-ley-moong</i>	poliomyelitis
die Kopfschmerzen	<i>dee kopf-shmeR-tsuhn</i>	headache
die Leberentzündung	<i>dee ley-beyR-ent-tsün-doong</i>	hepatitis
die Lungenentzündung	<i>dee loon-guhn-ent-tsün-doong</i>	pneumonia
die Masern (pl.)	<i>dee mah-zuhRn</i>	measles
die Windpocken	<i>dee vint-po-kuhn</i>	chicken pox
die Röteln	<i>dee Röh-tuhln</i>	German measles

You may also hear the following expressions. They take the verb *sein*, followed by an adjective.

German	Pronunciation	English
Ich bin erkältet.	<i>iH bin eR-käl-tuht</i>	I have a cold.
Ich bin krank.	<i>iH bin kRArk</i>	I'm sick.

Doctor, Doctor

You've been beleaguered by a series of illnesses. Use what you've learned to express your symptoms to a doctor.

Example: a toothache

Answer: Ich habe Zahnschmerzen.

1. a cold
2. a cough
3. a headache
4. a stomachache
5. a blister
6. a fever

How Long Have You Felt This Way?

One question a nurse or doctor will ask is, *Seit wann haben Sie diese Krankheit* (zayt vAn hah-buhn zee dee-zuh kRAnk-hayt)? or "How long have you had this illness?" The doctor may also ask: *Wie lange haben Sie diese Beschwerden schon* (vee lAn-guh hah-buhn zee dee-zuh buh-shveR-duhn shon)? or "How long have you had these problems?" Answer either of these questions with the following construction:

Seit + amount of time you've been sick

Don't forget that the prepositional phrase following the preposition *seit* is a dative preposition and always requires the dative case.

Example:

Seit einer Woche.

zayt ay-nuhR vo-Huh

For a week.

Seit einem Tag.

Zayt ay-nuhm tahk

For a day.



Culture Shock

When you travel in Germany, try to get sick during business hours weekdays. You will find that Pharmacies, *die Apotheken* (*dee ah-poh-tay-kuhn*), are open anywhere from 8:00 A.M. to 7:00 P.M. Monday through Friday and until 2:00 P.M. on Saturday, depending on the region and the size of the city. Don't confuse pharmacies with *die Drogerien* (*dee dRoh-guhR-eeuhn*), which are similar to American drugstores. German pharmacists will give you helpful advice (free!) and often refer you to a doctor.

If the aches and pains you're experiencing are too minor to merit the attention of a doctor—say, you have a headache, a sore throat, or a hangover—you'll probably want to try a little self-care. Why not visit your local *Apotheke* (*ah-poh-tekuh*), or “pharmacy”?

From Finding Drugs to Finding Toothpaste

Whether you're looking for medication or a can of hair spray, you want to be sure you're looking in the right place. You can find most of the items listed in the following table in either a *Drogerie*, “superstore,” or one of the smaller supermarkets in Germany.

Drugstore Items

German	Pronunciation	English
das (milde) Abführmittel	<i>dAs (mil-duh) Ap-fühR-mi-tuhl</i>	laxative (mild)
das Asperin	<i>dAs As-pey-Reen</i>	aspirin
das Deodorant	<i>dAs dey-oh-doh-RAnt</i>	deodorant
das Enthaarungswachs	<i>dAs ent-hah-Roonks-vAks</i>	depilatory wax
das Heizkissen	<i>dAs hayts-ki-suhn</i>	heating pad
das Körpertonikum	<i>dAs köR-peR-pew-duhR</i>	talcum powder
das Mundwasser	<i>dAs moont-vA-suhR</i>	mouthwash
das Shampoo	<i>dAS shAm-pew</i>	shampoo
das Thermometer	<i>dAs teR-moh-mey-tuhR</i>	thermometer
der (elektrische) Rasierer	<i>deyR (ey-lek-tRi-shuh) Rah-zee-RuhR</i>	razor (electric)
der Alkohol	<i>deyR Al-koh-hohl</i>	alcohol
der Eisbeutel	<i>deyR ays-boy-tuhl</i>	ice pack
der Erste-Hilfe-Kasten	<i>deyR eR-stuh-hil-fuh-kA-stuhn</i>	first-aid kit
der Hustensaft	<i>deyR hew-stuhn-sAft</i>	cough syrup
der Kamm	<i>deyR kAm</i>	brush
der Schnuller	<i>deyR shnoo-luhR</i>	pacifier
der Spiegel	<i>deyR shpee-guhl</i>	mirror
die Aknemedizin	<i>dee Ak-nuh-mey-dee-tseen</i>	acne medicine
die Augentropfen	<i>dee ou-guhn-tRo-pfuhn</i>	eye drops
die Enthaarungscreme	<i>dee ent-hah-roonks-kReym</i>	depilatory cream
die Feuchtigkeitscreme	<i>dee foyH-tiH-kayts-kreym</i>	moisturizer
die Flasche	<i>dee flA-shuh</i>	bottle
die Heftpflaster	<i>dee heft-pflA-stuhR</i>	Band-Aids
die Hustenbonbons	<i>dee hew-stuhn-bon-bons</i>	cough drops
die Kondome	<i>dee kon-doh-muh</i>	condoms

German	Pronunciation	English
ein (Magen)Säure ein neutralisierendes Mittel	<i>ayn (mah-guhn)zoy-Ruh noy-tRah-lee-zee-Ren-duhs mi-tuhl</i>	an antacid
die Mullbinde	<i>dee mool-bin-duh</i>	gauze bandage
die Nagelfeile	<i>dee nah-guhl-fay-luh</i>	nail file
die Nasentropfen	<i>dee nah-zuhn-tRo-pfuhn</i>	nose drops
die Pinzette	<i>dee pin-tse-tuh</i>	tweezers
die Rasiercreme	<i>dee Rah-zeeR-kReym</i>	shaving cream
die Rasierklinge	<i>dee Rah-zeeR-klin-guh</i>	razor blade
die Schere	<i>dee shey-ruh</i>	scissors
die Schlaftabletten	<i>dee shlahf-tA-ble-tuhn</i>	sleeping pills
die Sicherheitsnadeln	<i>dee zi-HuhR-hayts-nah-duhln</i>	safety pins
die Taschentücher	<i>dee tA-shuhn-tüh-HuhR</i>	tissues
die Vitamine	<i>dee vee-tah-mee-nuh</i>	vitamins
die Watte	<i>dee vA-tuh</i>	cotton
die Wattestäbchen	<i>dee vA-tuh-shtäp-Huhn</i>	cotton swabs
die Windeln	<i>dee vin-duhln</i>	diapers
die Zahnbürste	<i>dee tsahn-büR-stuh</i>	toothbrush

Special Needs

Did you break your leg skiing? Do you need a wheelchair? Many pharmacies in Germany specialize in medical appliances. The following table details items you may need if you are temporarily or permanently physically challenged. Start by asking the pharmacist:

Wo kann ich ein(-e, -en) ... bekommen?

vo kAn iH ayn(-uh, -uhn) ... buh-ko-muhn

Where can I get ...?

Special Needs

German	Pronunciation	English
der (Spazier)Stock	<i>deyR (shpah-tseeR)shtok</i>	cane
die Krücken	<i>dee kRü-kuhn</i>	crutches
das Hörgerät	<i>dAs höR-guh-Räht</i>	hearing aid
der Rollstuhl	<i>deyR Rol-shtewl</i>	wheelchair
die Gehhilfe	<i>dee gey-hil-fuh</i>	walker



What's What?

Reflexive verb A verb that always takes a reflexive pronoun because the action of the verb reflects back on the subject of the sentence.

Reflexive pronoun A pronoun that forms a part of a reflexive verb in which the action refers back to the subject.

Have It on Hand

Imagine that you rent a small apartment in Düsseldorf. Which items do you need to ensure that you have a well-stocked medicine cabinet?

Example: to freshen breath

Answer: Ich brauche Mundwasser.

1. for headaches
2. when you break your foot
3. for minor cuts and burns
4. to blow your nose
5. when you can't sleep
6. when you have a cough
7. when you need to shave
8. when you can't sleep
9. when you get a hang nail

What Are You Doing to Yourself?

To express how you feel, use the *reflexive verb sich fühlen*. The *sich* in front of this verb is known as a *reflexive pronoun* because it refers back to the subject. In other words, the action performed “reflects back” onto the subject performing the action. The following table shows you how to conjugate the reflexive verb *sich fühlen*, using the correct reflexive pronouns (remember, in the infinitive form, reflexive verbs always take the reflexive pronoun *sich*).

The Verb Sich Fühlen

Person	Singular	English	Plural	English
First	ich fühle mich <i>iH füh-luh miH</i>	I feel	wir fühlen uns <i>veeR füh-luhn oonts</i>	we feel
Second	du fühlst dich <i>dew fühlst dich</i>	you feel	ihr fühlt euch <i>eeR fühlt oyH</i>	you feel
(Formal)	Sie fühlen sich <i>zee füh-luhn ziH</i>		Sie fühlen sich <i>zee füh-luhn ziH</i>	
Third	er, sie, es fühlt sich <i>eR, zee, es fühlts ziH</i>	he, she, it feels	sie fühlen sich <i>zee füh-luhn ziH</i>	they feel

Flex Your Reflexive Verbs

Reflexive pronouns show that a subject is performing the action of the verb on itself. In other words, the subject and the reflexive pronoun both refer to the same person(s) or thing(s); for example, “he hurt himself” and “we enjoyed ourselves.” The following table shows reflexive pronouns as they should appear with their reflexive verbs in both the dative and in the accusative. You’ll notice that the only thing new under the sun is the appearance of *sich*, which actually simplifies matters, as the third-person singular and plural (and formal, of course) in both the accusative and dative is the same—*sich*!

Accusative and Dative Reflexive Pronouns

Accusative			Dative		
Pronouns	Pronunciation	English	Pronouns	Pronunciation	English
mich	<i>miH</i>	myself	mir	<i>meeR</i>	for myself
dich	<i>diH</i>	yourself	dir	<i>deeR</i>	for yourself
sich (formal)	<i>ziH</i>	yourself (formal)	sich	<i>ziH</i>	yourself (formal)
uns	<i>oons</i>	ourselves	uns	<i>oons</i>	for ourselves
euch	<i>oyH</i>	yourselves	euch	<i>oyH</i>	for yourselves
sich	<i>ziH</i>	themselves	sich	<i>ziH</i>	for themselves
sich (formal)	<i>ziH</i>	themselves (formal)	sich	<i>ziH</i>	for themselves (formal)

Compare the pronouns in the following sentences:

1. Sie fühlt sich schlecht.
zee füHlt ziH shleHt
 She feels bad.
2. Du kaufst dir ein Medikament.
dew koufst deeR ayn me-dee-kah-ment
 You buy yourself medicine.

Do you see the difference? The second-person singular reflexive pronoun (it’s a mouthful, but there’s no other way of putting it) in the first sentence appears in the accusative case. Why? Because in the first sentence, the reflexive pronoun serves as a direct object. The second-person singular reflexive pronoun in the second sentence appears in the dative case. In the second sentence, the pronoun serves as an indirect object because the verb is acting upon a direct object—it’s being bought.

Now, using what you've learned about reflexive pronouns and about the verb *sich fühlen*, you should be able to express how you and others feel:

Ich fühle mich schlecht.

iH fuh-luh miH shleHt

I feel bad.

Ihr fühlt euch gut.

eeR fuhlt oyH gewt

They feel good.

Reflexive or Not?

You can't always tell from the English verb whether the German verb will be reflexive. So your best bet is simply to learn the common reflexive verbs in German.

Common Reflexive Verbs

German	Pronunciation	English
sich entspannen	<i>ziH ent-shpA-nuhn</i>	to relax (oneself)
sich erholen	<i>ziH eyR-hoh-luhn</i>	to recuperate (oneself)
sich verletzen	<i>ziH feyR-le-tsuhn</i>	to injure (oneself)
sich waschen*	<i>ziH vA-shuhn</i>	to wash (oneself)
sich setzen	<i>ziH ze-tsuhn</i>	to sit (oneself) down
sich treffen*	<i>ziH tRe-fuhn</i>	to meet (each other)
sich anmelden ^s	<i>ziH An-mel-duhn</i>	to sign (oneself) up
sich anziehen ^s	<i>ziH An-zee-uhn</i>	to dress (oneself)
sich ankleiden ^s	<i>ziH An-klay-duhn</i>	to dress (oneself)
sich ausziehen ^s	<i>ziH ous-tsee-uhn</i>	to undress (oneself)
sich umziehen ^s	<i>ziH oom-tsee-uhn</i>	to change (oneself)
sich rasieren	<i>ziH Rah-zee-Ruhn</i>	to shave (oneself)

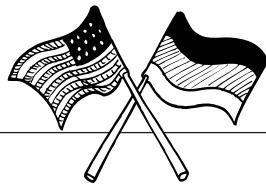
*denotes a very strong verb, incurring a stem-vowel change in the present tense: *waschen* → *wäscht*; *treffen* → *trifft*

^sdenotes a separable prefix verb

Reflexive Verbs in Action

Use what you've learned about reflexive verbs to describe all the different things you must do to yourself before leaving your hotel room in the morning. Then talk about the things you do before going to bed at night.

1. sich anziehen
2. sich rasieren
3. sich waschen
4. sich ausziehen
5. sich hinlegen



We Are Family

Forming reflexive pronouns by combining *-self* with the personal pronoun began in Middle English (1110–1500 C.E.) and became more frequent subsequently. However, the older (Germanic) practice of using the simple object form of the pronoun as a reflexive also continued for quite a while.

Commanding Reflexively

When you use reflexive verbs to tell your husband to shave or to tell your children to wash their hands before dinner, the reflexive pronoun usually comes at the end of the sentence unless the reflexive verb has a separable prefix or you have an object or adverb in the command. Remember, when you use the formal second-person singular or plural, you must always include *Sie* as part of the command:

Verletz dich nicht!	<i>feyR-letst diH niHt</i>	Don't hurt yourself!
Waschen Sie sich!	<i>vA-shun zee ziH</i>	Wash yourself!
Wascht euch!	<i>vAsht oyH</i>	Wash yourselves!
Zieh(e) dich an!	<i>tsee(-huh) diH An</i>	Get dressed!

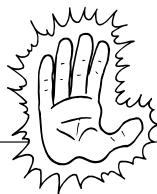


As a Rule

The reflexive pronoun usually follows the conjugated verb:

Ich wasche mich.

Sie interessiert sich für Fußball.



Achtung

When reflexive verbs are used in German, the reflexive pronoun must be stated. (In many cases the reflexive pronoun can be omitted in English, as in the sentence "I shaved before going to the wedding.")

Be Bossy

You're traveling with a group of friends, and you're all getting ready to go out, to go nuts, to paint the town red (and blue and green and orange). Practice using reflexive verbs by telling a friend (and then two or more friends) to do and then not to do the following:

1. to wash oneself
2. to change
3. to shave
4. to sit down

The Least You Need to Know

- If you become ill in a German-speaking country, your recovery will be a lot easier if you know how to express your symptoms correctly.
- You can express illness in various ways. For starters, use the conjugated form of the verb *haben* + the body part that hurts + the ending *-schmerzen*. Alternatively, use the expression *weh tun*.
- Reflexive pronouns show that the action of reflexive verbs reflects back on the subject of the sentence.



I Think I Forgot Something

In This Chapter

- Using the present perfect
- All about the helping verbs *haben* and *sein*
- Asking questions and giving answers in the past tense

So far, you've been navigating through Deutschland in the present tense. Imagine now that, after purchasing the items you need for a well-stocked medicine cabinet in Chapter 23, "What Does the Doctor Recommend?" you walk out of the pharmacy without taking the bag filled with items you've already paid for. You don't realize that the bag is missing until a taxi has driven you halfway home. What do you do now?

Are You Living in the Past?

You must, of course, go back to the pharmacy and tell the person behind the counter (someone new—the person who was there earlier has stepped out for lunch) what happened. To do so, you will have to talk about the past, known in German as *die Vergangenheit* (*dee feR-gAn-gen-hayt*).

You can speak in the past tense in various ways. In English, for example, you can say, "I went to the store." In German, this tense is referred to as *das Präteritum* (*dAs pRä-tey-Ree-toom*), or the simple past, so simple it needs only one verb form to express it. You also can say, "I have gone to the store." This tense is referred to as *das Perfekt* (*dAs peR-fekt*), or the present-perfect tense. When you say, "I had gone to the store," you

are speaking in the past in yet another way, referred to as *das Plusquamperfekt* (*dAs ploos-kvahm-peR-fekt*) or the past perfect tense. This chapter focuses on the formation of *das Perfekt*, the most common way of speaking in the past in German.

Strong Verbs

You already have a head start on the formation of the perfect tense in German. English and German form the perfect tense in much the same way. Both languages use an *auxiliary* or helping verb (*have/haben*) with the past participle to form the present-perfect tense: I have bought/*ich habe gekauft*. The only hitch is that some verbs in German use the verb “to be” (*sein*) as an auxiliary: *Ich bin gegangen* (“I have gone”). Here’s the basic formula for forming the *Perfekt*:

Subject + the conjugated form of *sein* or *haben* in the present + past participle

The important thing to remember is that after you learn how to form the past participle, you won’t have any trouble speaking in the past. The past participle never changes. Only the auxiliary verbs *haben* and *sein* change to agree with the subject. So how is the past participle formed? Most past participles take *ge-* at the beginning of the verb (when you’re dealing with verbs with separable prefixes, however, the *ge-* comes after the separable prefix in the formation of the past participle).



What's What?

Auxiliary verb is a verb that serves as the specifier of the main verb—it *helps* the main verb. In the case of the German *Perfekt* tense, the auxiliary verb enables the main verb to pop up in its past participial form at the end of the phrase: *Paul hat mich nicht geliebt*.

All strong verbs have a past participle ending in *-en*, as do some in English, such as *taken*, *eaten*, or *spoken*. Do you remember strong verbs from Chapter 9, “Click Your Heels Together and Say: There’s No Place Like Deutschland”? The main difference between strong and weak verbs is that strong verbs have a vowel change in one of their principal parts. If they’re very strong (*sehr stark*), they incur a change already in the third-person singular, present; if they’re merely *stark*, the change comes out in the simple past and the past participle forms. English verbs follow this pattern, too: *sing, sang, sung* (in German, *singen, sang, gesungen*). Think of strong verbs as verbs so stubborn that they insist on having their own way. Although these verbs follow certain patterns of vowel changes, it would probably take you longer to memorize the patterns than to memorize the past participle for the strong verbs you use. Our advice? Start memorizing. In the following list, *hat* means that the auxiliary verb is *haben* and *ist* means that it is *sein*.

Infinitive	Third-Person Sing. + Past Participle	Pronunciation	English Past Participle
backen ^s	hat gebacken	<i>hAt guh-bA-kuhn</i>	to bake
bleiben	ist geblieben	<i>ist guh-blee-buhn</i>	to stay
genießen	hat genossen	<i>hAt guh-no-suhn</i>	to enjoy
fahren ^s	ist gefahren	<i>ist guh-fah-Ruhn</i>	to drive
heben	hat gehoben	<i>hAt guh-hoh-buhn</i>	to lift, to raise
tun	hat getan	<i>hAt guh-tahn</i>	to do
gehen	ist gegangen	<i>ist guh-gAn-guhn</i>	to go
laufen ^s	ist gelaufen	<i>ist guh-lou-fuhn</i>	to run, to walk
nehmen ^s	hat genommen	<i>hAt guh-noh-muhn</i>	to take

^sdenotes a very strong verb that takes a vowel change in the second- and third-person singular

In the following sentences, two verbs from the list are used along with the conjugated auxiliary verb *haben* or *sein* to form sentences in the *Perfekt*.

Sie hat ihre Schlaftabletten genommen.
zee hAt ee-Ruh shlAf-tAb-le-tuhn guh-no-muhn

She took her sleeping pills.

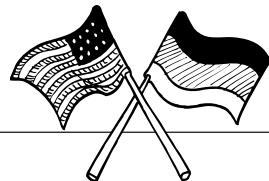
Du bist zur Drogerie gegangen.
dew bist tsoor dRoh-guh-Ree guh-gAn-guhn

You have gone to the drugstore.

As you can see, to form the *Perfekt* with strong verbs, all you have to do is conjugate *haben/sein* correctly and add *ge-* to the beginning of the strong verb in its altered past-participle form. Yes, that form is not highly predictable and needs to be learned by rote. At least you can anticipate that the past participle form of a strong verb will end in *-en!*

Forming the Past Participle with Weak Verbs

The difference between the formation of the *Perfekt* with strong and weak verbs is that the past participles of weak verbs end in *-t*, resembling the English dental suffix *-ed*. For this reason, when you are forming a past participle, you need to know whether the verb is weak or strong. *Gegangen* is a



We Are Family

Believe it or not, all stem-vowel changes in both English and German can be traced to a stage in Germanic that had seven distinct verb "classes." Verbs within each class followed a pattern of ablaut- vowel sound change according to their phonetic properties. As an example, let's consider the present-day German verb *nehmen* ("to take"). This verb was part of verb class IV, as it contained (and still does!) a simple *l*, *r*, or *m* sound. Hence its sound-change pattern was *e, i, a, o → nehmen, nimmt, nahm, hat genommen*.

strong verb. Giving it the weak verb ending *-t* in the past participle (resulting in the unfortunately ungrammatical *Ich habe gegangt*) would be as incorrect as saying “I have went” in English.

Weak verbs were discussed in Chapter 9. Weak verbs, when conjugated, follow a set pattern of rules and retain the same stem vowel throughout the conjugation. That is to say, add a *ge-* prefix to the *stem* (infinitive minus final *-en*) and a *-t* suffix. After you come up with the past participle, just plug it into the same formula:

Subject (noun or pronoun) + the conjugated form of *sein* or *haben* in the present tense + past participle

Here are some common weak verbs and their past participles:

Infinitive	Third-Person Sing. + Past Participle	Pronunciation	English Past Participle
antworten	hat geantwortet	<i>hAt guh-Ant-voR-tuht</i>	to answer
arbeiten	hat gearbeitet	<i>hAt guh-AR-bay-tuht</i>	to work
gebrauchen	hat gebraucht	<i>hAt guh-bRouCHt</i>	to use
kosten	hat gekostet	<i>hAt guh-kos-tuht</i>	to cost, to taste
lehren	hat gelehrt	<i>hAt guh-leyRt</i>	to teach
spazieren	ist spaziert	<i>ist shpAt-seeRt</i>	to walk
studieren (oh-la-la)	hat studiert	<i>hAt shtew- deeRt</i>	to study
trauen	hat getraut	<i>hAt guh-tRouCHt</i>	to trust, to dare, to marry
träumen	hat geträumt	<i>hAt guh-tRoymt</i>	to dream
versuchen	hat versucht	<i>hAt feR-sooHt</i>	to try

What in the world does “oh-la-la” after the verb *studieren* mean? Why, that German verbs that end in *-ieren* are of French origin, of course! Thus, they are a bit resistant to totally resembling a German past participle, and although they will accept the *-t* suffix, they will not accept the *ge-* prefix. Oh! And what does “NS” above *versuchen* mean? Only that *ver-* is an inseparable prefix and thus will not tolerate a *ge-* prefix, either.

Forming the Past Participle with Mixed Verbs

The final German verb type is known as “mixed” because, like a codependent couple, these verbs share both strong and weak tendencies. Mixed verbs add the *-t* ending to form their past participle, just as weak verbs do, but—like strong verbs—the stem vowel of the infinitive changes in the past tense. Here is a list of the infinitives and past participles of some common mixed verbs.

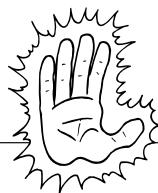
Infinitive	Third-Person Sing. + Past Participle	Pronunciation	English Past Participle
brennen	hat gebrannt	hAt guh-bRAnt	to burn
bringen	hat gebracht	hAt guh-bRACHt	to bring
denken	hat gedacht	hAt guh-dACHt	to think
kennen	hat gekannt	hAt guh-kAnt	to know
nennen	hat genannt	hAt guh-nAnt	to name
rennen	ist gerannt	ist guh-RAnt	to run
senden	hat gesandt	hAt guh-zAnt	to send
wenden	hat gewandt	hAt guh-vAnt	to turn
wissen	hat gewußt	hAt guh-voost	to know

Using *Sein* in the Perfekt

The present perfect tense in German is made up of the present tense of the auxiliary *haben* or *sein* and the past participle of the verb. As most verbs are *transitive*, that is to say, they can take a direct object, *haben* is used very frequently in the formation of the *Perfekt*. Some verbs, however, use *sein* instead of *haben* as an auxiliary in the present perfect (you are already familiar with some of them). Verbs that take *sein* are *intransitive verbs* that almost always express motion (or a change of condition). Familiarize yourself with the past participles of the most commonly used of these verbs.

Infinitive	Third-Person Sing. + Past Participle	Pronunciation	English Past Participle
sein	ist gewesen	ist guh-vey-suhn	to be
werden	ist geworden	ist guh-voR-duhn	to become
bleiben	ist geblieben	ist guh-bliebuhn	to stay
kommen	ist gekommen	ist guh-ko-muhn	to come
gehen	ist gegangen	ist guh-gAn-guhn	to go
reisen	ist gereist	ist guh-Rayst	to travel
wandern	ist gewandert	ist guh-vAn-duhRt	to hike, to wander
laufen ^s	ist gelaufen	ist guh-lou-fuhn	to run
sterben ^s	ist gestorben	ist guh-shtoR-buhn	to die
steigen	ist gestiegen	ist guh-shtee-guhn	to climb

^sdenotes a very strong verb that incurs a sound change in the second- and third-person singular present tense



Achtung

Make sure you send that past participle (your *ge-* form) to the end of the sentence. Make them wait for the verb! After all, you've already given your listener a conjugated helping verb next to the subject. And patience is a virtue! *Ich habe von einem Elefant mit einer Maus auf seinem Rücken geträumt.*

Now try to explain to someone how you happened to leave your purchases behind.

Example: Ich _____ zur Drogerie _____ (kommen).

Answer: Ich bin zur Drogerie gekommen.

1. Ich _____ in die Drogerie _____ (gehen).
2. Ich _____ Aspirin und Rasiercreme aus dem Regal _____ (nehmen).
3. Ich _____ meine Einkäufe zur Kasse _____ (bringen).
4. Ich _____ der Kassiererin _____ (antworten).
5. Ich _____ nicht an meine Einkaufstasche _____ (denken).

Don't Put Off Till Tomorrow What You Didn't Do Yesterday

As a general rule, when you say no in the past, *nicht* comes after the auxiliary verb *sein*. With verbs that take *haben*, *nicht* comes after the direct object. *Nicht* always precedes the past participle.



What's What?

Intransitive verbs—The category of verbs that do not take a direct object.

Transitive verbs—The category of verb that can take a direct object.

Ich bin nicht in die Drogerie gegangen.

iH bin niHt in dee dRoh-guh-Ree guh-gAn-guhn
I did not go to the drugstore.

Ich habe meine Vitamine nicht genommen.

iH hah-buh may-nuh vee-tah-mee-nuh niHt guh-no-muhn

I did not take my vitamins.

Sie hat das Rezept nicht gelesen.

zee hAt dAs Rey-tsept niHt gey-ley-suhn
She did not read the prescription.

Er ist nicht nach Hause gefahren.

eR ist niHt nACH Hou-zuh guh-fah-Ruhn
He did not drive home.

Did You or Didn't You?

Sometimes it seems like there just aren't enough hours in the day! Want to get depressed? When you get home this evening, try counting off the things you weren't able to get done and the stuff you didn't remember to buy. Explain what you and your friends didn't manage to get done today in the following exercise.

Example: (ich/die Blumen kaufen)

Answer: Ich habe die Blumen nicht gekauft.

1. du/ins Museum gehen
2. er/den Brief schicken
3. sie zum Friseur gehen
4. Sie/den Anruf machen
5. wir/den Film sehen

Forming a Question in the Past

In case you're afraid that you are going to have to learn something entirely new to form questions in the past tense, don't be: You can use intonation. To ask a question, just speak with a rising inflection.

Du hast an die Reise gedacht?

Dew hAst An dee Ray-suh gu-dACHt

Have you thought about the trip?

Another way of asking questions is by adding the word *oder* (*oh-duhR*) or the phrase *nicht wahr* (*niHt vahR*) to the end of your statements:

Du hast an die Reise gedacht, oder?

Dew hAst An dee Ray-suh gu-dACHt, oh-duhR

You have thought about the trip, right?

Du hast an die Reise gedacht, nicht wahr?

Dew hAst An dee Ray-suh gu-dACHt, niHt vahR

You have thought about the trip, haven't you?

The most common way of forming questions is by reversing the word order of the subject nouns or pronouns and the conjugated form of the verb (this change is called *inversion*):

Du bist nach Hause gegangen.

Bist du nach Hause gegangen?

Answering a Question Negatively in the Past

Are you in a disagreeable mood? To answer negatively, use *nein* (*nayn*) at the beginning of the statement and then follow the auxiliary verb with *nicht* (*niHt*). Remember, both questions and answers in the past usually end with the past participle.

Haben Sie geraucht?

hah-buhn zee guh-RouCHt

Nein, ich habe nicht geraucht.

nayn, iH hah-buh niHt guh-RouCHt

When the action of the verb is referring to a thing, you can use the expression *kein* to give a negative answer in the past: *Ich habe kein Fleisch gegessen* ("I ate no meat").

Ask Questions

Why was the party so bad? Why did the plane refuel? Why did your mother say what she said? Why did so-and-so lose his job? Never mind that it's none of your business. Form negative and affirmative questions in the past out of the following sentences.

Example: Du bist nach Berlin gefahren.

Answers: Bist du nach Berlin gefahren?

Bist du nicht nach Berlin gefahren?

1. Ihr seid zum Friseur gegangen.
2. Sie haben den Hustensaft getrunken.
3. Du hast an die Einkaufstasche gedacht.
4. Almut hat geraucht.

The Least You Need to Know

- You can form the past tense by using the auxiliary verb *haben* or *sein* and a past participle.
- To speak in the present-perfect tense (in German, *das Perfekt*), use the following formula: subject + conjugated present tense (*das Präsens*) of *haben* or *sein* + past participle.
- To ask questions in the past tense in German, use intonation, add the tag *oder* or *nicht wahr* to the end of the statement, or use inversion.

Part 6

When in Germany, Do As the Germans Do!

You may decide that the German life is for you. Learn how to communicate via old reliable snail mail and telephone, or jazz it up to e-mail and faxing so that you can find a place to live—be it a room in a boarding house or a castle in the Alps—and how to pay for it!





Getting Your Message Across

In This Chapter

- How to make a phone call
- Proper phone behavior
- What to say if there's a problem
- How to use reflexive verbs in the past tense
- Faxing and e-mailing in German

You're feeling better than you have in a long time. Your headache is gone, thanks to the aspirin you retrieved in the preceding chapter. Now you're ready to do the one thing you've been postponing since you arrived at your hotel: calling the folks back home.

Readers used to the American phone system will find calling home from Germany a challenge. First you have to purchase a phone card (which means finding a post office) because most phone booths (small yellow glass booths every few blocks on city streets) no longer accept coins. Then you have to figure out whether to lift the receiver first or to insert the phone card first. You'll probably find yourself needing operator assistance even to make a local call, and calling long distance can be quite an adventure until you get the hang of it. This chapter teaches you how to place a local or international call from Germany, Switzerland, or Austria and how to deal with wrong numbers and other problems you may encounter when dealing with the phone system. Along the way, you'll also learn about using reflexive verbs in the past tense.

How the @!#%*! Do I Use This Thing?

Before you even get near a phone booth, be prepared for something new. Expect the procedure you will use to make local and long-distance calls to be a challenge. The best-case scenario really would be for you to find someone to show you how, but if you are truly alone, read the instructions in the phone booth carefully. If you need to make an operator-assisted call, you'll have to learn to identify the type of call you're trying to make. The following table lists your options.

Types of Phone Calls

German	Pronunciation	English
das Auslandsgespräch	<i>dAs ous-lAnts-ge-shpRähH</i>	out-of-the-country call
das Ferngespräch	<i>dAs feRn-ge-shpRähH</i>	long-distance call
das Ortsgespräch	<i>dAs oRts-ge-shpRähH</i>	local call
das R-Gespräch	<i>dAs eR-ge-shpRähH</i>	collect call

Your Basic German Telephone

Perhaps you're lucky enough to have a German friend explain the whole procedure of making a long-distance call to you before you even step into a phone booth. To be able to understand what she's saying, you'll have to familiarize yourself with the parts of a German phone and these other helpful words.

The Telephone (das Telefon)

German	Pronunciation	English
das öffentliche Telefon	<i>dAs ö-fent-li-Huhn</i> <i>tey-ley-fohn</i>	public phone
das Telefon	<i>dAs tey-ley-fohn</i>	telephone
das Telefonbuch	<i>dAs tey-ley-fohn-bewCH</i>	telephone book
das tragbare (schnurlose)	<i>dAs tRahk-bah-Ruh</i> <i>(shnooR-loh-zuh)</i>	cordless phone
Telefon	<i>tey-ley-fohn</i>	(portable phone)
der Anrufbeantworter	<i>deyR An-Rewf-be-Ant-vohR-tuhR</i>	answering machine
der Lautsprecher	<i>deyR lout-shpRe-HuhR</i>	speaker telephone
der Münzeinwurf	<i>deyR münts-ayn-vewRf</i>	slot
der Telefonhörer	<i>deyR tey-ley-fohn-höh-RuhR</i>	receiver
die Auskunft	<i>dee ous-koonft</i>	information

German	Pronunciation	English
die Geldrückgabetaste	<i>dee gelt-Rük-gah-buh-tAs-tuh</i>	coin-return button
die Münzrückgabe	<i>dee münts-Rük-gah-buh</i>	coin-return slot
die Tastatur	<i>dee tA-stah-tewR</i>	keypad
die Telefonkarte	<i>dee tey-ley-fohn-kAR-tuh</i>	phone card
die Telefonnummer	<i>dee tey-ley-fohn-noo-muhR</i>	telephone number
die Telefonzelle	<i>dee tey-ley-fohn-tse-luh</i>	booth
die Vermittlung	<i>dee feR-mi-tloong</i>	operator
die Wählscheibe	<i>dee vähl-shay-buh</i>	dial
die Wähltafel	<i>dee vähl-tA-stuh</i>	button

You Need to Know to Make a Call

Germany still has a few public phone booths that accept 10 Pf, 1 DM, and 5 DM coins, but the majority take only phone cards, or *Telefonkarten* (*tey-ley-fohn-kAR-tuh*). In Germany, information for calls is 11833 (Deutsche Telekom) or on the Internet at www.teleauskunft.de. Remember, it's cheaper to make calls on weekends and after 8 P.M.

Now that you know a little bit about placing a phone call in a German-speaking country, there are a few more vocabulary items that might come in handy should an automated recording speak to you or an answering machine pick up on the other end. At the very least, it would be to your advantage to understand that you are being asked to leave a message!

Phoning Vocabulary

German	Pronunciation	English
anrufen ^s	<i>An-Rew-fuhn</i>	to call
der Anrufbeantworter	<i>deyR An-rewf-buh-Ant-woR-tuhR</i>	answering machine
auf ein Amtszeichen	<i>ouf ayn Amts-tsay-Huhn</i>	to wait for the dial tone
warten	<i>vAR-tuhn</i>	
auflegen ^s	<i>ouf-ley-guhn</i>	to hang up (the receiver)
den Hörer abnehmen ^s	<i>deyn höh-RuhR Ap-ney-muhm</i>	to pick up (the receiver)
die Leitung ist besetzt	<i>dee lay-toong ist be-zetst</i>	the line is busy
die Vorwahl kennen	<i>dee foHR-vahl ke-nuhn</i>	to know the area code

continues

Phoning Vocabulary (continued)

German	Pronunciation	English
eine Münze einwerfen ^s	<i>ay-nuh mün-tsuh ayn-veR-fuhn</i>	to insert a coin
eine Nachricht hinterlassen ^s	<i>ay-nuh nACH-RiHt hin-tuhR-lA-suhn</i>	to leave a message
eine Telefonkarte (f.) einführen ^s	<i>ay-nuh tey-ley-fohn-kAR-tuh ayn-füh-Ruhn</i>	to insert the card
mit der Vermittlung sprechen	<i>mit deyR feR-mit-loong shpRe-Huhn</i>	to speak to the operator
telefonieren	<i>tey-ley-foh-nee-Ruhn</i>	to telephone
wählen	<i>väh-luhn</i>	to dial
zurückrufen	<i>tsew-Rük-Rew-fuhn</i>	to call back
das Telefon klingelt	<i>dAs tey-ley-fon klin-guhlt</i>	the phone rings
Auf Wiederhören	<i>ouf-vee-duhR-höh-Ruhn</i>	good-bye (on the phone)

(The verbs with a raised S have separable prefixes.)

Phone Home

You've been trying to make a long-distance call, and you can't get through. The operator asks you what you've been doing, and you explain the problem. Fill in the blanks of the following sentences using the correctly conjugated verb (use what you learned in Chapter 24, "I Think I Forgot Something," about the *Perfekt* to use verbs in the past tense—auxiliary verb + past participle). To form the past participle with verbs with separable prefixes, add *ge-* after the prefix before the stem: *Ich habe meinen Freund angerufen.*

Example: Das Telefon _____ oft _____ (klingeln).

Answer: Das Telefon hat oft geklingelt.

1. Ich _____ den Hörer _____ (abnehmen^s).
2. Ich _____ die Münzen _____ (einwerfen^s).
3. Dann _____ ich die Telefonnummer _____ (wählen).
4. Ich _____ eine Nachricht _____ (hinterlassen^s)
5. Danach _____ ich den Hörer _____ (auflegen).

Who Is This?

You've read the lists, you've memorized the verbs, you've studied the vocabulary. Now, can you put what you've learned into practice? See whether you understand this telephone dialogue between Johannes and Frau Gehring.

Frau Gehring: Gehring, Guten Tag.

Johannes: Hallo, hier ist Johannes. Kann ich bitte Tanja sprechen?

Frau Gehring: Einen Moment, bitte. Es tut mir leid. Sie ist nicht zu Hause.

Johannes: Wann kann ich sie erreichen?

Frau Gehring: Ich weiß nicht, wann sie wiederkommt. Möchtest du eine Nachricht hinterlassen?

Johannes: Nein, danke. Ich rufe später nochmal an. Auf Wiederhören.

Gehring: Auf Wiederhören.



Culture Shock

Calling long distance from a hotel is much more expensive than calling from a phone booth. Long-distance phone calls can be made from most phone booths in Germany, Switzerland, and Austria (you should look for the sign Ausland/International near the phone). The most economical way to make a call is to purchase a phone card (these can be purchased at a post office). The magnetic strip, similar to the strip on credit cards, will enable you to use phone booths all over. To make an international call, dial 00 + the country code + the area code + the phone number of the person you are trying to reach. You'll see the area codes for local numbers on the sign next to the phone.

Operator, I'm Having a Serious Problem

You can run into many problems when you're making a phone call. You may dial the wrong number, get a never-ending busy signal, or get an answering machine instead of a person. Here are some phrases you may hear (or need to say) when you run into rough times on the phone.

Welche Nummer haben sie gewählt?

veLHuh noo-muhR hah-buhn zee guh-vählt

What number did you dial?

Es tut mir leid. Ich muß mich verwählt haben.

es toot miR layt. iH moos miH feR-vählt hah-buhn

I'm sorry. I must have dialed the wrong number.



Culture Shock

The postal service in Germany also provides phone service. Tell the postal worker behind the counter that you would like to make a long-distance call, and he or she will indicate which phone booth is available. You pay (cash only) after your call. Long-distance calls made from the post office are considerably cheaper than calls made from your hotel or from one of the yellow or more modern gray phone booths you'll see along city streets.

Wir wurden unterbrochen.

veeR voor-duhn oon-tuhR-bRo-CHuhn

We got disconnected.

Bitte wählen Sie die Nummer noch einmal.

bi-tuh väh-luhn zee dee noo-muhR noCH ayn-mahl

Please redial the number.

Diese Telefonleitung wurde abgestellt.

dee-zuh tey-ley-fohn-lay-toong voor-duh ap-guh-shtelt

This telephone number has been disconnected.

Das Telefon ist defekt (außer Betrieb).

dAs tey-ley-fohn ist dey-fekt (ou-suhR be-tReep)

The telephone is out of order.

Rufen Sie mich später zurück.

Rew-fuhn zee miH shpäh-tuhR tsew-RüK

Call me back later.

Da ist ein Rauschen in der Leitung.

da ist ayn Rou-shuhn in deyR lay-toong

There's static on the line.

Ich kann Sie akustisch nicht verstehen.

iH kAn zee A-koos-tish niHt feR-shtey-huhn

I can't hear you.

Er meldet sich nicht.

eR mel-det ziH niHt

He doesn't answer the phone.

Ich muß auflegen.

iH moos ouf-ley-guhn

I have to hang up.

What Did You Do to Yourself? Reflexive Verbs in the Past

Were you unable to phone someone who was expecting your call? You'll probably have to give the person a reason. To explain your situation, you may need to use reflexive verbs in the *Präteritum*. All reflexive verbs use *haben* as an auxiliary verb in the present perfect.

Ich habe mich verwöhlt. Wir haben uns verwöhlt.

Du hast dich verwöhlt. Sie haben sich verwöhlt.

Er/Sie/Es hat sich verwöhlt. Sie haben sich verwöhlt.

To form the negative with reflexive verbs, *nicht* follows the reflexive pronoun.

Er hat sich nicht gemeldet.

You can form negative questions in the past with reflexive verbs in several ways:

- Through inversion: Hat er sich nicht gemeldet?
- Through intonation: Er hat sich nicht gemeldet?
- By using the tag *oder* or *nicht wahr*: Er hat sich nicht gemeldet, nicht wahr?

Excuses, Excuses

Tell what these people were doing when the phone was ringing.

Example: (Anna/ sich die Haare waschen)

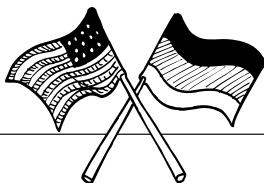
Answer: Sie hat sich die Haare gewaschen.

1. Maria/ sich anziehen
2. Stefan/ sich rasieren
3. Mark und ich/ sich waschen
4. Ben und Uli/ sich die Zähne putzen
5. Ingo/ sich anziehen

Hey, It's the Twenty-First Century!

Faxes, modems, e-mail, and the Internet have spread their tentacles far and wide. If you need to send a fax or e-mail from Germany, you'll want to know the following terms:

German	Pronunciation	English
das Faxgerät	dAs faks-guh-Rät	fax machine
die Faxnummer	dAs faks-noo-muhR	fax number
ein Fax senden	ayn faks zen-duhn	to send a fax
etwas faxen	et-vAs fak-suhn	to fax something
das Fax-Modem	dAs faks-moh-dem	fax modem
das Internet	dAs in-teR-net	Internet
die E-Mail	dee ee-meyl	e-mail
eine Nachricht senden	dee nACH-RiHt zen-duhn	to send a message
die E-Mail Adresse	dee ee-meyl A-dRe-suh	e-mail address
der Drucker	deyR dRii-kuhr	printer
der Computer	deyR kom-pyew-tuhR	computer
die Taste	dee tAs-tuh	key
die Tastatur	dee tAs-tuh-tewR	keyboard
der Bildschirm	deyR bilt-sheeRm	computer screen



We Are Family

German is becoming more like English, believe it or not! Take into consideration some new verbs entering German, such as *emailen*, "to e-mail," and *faxen*, "to fax." Seems simple enough, eh? Simply add the German infinitive ending of *-en*. But it gets better! The past tense of *emailen* is *geemailt!*

If you depend on e-mail to stay connected to your friends, family, work—you name it—you'll be relieved to learn that most computer jargon, even in German, is in English. Take, for example, the idiomatic expression: *auf die Tasten hämmern* (*ouf dee tAs-tuh hä-muhRn*). Can you guess what noun the verb *hämmern* comes from, in both English and German? If you figured out that *auf die Tasten hämmern* is the equivalent of the English "to hammer on the keyboard," you might be good enough to *hämmern*.

Do you want to chat? (*Wollen Sie chatten?*) Join a German *Chat-Raum* and investigate the local *Chat-Events*. One of the many German search engines to start you off is www.lycos.de. Next to English, the most popular language of the Internet is German. From a German Web site (often ending with the letters *de*), you'll be able to keep abreast of the current weather and news, order a pizza, read a magazine, plan your next destination, or cyberconnect with real Germans!

The Least You Need to Know

- Use the information next to the public phone in Germany or on the front page of the German Yellow Pages to guide you through most of your phone calls.
- Even though spoken German might seem more difficult to understand over the phone, the protocol of telephoning will be familiar to you. If you feel utterly bewildered, you can always respond with, "Wie, bitte?" to request repetition or explanation.
- Reflexive verbs use *haben* as an auxiliary verb in the past perfect.
- There are a few key phrases that will help you when you need to send a fax or e-mail. The German expressions are generally cognates of the English—of course, you'll need to add an *-en* to the verb "fax" to make it a German infinitive!



Where's the Nearest Post Office?

In This Chapter

- Getting and sending mail
- All about the verbs *schreiben* ("to write") and *lesen* ("to read")
- Getting your way by expressing polite requests or wishes and by giving advice

In Chapter 25, "Getting Your Message Across," you learned how to use the German telecommunication system. Not only do you now know how to make local and long-distance telephone calls, you also know how to explain certain problems to the operator. Making too many long-distance calls can be expensive, so you're probably going to want to do most of your communicating by mail. You may even want to send gifts or large packages.

By the end of this chapter, you'll know how to send registered and special-delivery letters by air (or by surface if you're trying to save money). If you make pen pals overseas, you'll learn how to write basic facts in letters and how to describe activities.

Will My Letter Get There?

You've spent the whole day in a museum just a few inches away from the oils Albrecht Dürer pushed around on a canvas to create his masterpieces. Now you're dying to get to a café where you can sit down and whip off a few postcards telling friends and family what you've done.

You spend a couple of hours writing your own postal masterpieces. Now you want to be sure that everything you've written reaches its destination. Whatever you send by the *Deutsche Bundespost* (*doy-chuh boont-es-post*) will, of course, get to wherever it's

going (the German postal system is famous worldwide for its efficiency). The question is, how soon will it get there?

Of course, speed has its price. Regular letters cost anywhere from 1,10 DM to 4 DM. But let's start with the basics. Before you do any letter or postcard writing, you're going to want to know how to ask for paper, envelopes, and other items.

Alles über die Post: Mail and the Post Office

German	Pronunciation	English
das Paket	<i>dAs pah-keyt</i>	package, parcel
das Porto	<i>dAs poR-toh</i>	postage
das Postfach	<i>dAs post-fACH</i>	post office box
das Telegramm	<i>dAs tey-ley-gRAm</i>	telegram
der Brief	<i>deyR bReef</i>	letter
der Briefkasten	<i>deyR bReef-kAs-tuhn</i>	mailbox
der Briefträger	<i>deyR bReef-tRäh-guhR</i>	mailman
der Briefumschlag	<i>deyR bReef-oom-shlahk</i>	envelope
der Empfänger	<i>deyR emp-fän-guhR</i>	addressee
das Postamt	<i>dAs post-amt</i>	post office
der Postbeamte	<i>deyR post-bey-Am-tuh</i>	postal worker
der Absender	<i>deyR Ap-zen-duhR</i>	sender
der Telefondienst	<i>deyR tey-ley-fohn-deenst</i>	telephone service
die Briefmarke	<i>dee bReef-maR-kuh</i>	stamp
der Briefmarkenautomat	<i>deyR bReef-maR-kuhn-ou-to-mat</i>	stamp machine
der Briefwechsel	<i>deyR bReef-vek-suhl</i>	correspondence
die Bundespost	<i>dee boon-duhs-post</i>	federal postal service
die Luftpost	<i>dee looft-post</i>	air letter
die Postanweisung	<i>dee post-An-vay-zoong</i>	postal order
die Postkarte	<i>dee post-kAR-tuh</i>	postcard
ein Bogen (m.) Briefmarken	<i>ayn boh-guhn bReef-mAR-kuhn</i>	a sheet of stamps



As a Rule

When you're in the post office requesting stamps, use the counting term *mal* to tell the clerk how many of a certain stamp you need: *sechsmal eine Mark Briefmarken* (*zeks-mAl ay-nuh mARk vReef-maR-kuhn*) indicates that you want six 1-DM stamps. Of course, the use of *mal* is not limited to the purchasing of postage. *-mal* can be used with cardinal numbers, as in *zweimal die Woche*, "two times per week," or *hundertmal im Monat*, "a hundred times per month." And "ten times"?—*zehnmal*. Just remember to combine the particle for "times" and the number.

Getting Service

You've written your letter, folded it, doused it with perfume, and scribbled your return address and the address of your beloved on the envelope. Now all you have to do is find a mailbox. If you don't know where one is, ask:

Wo ist das nächste Postamt?

voh ist dAs näH-stuh post-Amt

Where is the nearest post office?

Wo finde ich den nächsten Briefkasten?

voh fin-duh iH deyn näH-stuhn bReef-ka-stuhn

Where do I find the nearest mail box?

Of course, different kinds of letters and packages require different kinds of forms and have different postal rates. You should know how to ask for the type of service you need:

Was kostet das Porto?

vAs kos-tuht dAs poR-toh

What's the postal rate?

German	Pronunciation	English
für das Ausland	<i>fühR dAs ous-lAnt</i>	for a foreign country
für die Vereinigten Staaten	<i>fühR dee feR-ay-nik-tuhn shtah-tuhn</i>	for the United States
für einen Luftpostbrief	<i>fühR ay-nuhn looft-post-bReef</i>	for an air mail letter
für einen Einschreibebrief	<i>fühR ay-nuhn ayn-shRay-buh-bReef</i>	for a registered letter
für eine Eilpost	<i>fühR ay-nuh ayl-post</i>	for a special delivery
für einen Eilbrief	<i>fühR ay-nuhn ayl-bReef</i>	for an express letter



Culture Shock

You'd better check your calendar before heading off to the *Postamt* because Germany celebrates many holidays, many of them religious. The most important are Christmas (*Weihnachten*), New Year (*Neujahr*), and Easter (*Ostern*), which are celebrated for two days each. The various German states also observe regional holidays, especially around Easter. An important nonreligious holiday in Germany is the Day of German Unity (*Tag der deutschen Einheit*) on October 3.

Here are a few more useful phrases:

Ich möchte diesen Brief (per Luftpost, per Eilpost) verschicken.

iH möH-tuh dee-zuhn bReef (peR looft-post, peR ayl-post) feR-shi-kuhn

I would like to send this letter (by air mail, special delivery).

Ich möchte dieses Paket per Nachnahme schicken.

iH möH-tuh dee-zuhs pah-keyt peR nahCH-nah-muh shi-kuhn

I would like to send this package COD.

Wie viel wiegt dieser Brief?

vee-feel veekt dee-zuhR bReef

How much does this letter weigh?

Wann wird der Brief ankommen?

vAn viRt deyR bReef An-ko-muhn

When will the letter arrive?

Wie lange dauert es, bis der Brief ankommt?

vee lAn-guh dou-eRt es, bis deyR bReef An-komt

How long will it take for the letter to arrive?

At the Post Office

You asked someone where the nearest post office is, but you forgot to ask her what it looks like. Nevertheless, after wandering around the *Platz* for a few minutes, you

finally find it. (It has a yellow sign with black letters that say *BP Post*.) Go inside and ask what the airmail rates are for the United States. Then ask what the cost is to send a letter special delivery. Next, ask for half a dozen stamps.

I Want to Send a Telegram

Of course, sometimes a letter just can't get there fast enough. You've met a German count, and you're having a whirlwind wedding. Or perhaps you've just found out you're pregnant, and your husband is in a Buddhist retreat where phones are not permitted. Maybe you're going to visit an old friend in two or three days, and all you have is her address. What do you do? When time is of the essence, send a telegram.

Ich möchte ein Telegramm senden.

iH möH-tuh ayn tey-ley-gRAm zen-duhn

I would like to send a telegram.

Wie hoch ist der Tarif pro Wort?

vee hoCH ist deyR tA-Reef pRo voRt

How much is the rate per word?

Könnte ich bitte ein (Antrags) Formular bekommen?

kön-tuh iH bi-tuh ayn (An-tRahks) foR-mew-lahR buh-ko-muhn

May I please have a form?

Wo gibt es die Formulare?

voh gipt es dee foR-mew-lah-Ruh

Where are the forms?

Readin' and Writin'

When you're filling out forms at the post office, you may have some trouble figuring out what goes into which tiny bureaucratic-looking box. To ask a postal worker where you should write what information, use the strong verb *schreiben* (*shRay-buhn*) "to write." *Schreiben* is a normal strong verb, so its conjugation in the present tense is thoroughly predictable. What you need to learn is its past participle, the equivalent of the English "written": *hat geschrieben*. Now you are equipped to talk about what you wrote yesterday!

Speaking of writing, you'll also be doing a lot reading—of signs, of forms, of your own letters, and of other people's letters. The very strong verb *lesen* (*ley-zuhn*) "to read" will help you express exactly what kind of reading you are doing. The stem vowel *e* changes to *ie* in the second- and third-persons singular, as illustrated in the following table. Incidentally, the past-tense form for *lesen* is *hat gelesen*.

The Verb **lesen**

Person	Singular	English	Plural	English
First	ich lese <i>iH ley-zuh</i>	I read	wir lesen <i>veeR ley-zuhn</i>	we read
Second	du liest <i>dew leest</i>	you read	ihr lest <i>eeR leest</i>	you read
(Formal)	Sie lesen <i>zee ley-zuhn</i>		Sie lesen <i>zee ley-zuhn</i>	
Third	er, sie, es liest <i>eR, zee, es leest</i>	he, she, it reads	sie lesen <i>zee ley-zuhn</i>	they read

Can You Read This?

Have you been glancing at German magazines and newspapers whenever you pass a newsstand? Why don't you buy something that looks interesting? One of the best ways to improve your reading skills is to read. The following table lists some of things you can read when you are in Germany.

Things to Read

German	Pronunciation	English
die Anzeige	<i>dee an-zay-guh</i>	ad
die Werbung	<i>dee veyr-boonk</i>	ad
das Buch	<i>dAs bewH</i>	book
das Kinderbuch	<i>dAs kin-duhR-bewH</i>	children's book
das Tagebuch	<i>dAs tah-guh-bewH</i>	journal/diary
der Fahrplan	<i>deyR fahR-plAn</i>	train/bus schedule
die Zeitschrift	<i>dee tsayt-shRift</i>	news magazine
die Illustrierte	<i>dee I-lew-steer-tuh</i>	magazine
die Speisekarte	<i>dee shpay-zuh-kAR-tuh</i>	menu
die Zeitung	<i>dee tsay-toonk</i>	newspaper
der Roman	<i>deyR roh-mahn</i>	novel
die Quittung	<i>dee kvi-toonk</i>	receipt
das Schild	<i>dAs shilt</i>	sign
die Warnung	<i>dee vAR-noonk</i>	warning

Getting It Right

Now that you're familiar with reading and writing in German, see whether you can fill in the blanks with the correct forms of *lesen* and *schreiben*.

Example: Er _____ eine Zeitung.

Answer: Er liest eine Zeitung.

1. Ich _____ meinem Freund einen Brief.
2. Wir _____ ein Buch.
3. Sie _____ ihren Eltern eine Postkarte.
4. Du _____ die Wohnungsanzeigen.
5. Ich _____ eine Illustrierte.
6. Wolfram _____ gern Kinderbücher.
7. Ihr _____ uns jede Woche.

Would You Please ...

Remember that prodding, kind of sweet sounding form of the modal *mögen*—*möchten*—or the polite form of *können*—*könnten*? Well, those were the modals in the subjunctive mood. How about a surefire way to be able to express any verb, sentiment, or thought in a more tentative, modest, or polite way? Pay attention! In German the subjunctive is frequently used to make statements and pose questions in such a manner. Compare these:

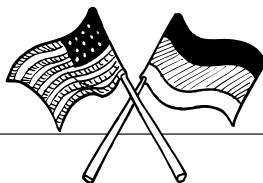
Gib mir mein Geld zurück!
geep meeR mayn gelt tsuh-Rük
 Give me back my money!

with the subjunctive:

Würden Sie mir bitte mein Geld zurückgeben?
vüR-duhn zee meeR bi-tuh mayn gelt tsuh-Rük-gey-buhn
 Would you please give me back my money?

The Subjunctive Verb Würden

Person	Singular	English	Plural	English
First	ich würde <i>iH vüR-duh</i>	I would	wir würden <i>veeR vüR-duhn</i>	we would
Second	du würdest <i>dew vüR-duhst</i>	you would	ihr würdet <i>eeR vüR-duhst</i>	you would
Third	er, sie, es würde <i>eR, zee, es vüR-duh</i>	he, she, it would	sie würden <i>zee vüR-duhn</i>	they would



We Are Family

How global we are! Although using the actual subjunctive form of a verb (taking an ending and an umlaut, if a strong verb) used to be considered “good German,” it’s become customary to use the English-like form of *würde* + infinitive, practically mirroring the English construction of *would*. In Early Modern English (1500–1800 C.E.), the English modals were already infused with a subjunctive flavor—much like they exist today—regularly used with present or future meaning, implying speculation or politeness.

In spoken German, like the English *would*, a form of *würde* can be used with almost any infinitive to express polite requests or wishes, or to give advice. As with any verb phrase, the unconjugated verb (infinitive/past participle) goes to the end of the sentence. Observe:

Würdest du mir helfen?
vüR-duhst dew meer hel-fuhn
Would you help me?

Ich würde gern mitkommen.
iH vüR-duh geRn mit-ko-muhn
I would like to come along.

Ich würde nicht so viel essen.
iH vür-duh niHt zo feel e-suhn
I wouldn’t eat so much.

Now it’s your turn to express yourself politely. Rather than blurting out commands, seduce your audience into doing what you want them to do.

Example: Komm schnell! → Würdest du bitte schnell kommen?

1. Schreib oft!
2. Lies gute Zeitungen!
3. Nimm dein Medikament!

Instead of stating what you want to do (*ich will*), suggest it coyly.

Example: Ich will griechisch essen. → Ich würde gern griechisch essen.

4. Ich will nach Polen fahren.
5. Ich will lang schlafen.
6. Ich will nur bergsteigen.

Finally, rather than telling someone what to or not to do, go ahead and give gentle advice:

Example: Studier mehr! → Ich würde mehr studieren.

7. Geh in die Oper!
8. Trink mehr Milch!
9. Kauf nicht alles!

The Least You Need to Know

- Getting and sending mail in Germany is easy, once you figure out where the nearest post office is and master the polite phrase for "I would like ...": *Ich möchte*
- Knowing the conjugations for *schreiben* ("to write") and *lesen* ("to read") will help you fill out forms at the post office.
- Of course, there are many other things to read in Germany besides postal forms, and you'll find a large selection of newspapers, magazines, and various books and maps at a train station.
- To express yourself politely with any verb, supply a form of the subjunctive *würde* plus an infinitive at the end. (*Ich würde* ...)



I'd Like to Rent a Castle, Please

In This Chapter

- Apartments and houses
- Rooms, furnishings, amenities, and appliances
- Speaking in the subjunctive mood

Are you tired of the hassles of a hotel? Is too much noise reaching your room from the street? Why not consider some modest alternative, like renting a castle? Actually, this alternative may not be as extravagant as it sounds. Germany, Switzerland, and Austria are home to more castles than almost anywhere else, and renting a small one in some out-of-the-way place could even turn out to be more economical than staying in a fancy hotel. Why not try it?

In this chapter you'll learn how to get furnishings and appliances in case you decide to stay a while in the land of castles and fairy tales. You'll also learn how to express your plans for the future.

I Want to Rent a Castle

More and more people are becoming either temporary or permanent expatriates. Some of these adventurous folk migrate to Germany. You never know when you may decide that you want to start a new life in the *Bundesrepublik* and either rent a house (or a castle) or—if you can afford it—buy one of your own.

In any case, you should be prepared to read and understand the apartments-for-rent and houses-for-sale sections of the *Zeitung* and be able to speak with real estate agents about properties to rent or to buy. The following table has the vocabulary you'll need to describe your dream *Schloß* (*shlos*).

The House, the Apartment, the Rooms

German	Pronunciation	English
das Arbeitszimmer	dAs AR-bayts-tsi-muhR	study
das Badezimmer	dAs bah-duh-tsi-muhR	bathroom
das Dach	dAs dACH	roof
das Dachgeschoß	dAs dACH-guh-shos	attic
das Erdgeschoß	dAs eRt-guh-shos	ground floor
das Eßzimmer	dAs es-tsi-muhR	dining room
das Fenster	dAs fen-stuhR	window
der Stock	deyR shtok	floor (story)
das Schlafzimmer	dAs shlahf-tsi-muhR	bedroom
das Treppenhaus	dAs tRe-puhn-hous	staircase
das Wohnzimmer	dAs vohn-tsi-muhR	living room
der Abstellraum	deyR Ap-shtel-Roum	storage room
der Aufzug	deyR ouf-tsewk	elevator
der Besitzer	deyR buh-zit-suhR	owner
der Fußboden	deyR fews-boh-duhn	floor
der Hinterhof	deyR hin-tuhR-hohf	backyard
der Innenhof	deyR i-nuhn-hohf	courtyard
der Kamin	deyR kah-meen	fireplace
der Keller	deyR ke-luhR	basement
der Mieter	deyR mee-tuhR	tenant
der Mietvertrag	deyR meet-veR-tRahk	lease
der Portier	deyR poR-tee-eR	doorman
der Vermieter	deyR feR-mee-tuhR	landlord
der Wandschrank	deyR vAnt-shRAnk	closet
die Decke	dee de-kuh	ceiling
die Dusche	dee dew-shuh	shower
die elektrische Heizung	dee ey-lek-tRi-shuh hay-tsoong	electric heating
die Gasheizung	dee gahs-hay-tsoong	gas heating
die Instandhaltung	dee in-shtAnt-hAl-toong	maintenance
die Klimaanlage	dee klee-mah-An-lah-guh	air-conditioning
die Küche	dee kü-Huh	kitchen

German	Pronunciation	English
die Miete	<i>dee mee-tuh</i>	rent
die Sauna	<i>dee zou-nah</i>	sauna
die Terrasse	<i>dee te-RA-suh</i>	terrace
die Wand	<i>dee vAnt</i>	wall
die Waschküche	<i>dee vAsh-kü-Huh</i>	laundry room
die Wohnung	<i>dee voh-noong</i>	apartment

Buying or Renting

Do you want to rent an apartment? Would you prefer to buy a house? Whether you're buying or renting, these phrases will serve you well.

Ich suche ...

iH zew-Chuh

I'm looking for ...

einen Immobilienmakler (m.)

ay-nuhn i-moh-bee-lee-uhn-mAk-luhR

a real estate agency

den Anzeigenteil

den An-tsay-guhn-tayl

the advertisement section

den Anzeigenteil für Immobilien

deyn An-tsay-guhn-tayl fühR i-moh-bee-lee-uhn

the real estate advertising section

Ich möchte ... mieten (kaufen)

iH möH-tuh ... mee-tuhn (kou-fuhn)

I would like to rent (buy) ...

eine Wohnung

ay-nuh voh-noong

an apartment

eine Eigentumswohnung

ay-nuh ay-guhn-tewms-voh-noong

a condominium

Wie hoch ist die Miete?

vee hohCH ist dee mee-tuh

What is the rent?

Gibt es Einbrüche?

gipt es ayn-bRü-Huh

Are there break-ins?

Wie teuer ist die Instandhaltung der Wohnung (des Hauses)?

vee toy-uhR ist dee in-shtAnt-hAl-toon deyR voh-noong (des hou-zuhs)

How much is the maintenance of the apartment (house)?

Wie hoch sind die monatlichen Zahlungen?

vee hohCH zint dee moh-nAt-li-Huhn tsah-loon-guhn

How much are the monthly payments?

Ich möchte eine Hypothek aufnehmen.

iH möH-tuh ay-nuh hüh-poh-teyk ouf-ney-muhn

I'd like to apply for a mortgage.

Muß ich eine Kautions hinterlassen?

moos iH ay-nuh kou-tsee-ohn hin-tuhR-lA-suhn

Do I have to leave a deposit?

All the Comforts of Home

Start living in your new home; soon enough your needs become clear. When you go to close the curtains, you'll realize that they're missing. When you walk across the living room floor, the echo of your footsteps against the wood reminds you that a carpet would come in mighty handy. As evening falls and the rooms grow dark, you'll wish you had a lamp, something dim and romantic—an alternative to the harsh overhead light. The following table gives you a head start on the furniture and accessories you may not know you need until you really start to miss them.

Furniture and Accessories

German	Pronunciation	English
das Bett	<i>dAs bet</i>	bed
das Bücherregal	<i>dAs bü-HuhR-Rey-gahl</i>	bookshelf
das Eismilch	<i>dAs ays-fACH</i>	freezer
der Fernseher	<i>deyR feRn-zey-huhR</i>	television
der Kühlschrank	<i>deyR kühl-shRArk</i>	refrigerator
der Ofen	<i>deyR o-fuhn</i>	oven
der Sessel	<i>deyR ze-suwl</i>	armchair
der Stuhl	<i>deyR shtewl</i>	chair
der Teppich	<i>deyR tey-piH</i>	carpet

German	Pronunciation	English
der Tisch	deyR tish	table
der Trockner	deyR tRoH-nuhR	dryer
die elektrischen Küchengeräte	dee e-lek-tRi-shuhn kü-Huhn-guh-Rä-tuh	kitchen appliances
die Gardinen	dee gAR-dee-nuhn	curtains
die Kommode	dee ko-moh-duh	dresser
die Möbel (pl.)	dee möh-buhl	furniture
die Spülmaschine	dee shpühl-mA-shee-nuh	dishwasher
die Uhr	dee ewR	clock

Let's Buy Furniture

Suppose you've found an unfurnished house or apartment. What kinds of furniture do you want to purchase or rent? What services would you like the store to provide?

Read this advertisement and then try to describe in English what you can expect if you shop at this particular furniture store.

Möbelhaus Müller

Absolute Qualitätsgarantie

Wir garantieren kostenlose Reparatur der
Möbel innerhalb der ersten zwei Jahre.

Wir liefern Ihnen Ihre Möbel kostenlos nach
Hause.

Wir kaufen Ihre alten Möbel zurück.

Wir versichern Ihnen absolute Preis- und
Qualitätsgarantie.



Culture Shock

In Germany the kitchen and bathroom are not counted as "rooms" when describing the number of rooms in an apartment. Thus a *Zweizimmerwohnung* has one bedroom and a living room. An *Appartement* is just as quaint and cozy as it sounds ... it's a studio or efficiency apartment!

There's Hope for the Future

If you're planning to buy or rent property, the first thing you're going to have to do is learn how to express your plans in the *future tense*.



What's What?

Future tense To form the future tense, use the present tense of the auxiliary verb *werden* with the infinitive of the verb.

Expressing the Future

To express the future in German colloquial speech, the present tense is often used in reference to the future, utilizing adverbs such as “soon,” “next week,” etc. This also is done in English, though not as commonly. If someone asks you what you are going to do later in the day, you could say, “Go home, I guess. Go to bed. After that, sleep.” Another way of speaking in the future is to use the future tense. To form the future tense, use the present tense of the auxiliary verb *werden* (*veR-duhn*) along with the infinitive of the main verb. *Werden* literally means “to become,” but loses this meaning when utilized as a helping verb to form the future tense. Earlier you learned that

German has four irregular verbs. Well, *werden* is the fourth! You’ll observe that it is, indeed, irregular, as it not only changes the stem vowel, but goof around with consonants and endings. Here is the formula to produce the future tense:

Subject + conjugated present tense of *werden* + the infinitive of the verb

The following table conjugates the auxiliary verb *werden* to produce the future tense of *kaufen*.

Werden + Kaufen = Future Tense of Kaufen

Person	Singular	English	Plural	English
First	ich werde kaufen <i>iH veR-duh kou-fuhn</i>	I will buy	wir werden kaufen <i>veeR veR-duhn kou-fuhn</i>	we will buy
Second	du wirst kaufen <i>dew veeRst kou-fuhn</i>	you will buy	ihr werdet kaufen <i>eeR veR-det kou-fuhn</i>	you will buy
(Formal)	Sie werden kaufen <i>zee veR-duhn kou-fuhn</i>		Sie werden kaufen. <i>zee veR-duhn kou-fuhn</i>	
Third	er, sie, es wird kaufen <i>eR, zee, es virt kou-fuhn</i>	he, she, it will buy	sie werden kaufen <i>zee veR-duhn kou-fuhn</i>	they will buy

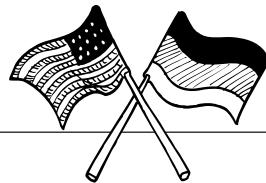
Tomorrow's Plans

Make a list of all the things you and your friends have to do tomorrow.

Example: ich/ein Auto kaufen

Answer: Ich werde ein Auto kaufen.

1. Christa und Inge/ins Kino gehen
2. Klaus/Einkäufe machen
3. Ingo und ich/Tennis spielen
4. Meine Mutter/zum Zahnarzt gehen
5. Ich/Norbert anrufen
6. Wir/ein Buch lesen
7. Ihr/radfahren
8. Wolfram und Catharine/viel Deutsch sprechen



We Are Family

Old English verbs were inflected only for two tenses: present and past. Without a future conjugation, the present was used to express future time, with adverbs added to avoid ambiguity. While English relies on "will" plus an infinitive to express the future: "She will call him tomorrow," German can express the future with the present tense and an adverb: *Sie ruft ihn morgen an.* "She'll call him tomorrow."

What Would You Do?

If you're not sure whether you're going to get everything done, you will probably want to use the subjunctive mood. In an ideal world, you would never have to use this mood—you would make a list of things to do and do them. You would put on your jogging shoes and step outside and run four miles. You would clean your apartment; you would write letters to your mother. Unfortunately, as much as you would like to do things, as much as you should do them, you don't always get them done. Thank goodness for the *subjunctive mood*. Although you learned how to talk about any verb expressing contrary-to-reality ideas in Chapter 26, "Where's the Nearest Post Office?" we'll narrow our focus now to talk about what you "would have" or "would like to have."



Achtung

When using the compound (two verb) future tense in German, don't forget to send the unconjugated verb, the infinitive, to the end of the sentence!

I'm in a Subjunctive Mood

German has separate forms for verbs that are in the subjunctive mood, forms that are used to express wishes or contrary-to-fact statements. It's worth learning the subjunctive of certain high-frequency German verbs, as it is very useful to be able to express yourself politely, or hope and long for something that is not. Because we're nearing the end of the book and you've already been exposed to the subjunctive form of *haben*—when you ordered food or requested other items—let's look at it. The entire subjunctive conjugation of *haben* appears in the following table:

The Subjunctive Forms for Haben

Person	Singular	Plural
First	ich hätte	wir hätten
	<i>iH hä-tuh</i>	<i>veeR hä-tuhn</i>
Second	du hättest	ihr hättet
	<i>dew hä-tuhst</i>	<i>eeR hä-tuht</i>
Third	er, sie, es hätte	sie hätten
	<i>eR, zee, es hä-tuh</i>	<i>zee hä-tuhn</i>

All right. That's all fine and dandy, but what does it mean? Well, the German subjunctive can be translated into English a couple of ways. The way we have been understanding the subjunctive employs the adverb *gern* as a crutch:

Ich hätte gern zwei Brötchen.
iH hä-tuh geRn tsvay bRö-tHuhn
I would like to have two rolls.



What's What?

Subjunctive mood The verb form that indicates that something is relatively unlikely, conjectural, implausible, or contrary to fact.

In this utterance, the *gern* helps to express the “like” part of the equation. The *hätte* expresses “would have.” Nice and neat to have one, sound-adulterated word express two English words, huh?

Abracadabra, You Have Three Wishes

You are walking along a path in the woods when you come upon a pear-shaped blue bottle. It is chipped along the bottom rim, but other than that it appears to be in good condition. A cork is stuck in the mouth of bottle, and a dark liquid slaps the sides when you hold it up to the light. You try to twist the cork free.

Finally, it comes loose, dislodging itself from the neck with a pop. You are surrounded by smoke, and a genie in *Lederhosen* and suspenders and a long beard is floating in the air before you. “*Du hast drei Wünsche frei*,” the genie says. “*Was würden Sie am liebsten haben?*” (“You have three wishes. What would you most like to have?”) Come up with a list of things you’d like to have, using the following suggestions.

Example: einen BMW

Answer: Ich hätte am liebsten einen BMW.

1. ein Schloß
2. ein Stück Schwarzwälder Kirschtorte
3. viel Geld
4. ein Haus in den Alpen
5. ein großes Bier
6. viele schöne Blumen

The Least You Need to Know

- After you learn a few basic phrases, you should have no trouble buying or renting an apartment, house, or (you never know!) castle from a German real estate agent.
- To furnish specific rooms, you will have to know the vocabulary for furnishings, amenities, and appliances.
- To speak of something you plan to do in the future, use the perfect tense with an implication of future action or use the future tense, which is formed with the helping verb *werden* conjugated in the present + the verb in the infinitive.
- With the subjunctive mood of *haben* (*hätten*), you can express what you would like to have—be it food, cars, castles, or a good cup of coffee.



Living the Expat Life

In This Chapter

- Understanding banking terms
- Bureaucracy of residence
- Car registration

Now you should be ready to stay indefinitely in a German-speaking country—perhaps sample the expatriate (“expat”) life. You’ve learned how to rent a castle (or an apartment if you’re interested in something a little more modest), and you’ve also learned how to furnish it to your liking. In previous chapters you learned how to dine out, how to have fun, how to meet people, and how to make phone calls.

Chances are that you’ve already cashed a significant portion of your traveler’s checks and that you’ve nearly reached the limit on all your credit cards. Now it’s time for you to learn how to deal with money in a foreign country. You may need to use the long-distance phone skills you learned in Chapter 25, “Getting Your Message Across,” to call home and have one of your loved ones prove their love by wiring you a little extra money.



Achtung

Although many establishments in Germany do accept credit cards, plastic is a less widespread phenomenon in Germany than it is in the United States. Be sure that you see the imprimatur of your credit card company on the window or menu of the establishment where you're about to eat—otherwise you may be washing dishes until the banks open at 9:00 A.M.

Or perhaps you have a lot of money in a Swiss bank account, and you'd like to invest it in some German business deals your friends have been telling you about. If you're involved in business, many of the new terms in this chapter will be of use to you.

Get Me to the Bank, Quick!

Hotels, restaurants, and banks—these are the places where you will probably spend a good deal of your time when you travel. Banks are of particular importance because sooner or later, you'll probably need to exchange money, cash traveler's checks, or receive a cash advance on a credit card. If you're planning to reside for an extended period of time in a German-speaking country, you may even want to take out a loan to set up a business, purchase real estate, play the stock market, or open a checking account.

Learning Banking Lingo

If you need to do anything involving your friendly local banker, you'll have to acquaint yourself with the banking terms in the following table.

Banking Terms

German	Pronunciation	English
abheben	<i>Ap-hey-buhn</i>	withdraw
ausfüllen	<i>ous-fli-luhn</i>	fill out
leihen	<i>lay-huhn</i>	borrow
das Bankkonto	<i>dAs bAnk-kon-toh</i>	bank account
das Bargeld	<i>dAs bahR-gelt</i>	cash
das Darlehen	<i>dAs dahR-ley-huhn</i>	loan
das Einkommen	<i>dAs ayn-ko-muhn</i>	revenue
das Geldwechselbüro	<i>dAs gelt-ve-ksel-büh-Roh</i>	money exchange bureau
das Kontobuch	<i>dAs kon-toh-bewCH</i>	bankbook
das Scheckbuch	<i>dAs shek-bewCH</i>	checkbook
das Sparkonto	<i>dAs shpAR-kon-toh</i>	savings account
das Wechselgeld	<i>dAs ve-ksel-gelt</i>	change (coins)

German	Pronunciation	English
der (Kassen) Schalter	<i>deyR (kA-suhn) shAl-tuhR</i>	(teller's) window
der Angestellte	<i>deyR An-guh-shtel-tuh</i>	employee
der Ankauf	<i>deyR An-kouf</i>	purchase
der Bankautomat	<i>deyR bAnk-ou-toh-maht</i>	automatic teller machine
der Bankangestellte/ die Bankangestellte	<i>deyR bAnk-bey-Am-tuh/</i> <i>dee bAnk-bey-Am-tin</i>	bank employee
der Bankdirektor	<i>deyR bAnk-dee-Rek-tohR</i>	bank manager
der Einzahlungsbeleg	<i>deyR ayn-tsah-looks-bey-leyk</i>	deposit slip
der Geldfluß	<i>deyR gelt-floos</i>	cash flow
der Geldschein	<i>deyR gelt-shayn</i>	bill
der Kassierer/ die Kassiererin	<i>deyR kA-see-RuhR/</i> <i>dee kA-see-Ruh-Rin</i>	teller
der Kontostand	<i>deyR kon-toh-shtAnt</i>	balance
der Reisescheck	<i>deyR Ray-zuh-shek</i>	traveler's check
der Verkauf	<i>deyR feR-kouf</i>	sale
der Wechselkurs	<i>deyR ve-ksel-kooRs</i>	exchange rate
die Abhebung	<i>dee Ap-hey-boong</i>	withdrawal
die Abzahlung	<i>dee Ap-zah-loong</i>	installment payment
die Anzahlung	<i>dee An-zah-loong</i>	down payment
die Einzahlung	<i>dee ayn-tsah-loong</i>	deposit
die Filiale	<i>dee fi-lee-ah-luh</i>	branch
die Hypothek	<i>dee hüh-poh-teyk</i>	mortgage
die Münze	<i>dee mün-tsuh</i>	coin
die Quittung	<i>dee kvi-toong</i>	receipt
die Ratenzahlung	<i>dee Rah-tuhn-tsah-loong</i>	installment plan
die Restzahlung	<i>dee Rest-tsah-loong</i>	final payment
die Schulden	<i>dee shool-duhn</i>	debt
die Überweisung	<i>dee üh-buhR-vay-zoong</i>	transfer
die Überziehung	<i>dee üh-buhR-tsee-hoong</i>	overdraft
die Unterschrift	<i>dee oon-tuhR-shRift</i>	signature
die Zahlung	<i>dee tsah-loong</i>	payment
ein überzogener Scheck (m.)	<i>ayn üh-buhR-tsoh-</i> <i>guh-nuhR shek</i>	an overdrawn check
einzahlen	<i>ayn-tsah-luhn</i>	to deposit
kurzfristig	<i>kooRts-fRis-tiH</i>	short term

continues

Banking Terms (continued)

German	Pronunciation	English
langfristig	<i>lAnk-fRis-tiH</i>	long term
das Konto überziehen	<i>dAs kon-toh üih-buhR-tsee-huhn</i>	to overdraft
sparen	<i>shpah-Ruhn</i>	save
überweisen	<i>üh-buhR-vay-zuhn</i>	transfer
unterschreiben	<i>oon-tuhR-shRay-buhn</i>	sign (to)
verleihen	<i>feR-lay-huhn</i>	to loan
wechseln	<i>ve-ksuhln</i>	change (transaction)

Transactions You Need to Make

If you plan to settle down in Germany, you'll probably need to use some of the following phrases that relate to exchanging money, making a deposit or a withdrawal, opening a checking or savings account, or applying for a loan.



Culture Shock

Most German banks are open Monday through Friday from approximately 8 or 9 A.M. to 4 or 5 P.M. Open hours of German banks do differ; some of them close for a lunchbreak, while others may remain open longer on Thursdays but close earlier on Fridays. Still others may take a certain weekday afternoon off. Your best bet is to consult the posted open hours. The largest banks are the Commerzbank, the Deutsche Bank, the Dresdner Bank, and the Volksbank.

Wie sind Ihre Öffnungszeiten?
vee sint ee-Ruh öf-nooks-tsay-tuhn
 What are the banking hours?

Ich möchte ...

iH möH-tuh

I would like ...

eine Einzahlung machen
ay-nuh ayn-tsah-loong mA-CHuhn
 to make a deposit

eine Abhebung machen
ay-nuh ap-hey-boong mA-CHuhn
 to make a withdrawal

eine Zahlung machen
ay-nuh tsah-loong mA-CHuhn
 to make a payment

ein Darlehen aufnehmen
ayn dAR-ley-huhn ouf-ney-muhn
 to take out a loan

einen Scheck einlösen
ay-nuhn shek ayn-löh-zuhn
 to cash a check

ein Konto eröffnen

ayn kon-toh eR-öf-nuhn

to open an account

ein Konto schließen

ayn kon-toh shlee-suhn

to close an account

etwas Geld wechseln

etvAs gelt ve-ksuhln

to change some money

Werde ich einen monatlichen Kontoauszug

bekommen?

veR-duh iH ay-nuhn mo-nAt-li-Huhn kon-toh-ous-tsewk buh-ko-muhn

Will I get a monthly statement?

Wie hoch ist der heutige Wechselkurs?

vee hoCH ist deyR hoy-ti-guh ve-ksuhl-kooRs

How high is today's exchange rate?

Haben Sie einen Bankautomaten?

hah-buhn zee ay-nuhn bAnk-ou-toh-mahtuhn

Do you have an automatic teller machine?

Wie benutzt man ihn?

vee buh-noost mAn een

How does one use it?

Ich möchte eine Hypothek aufnehmen.

iH möH-tuh ay-nuh hüh-poh-teyk ouf-ney-muhn

I'd like to take out a mortgage.

Wie hoch sind die monatlichen Zahlungen?

vee hoCH zint dee moh-nAt-li-Huhn tsah-loon-guhn

How much are the monthly payments?

Wie hoch ist die Zinsrate?

vee hoCH ist dee tsins-Rah-tuh

What is the interest rate?

Wie groß ist der Zeitraum für das Darlehen?

vee gRohs ist deyR tsayt-Roum fihR dAs dAR-ley-huhn

What's the time period of the loan?



Achtung

German officials require your documents to be translated into German and stamped. Official stamps are *sehr* important in Germany and must occasionally be supplemented by a seal. Perhaps a throwback to the fifteenth to nineteenth centuries! In the case of translation, only state-approved translators can give valid stamps. Where to find one? Check the Internet, the Yellow Pages, and newspapers and be prepared to pay!



Culture Shock

Be forewarned that the way many Germans drive might require you, as a passenger or a driver, to have nerves of steel. Most stretches of the *Autobahn* do not have a speed limit, and drivers generally tend to ignore the "recommended" speed of 130km/hr—around 80mph. Slower traffic is not only supposed to keep to the right, but does, as those in the left lane overtake at breakneck speed. Should you be in that left lane and see a faint flash of headlights behind you, figure you have two seconds tops to get the heck over to the right, lest you become a hood ornament.

So You Want to Live in Germany?

If you want to live and work in Germany (and you're not a citizen of the European Union) be prepared for *sehr viel* red tape. You'll need to acquire a residence permit at the residents' registration office (*Einwohnermeldeamt*) within two weeks of moving to a new community. This rule applies to everyone, even students living in a community temporarily. (In addition, you must notify the same *Einwohnermeldeamt* when you move out of a community.) You'll also need a work permit, which itself requires a written offer of employment sufficient to convince the bureaucracy that only you—and no European with the right to work in Germany—can do the job. Hey, the United States subjects all foreign workers to this routine—even those educated here and most qualified to teach, say, German, at the college level!

Sound like a lot? Well, you might make it easier by contacting your local German diplomatic representative before you leave home. That way, you'll find out in advance where you stand, which documents and photos to take along, whether you'll have to take a physical at the public health department, and various other bureaucratic sundries. Once you get to Germany, you'll have ample time to try out your German, as you'll be skipping from one permit-issuing office to another, and back again, if you get something wrong.

Just think of it as a board game, and if you're very fortunate, you won't have to return to "Go" too many times. Oh! Did we mention that permits need to be renewed at set intervals? Ah! The fun never ends!

I Need My Wheels!

Alright. So you figured out you're in it for the long haul, and you just can't bear waiting for the trains to run, or desire the freedom and independence an automobile can provide. Well, by now you're accustomed to searching out various governmental agencies and standing in line. Thus, you won't be surprised to learn that registering a car is about the same (and perhaps as bothersome) as registering yourself. Naturally, if you change your address during your car's lifetime, you have to re-register the car, in person, after you have re-registered yourself. Of course, you'll need to clear your car through the motor vehicle inspection department (*TÜV*) before you can register it—

and thereafter once every two years. If your car passes that inspection, you can feel pretty proud to be driving in Germany and rest assured that your car is in pretty good shape.

The Least You Need to Know

- Familiarity with the appropriate banking terms will be your greatest asset when you are in a German bank.
- If you intend to stay in Germany somewhat permanently, you'll need to register yourself and, if you'll be working, obtain a work permit.
- A car, should you have one, adheres to the same rules of registration as you do!



Answer Key

You will find the answers to the exercises in this book arranged here by chapter and heading.

Chapter 2

Now It's Your Turn

1. Wir sind innerhalb von zwei Stunden zu Hause.
2. Er hatte direkte Informationen über das Pferderennen.
3. Wir gehen ins Innere der Höhle.
4. Er versteckt den Schlüssel im Innern der Schachtel.
5. Der Magen des Mannes Schmertz.

Chapter 5

How Much Do You Understand Already?

1. Der Bandit ist blond.
2. Die Bank ist modern.
3. Der Präsident ist elegant.
4. Der Wind ist warm.
5. Das Chaos ist irrational.

What Do You Think?

1. Das Wetter ist gut.
2. Ist das Buch interessant?
3. Der Autor ist populär.
4. Das Parfüm ist attraktiv.
5. Der Wind ist warm.
6. Der Charakter ist primitiv.
7. Das Herz ist wild.
8. Das Salz ist weiß.

This Is Easy

1. The president and the bandit bake tomatoes.
2. The uncle drinks wine.
3. The tiger and the elephant swim in the ocean.
4. The film begins in a supermarket.
5. “Religion or chaos? A modern problem,” said the young, intelligent author.
6. The baby lies in the arms of its mother.
7. My brother has a guitar.
8. The alligator costs \$10,000.

Chapter 6

Putting Your Expressions to Use I (or How to Get There from Here)

1. Ich fahre mit dem Zug von Wisconsin nach Vancouver.
2. Ich fahre mit dem Auto vom Flughafen zum See.
3. Ich fahre mit dem Schiff über den See.
4. Ich reite mit dem Pferd zum Haus meiner Eltern.
5. Ich gehe zu Fuß an die Uni.

Putting Your Expressions to Use II (or What Time Is It?)

1. bis bald/auf Wiedersehen
2. bis später/bis heute Abend
3. pünktlich
4. (zu) spät
5. (zu) früh
6. von Zeit zu Zeit
7. regelmäßig/täglich
8. wöchentlich

Putting Your Expressions to Use III (or Just Getting There in One Piece)

1. Gegenüber der Post ist der Bahnhof.
2. Vor dem Museum ist der Parkplatz.
3. Links neben dem Hotel ist der Bahnhof.
4. Hinter dem café ist der Spielplatz.
5. Gegenüber der Bäckerei ist der Bahnhof.
6. Mein Koffer ist in dem Hotel.

Putting Your Expressions to Use IV (or What's Your Opinion?)

1. Ich habe keine Ahnung. Ich habe den Wetterbericht nicht gelesen.
2. Das ist eine tolle Idee. Ich schwimme gern!
3. Du hast recht. Das ist mir schon oft passiert.
4. Das ist mir egal. Ich glaube, wir finden einen Wetterbericht in jeder Zeitung.
5. Gehen wir ins Kino?

Putting Your Expressions to Use V (or How Are You?)

1. Ich bin müde.
2. Mir ist kalt.
3. Sie weint. Sie ist traurig.

4. Ich bin glücklich, daß das Wetter gut ist.
5. Mein Magen knurrt. Ich bin hungrig.
6. Ich bin verliebt.
7. Ich kann nicht mehr. Ich bin fertig.

Chapter 7

Compound Nouns

1. die Hotelkette
2. das Musikgeschäft
3. das Geschenkpapier
4. der Blutdruck
5. der Briefkasten
6. die Schwerkraft
7. der Treffpunkt

Practice Those Plurals

1. Wo finde ich Zahnärzte? Ich brauche die Namen einiger Zahnärzte.
2. Wo finde ich einige, schöne Cafés in Berlin?
3. Sind Sie die Brüder von Marc?
4. Haben alle deutschen Zeitungen einen Wetterbericht?
5. Wo finde ich die Gärten in Berlin?
6. Wie teuer sind Ihre Zimmer?

What Have You Learned About Gender?

1. Rock band seeks female singer.
2. Hospital seeks male and female assistants.
3. Pharmacy seeks female pharmacist.
4. Company seeks male or female secretary.
5. Restaurant seeks male cook.

Chapter 8

Er, Sie, Es?

1. Sie tanzten.
2. Sie war heiter.
3. Sie weinte.
4. Er war betrunken.
5. Es ist 40 Jahre alt.

Chapter 9

Conjugation 101

1. Ich suche das Museum.
2. Klaus reserviert ein Hotelzimmer.
3. Sie warten auf den Bus.
4. Ihr mietet ein Auto.
5. Wir fragen nach der Adresse.
6. Ich lerne Deutsch.
7. Ich reise nach Hamburg.
8. Er braucht ein Taxi.
9. Du telefonierst mit deiner Mutter.

Conjugation 102

1. Hans ißt gern Bratwurst.
2. Er gibt mir einen guten Tip.
3. Ich sehe einen Biergarten.
4. Sie trifft ihre deutsche Brieffreundin.
5. Du sprichst sehr gut Englisch.
6. Karl liest die Süddeutsche Zeitung.
7. Karin fährt nach Berlin.
8. Der Bus hält vor der Kirche.

Ask Me if You Can

1. Kostet das Ticket 500 DM?
2. Ist das der Terminal für internationale Flüge?
3. Steht die Flugnummer auf dem Ticket?
4. Gibt es Toiletten auf dieser Etage?
5. Dauert der Flug zwei Stunden?
6. Ist das Abendessen inklusiv?

Chapter 10

Use It or Lose It

1. Ich bin Kellner.
2. Er ist Elektriker.
3. Sie ist Ärztin.
4. Ich bin Rechtsanwalt.
5. Du bist Kellnerin.
6. Er ist Polizist.
7. Sie ist Elektrikerin.

Ask Away

A: Sample Questions

Woher kommst du?

Mit wem reist du?

Wohin reist du?

Reist du gern?

B: Sample Questions

Wie heißt sie?

Woher kommt sie?

Wie lange reist sie?

Wohin reist sie?

Gefällt ihr die Bundesrepublik?

Wann muß sie wieder nach Hause zurückfliegen?

Wohin muß sie bald wieder zurückfliegen?

Chapter 11

Mine, All Mine

1. Seine Schwester
2. mein Onkel
3. unsere Familie
4. eure Kinder
5. der Bruder des Mädchens
6. die Mutter des Mannes
7. die Eltern des Kindes
8. der Ehemann meiner Schwester
9. die Eltern seiner Frau
10. die Tante deines Cousins

Using Possessive Adjectives to Show Your Preference

1. Mein Lieblingsfilm ist ...
2. Meine Lieblingsschriftstellerin ist ...
3. Mein Lieblingsbuch ist ...
4. Meine Lieblingsstadt ist ...
5. Mein Lieblingsland ist ...

Breaking the Ice

1. Darf ich mich vorstellen? Mein Name ist ...
2. Ich komme aus ...
3. Ich bin ...
4. Woher kommen Sie?
5. Kennen Sie (meinen Bruder, meine Schwester, meine Mutter, meinen Vater ...)?
6. Das ist ...
7. Mein Name ist ... Es freut mich, Sie kennenzulernen.

Using Idioms with Haben

1. Er hat keine Lust mitzukommen.
2. Sie hat den Mut, Bungy-Jumping zu machen.
3. Er hat die Absicht zu heiraten.
4. Anne und Mark haben die Zeit eine Reise nach Deutschland zu unternehmen.
5. Ihr habt Glück im Spiel.
6. Du hast die Gewohnheit zu viel fernzusehen.

Complete the Descriptions

- A. 1. Was kostet dieser braune Anzug?
2. Ich nehme den nächsten Bus.
3. Jedes rote T-Shirt ist billig.
4. Wir besuchen die kleine Stadt.
5. Sie lesen das beste Buch!

- B. 1. Das ist gutes Bier.
2. Sie hat interessante Ideen.
3. Frischer Käse ist lecker.
4. Haben Sie frische Fische?
5. Liebe Kerstin, ...

- C. 1. Mainz ist eine schöne, alte Stadt.
2. Er ist mein bester Freund.
3. Ich sehe keine freien Plätze.
4. Wo ist ein gutes Restaurant?
5. Wir kaufen ein neues Auto.

Chapter 12

Signs Everywhere

1. D
2. B
3. E
4. C
5. A

Take Command

Verb	Du	Ihr	Sie	English
abbiegen	Biege ab!	Biegt ab!	Biegen Sie ab!	Turn!
weitergehen	Geh(e) weiter!	Geht weiter!	Gehen Sie weiter!	Go on!
laufen	Lauf(e)!	Lauft!	Laufen Sie!	Walk!

Chapter 13

A Means to an End

1. Ich nehme ein Taxi, um zum Geschäft zu kommen.
2. Wir nehmen die Straßenbahn, um in die Innenstadt zu kommen.
3. Er nimmt das Auto, um zur Kirche zu fahren.
4. Sie nimmt das Fahrrad, um aufs Land zu fahren.

Using What and Which

Welchen Zug nehmen Sie?

In welche Stadt fährst du?

Welches Auto mietet er?

Welchen Freund besuchst du?

In welches Museum geht ihr?

Welches Hotel sucht sie?

Chapter 14

What a Hotel! Does It Have ...?

Kunde: Guten Tag. Haben Sie ein Zimmer frei?

Empfangschef: Möchten Sie ein Zimmer mit einem Balkon? Wir haben ein wunderschönes Zimmer mit Aussicht zur Meerseite.

Kunde: Ja, warum nicht? Hat das Zimmer ein Telefon? Ich erwarte einen wichtigen Anruf.

Empfangschef: Selbstverständlich. Möchten Sie Vollpension oder Halbpension?

Kunde: Vollpension, bitte.

Empfangschef: Gut. Die Zimmernummer ist 33. Hier ist Ihr Schlüssel. Gute Nacht.

Calling Housekeeping

1. Ich brauche einen Adapter.
2. Ich hätte gern ein Mineralwasser.
3. Ich brauche Briefpapier.
4. Ich hätte gern einen Aschenbecher und Streichhölzer.
5. Ich brauche ein Kopfkissen.
6. Ich möchte ein Badetuch, bitte.

The Declension of Ordinal Numbers

1. Wir haben nicht viel Geld. Wir fahren zweiter Klasse.
2. "Erster Stop ist Marl; Zweiter Stop ist Haltern; Dritter Stop ist Recklinghausen," sagt der Busfahrer.
3. Mein erster Beruf war Tellerwäscher. Heute bin ich Millionär.
4. Zuerst kommt die Post. Das zweite Gebäude auf der linken Seite ist ein Hotel.
5. Auf der zweiten Etage befindet sich das Restaurant. Auf der dritten Etage ist das Einkaufszentrum.
6. Er hat schon drei Söhne. Sein vierter wird ein Mädchen.
7. Wenn eine Katze schon acht Leben gehabt hatte, ist sie jetzt im neunten Lebensjahr.

More Action with Verbs

1. Weißt du, wo Kerstin wohnt?
2. Ich kenne niemanden mit dem Namen "Kerstin."
3. Ich weiß, daß sie sehr hübsch und intelligent ist!
4. Vielleicht kennt Petra sie.
5. Kennen wir nicht Kerstins Mann, Frank?
6. Ich kenne ihn vom Bus.

Coming Apart

1. Wann sehen wir den Film an?
2. Tina liest das Buch vor.
3. Geben Sie nie auf!
4. Gretchen trinkt ihr Bier immer aus!

Sticking It Out Together: Verbs with Inseparable Prefixes

1. Wo bekommen Sie das?
2. Ich vergesse die Adresse.
3. Boris Becker gewinnt fast immer.
4. Welches Restaurant empfiehlst du?

Chapter 15

Call Me ...

1. Ich kenne die Straße, aber nicht die Hausnummer.
2. Die Postleitzahl kommt vor der Stadt in der Adresse.
3. Ich habe ein Telefon. Meine Telefonnummer ist 03-45-60.
4. Du schickst eine Postkarte/Ansichtskarte an deine Mutter.
5. Sein Name ist sehr lang: Wie buchstabiert man das?

European Countries, According to Germans

1. aus der Schweiz
2. aus Deutschland
3. aus Italien
4. aus österreich
5. aus England
6. aus Frankreich

Deutsche Mark oder Eurodollar?

1. dAs bewCH kos-tuht zee-buhn-oont-feeR-tsiH mARk fünf-oont-fünf-tsiH
2. dee blew-muhn kos-tuhn dray-tseyn mARk tseyn
3. dee an-ziHts-kAR-tuh kos-tuht fünf-tsiH pfe-niH
4. ayn ayn-tsel-tsi-muhr kos-tuht ayn-oont-zeH-tsiH mARK
5. dAs ti-kuht kos-tuht zeks-oont-zeH-tsiH mARK

Let's Go Fly a Kite ...

1. Lass uns erste Klasse fahren! / Fahren wir erste Klasse!
2. Lass uns in den Garten gehen! / Gehen wir in den Garten!
3. Lass uns den Bus nehmen! / Nehmen wir den Bus!
4. Lass uns Frankreich besuchen! / Besuchen wir Frankreich!

Chapter 16

How's the Weather?

1. Erfurt: bewölkt
2. München: heiter bis wolkig
3. Schwerin: sonnig
4. Kiel: regnerisch
5. Düsseldorf: Gewitter

The Four Seasons

1. Es schneit viel im Winter.
2. Die Blätter fallen von den Bäumen im Herbst.
3. Die Blumen blühen im Frühling.
4. Die Sonne scheint oft im Sommer.

Making a Date

1. Valentinstag ist am 14. Februar.
2. Mein Geburtstag ist am ...
3. Der Hochzeitstag meiner Eltern ist am ...
4. Neujahr ist am 1. Januar.

Time Expressions

1. My birthday is a week from today.
2. Yesterday, the weather was good.
3. Mondays I play football.
4. We travel to Germany the day after tomorrow.

Chapter 17

What Do You Want to See?

1. Im Nachtclub sieht man eine Vorstellung.
2. In der Kathedrale sieht man die Glasmalerei.
3. Im Schloß sieht man Wandteppiche.
4. Im Zoo sieht man Tiere.
5. Im Museum sieht man Bilder und Skulpturen.
6. Im Kino sieht man einen Film.
7. In der Disco sieht man Tänzer.
8. In der Bibliothek sieht man Bücher.

Making Suggestions

1. Ich kann später kommen.
2. Was willst du machen?
3. Christina muß viel lernen.
4. Dieser Film soll sehr gut sein.
5. Wolfram darf nicht mitkommen.

More Suggestions

1. Laß uns eine Kirche besichtigen.
Fantastisch! Ich liebe Kirchen.
Nein, das interessiert mich nicht.
2. Laß uns eine Ausstellung sehen.
Ja, das interessiert mich.
Nein, das ist langweilig.
3. Laß uns nach Europa reisen.
Ja, ich liebe Europa.
Nein, ich mag Europa nicht.
4. Laß uns Bilder anschauen.
Nein, das sagt mir nicht zu.
Ja, das interessiert mich.
5. Laß uns in die Oper gehen!
Ja, das interessiert mich.
Nein, das interessiert mich nicht.
6. Laß uns mit der U-bahn fahren.
Ja, ich mag das.
Nein, ich mag das nicht.
7. Laß uns ein Auto mieten!
Wunderschön! Das macht mir Spaß!
Nein, ich kann nicht Auto fahren!

Chapter 18

Wear Yourself Out

1. Unter unseren Schuhen, tragen wir Socken.
2. Wenn ich schlafe, trage ich einen Schalfanzug.
3. Unter deiner Hose, trägst du eine Unterhose.
4. Wenn es regnet, trage ich einen Regenmantel.
5. Im Winter tragt ihr warme Handschuhe.
6. Wenn man in die Oper geht, trägt man einen Anzug mit einem Schlip.
7. Im Sommer tragen viele Leute Shorts und ein T-shirt.

Colors

1. Ich möchte einen hellroten Rock.
2. Ich möchte einen dunkelblauen Anzug.
3. Ich möchte einen hellgelben Hut.
4. Ich möchte eine graue Jacke.
5. Ich möchte eine/ einen gepunktete/gepunkteten Krawatte/Schlip.
6. Ich möchte eine karierte Hose.
7. Ich möchte einen modischen Badeanzug.
8. Ich möchte ein gestreiftes Hemd.

What's the Object?

1. Ich trage sie.
2. Du trägst ihn.
3. Kerstin trägt es.
4. Frank trägt sie.
5. Ich gebe ihnen Schokolade.
6. Bernadette schenkt ihr Blumen.
7. Thomas dankt ihm für den Kaffee.
8. Wir geben ihm eine Olive.

Us, You, and Them: Using Direct Object Pronouns

1. Ja, ich mag ihn./Nein, ich mag ihn nicht.
2. Ja, ich mag sie./Nein, ich mag sie nicht.
3. Ja, ich mag sie./Nein, ich mag sie nicht.
4. Ja, ich mag es./Nein, ich mag es nicht.

To Us, To You, To Them: Using Indirect Object Pronouns

1. Schenk ihnen einen Schal.
2. Schenk ihr ein Kleid.
3. Schenk ihm eine kurze Hose.
4. Schenk ihr eine Strumpfhose.
5. Schenke ihn ihnen.
6. Schenke es ihr.
7. Schenke sie ihm.
8. Schenke sie ihr.

Chapter 19

Where Are You Going?

1. Ich gehe zur Weinhandlung.
2. Ich gehe zum Metzger.
3. Ich gehe zur Bäckerei.
4. Ich gehe zum Fischgeschäft.

Prost!

1. Was möchten Sie trinken?
2. Ich möchte ein Bier trinken.
3. Die beiden Frauen am Nachbartisch trinken Kaffee.
4. Mattias und ich trinken gern milden Wein.
5. Am liebsten trinke ich Limonade.
6. Was trinkst du am liebsten?

A Trip to the Market

1. Ich möchte eine Flasche Wein.
2. Ich möchte ein halbes Pfund Garnelen.
3. Ich möchte eine Dose Tomaten.
4. Ich möchte eine Tüte Kirschen.
5. Ich möchte ein Dutzend Eier.
6. Ich möchte ein Kilo Lachs.
7. Ich möchte drei Pfund Butter.
8. Ich möchte ein halbes Kilo/ein Pfund Wurst.
9. Ich möchte ein Liter Sahne.
10. Ich möchte eine Kiste Bier.

Chapter 20

Gimme What I Need

1. Mir fehlt die Tasse.
2. Ihm fehlt der Löffel.
3. Ihr fehlt das Messer.
4. Uns fehlt die Pfeffermühle.

You Need What?

1. Ich brauche eine Speisekarte.
2. Ich brauche ein Glas.
3. Ich brauche eine Serviette.
4. Ich brauche eine Untertasse.

That's the Way I Like It

1. Sie möchte ihr Steak blutig.
2. Hans möchte seinen Fisch paniert.
3. Wir möchten unsere Kartoffeln püriert.
4. Ich möchte mein Gemüse gedünstet.
5. Ich hätte gern Spiegelei.

Chapter 21

Where to Play Your Game

1. Ich wandere am liebsten im Gebirge.
2. Fußball spielen wir auf dem Fußballplatz.
3. Zum Ski fahren gehe ich auf die Skipiste.
4. Anna schwimmt gern im Schwimmbad.
5. Wir segeln gern auf dem Meer.
6. Schlittschuh laufen kann man im Eisstadion.

Express Your Desire with Mögen

1. Mattias möchte Basketball spielen.
2. Sie möchte bergsteigen.
3. Wir möchten wandern.
4. Franz und Klara möchten reiten.
5. Ihr möchtet in der Sporthalle Federball spielen.
6. Hans und Franz möchten am Fluß angeln.

Do You Accept or Refuse?

1. Möchten Sie Basketball spielen? Ja, das ist eine gute Idee.
2. Möchten Sie wandern? Nein, ich bin müde.
3. Möchten Sie Fußball spielen? Warum nicht?
4. Möchten Sie fischen? Nein, ich habe keine Zeit.
5. Möchten Sie Fußball spielen? Nein, ich bin müde.
6. Möchten Sie radfahren? Natürlich.

Just How Good Are You at Adverbs?

1. Ich tanze
2. Ich spiele ... Klavier.
3. Ich kuche
4. Ich spiele ... Golf.

5. Ich laufe
6. Ich singe
7. Ich spiele Tennis
8. Ich wandere

Chapter 22

I Need These Shoes

1. Ich suche eine Waschsalon.
2. Können Sie dieses Kleid für mich reinigen?
3. Um wieviel Uhr schließen Sie?
4. Können Sie mir meine Schuhe putzen, bitte?
5. Ich habe viel dreckige Wäsche.
6. Wo kann ich diese Schuhe putzen?

Chapter 23

Doctor, Doctor

1. Ich habe eine Erkältung.
2. Ich habe Husten.
3. Ich habe Kopfschmerzen.
4. Ich habe Bauchschmerzen.
5. Ich habe eine Blase.
6. Ich habe Fieber.

Have It on Hand

1. Ich brauche Aspirin.
2. Ich brauche Krücken.
3. Ich brauche Heftpflaster.
4. Ich brauche Taschentücher.
5. Ich brauche Schlaftabletten.

6. Ich brauche Hustenbonbons.
7. Ich brauche Rasiercreme.
8. Ich brauche eine Wärmflasche.
9. Ich brauche eine Nagelfeile.

Reflexive Verbs in Action

1. Ich ziehe mich an.
2. Ich rasiere mich.
3. Ich wasche mich.
4. Ich ziehe mich aus.
5. Ich lege mich hin.

Be Bossy

1. Wasch(e) dich! Wasch(e) dich nicht!
2. Zieh dich um! Zieh dich nicht um!
3. Rasier dich! Rasier dich nicht!
4. Setz dich! Setz dich nicht!

Chapter 24

Using Sein in the Perfekt

1. Ich bin in die Drogerie gegangen.
2. Ich habe Aspirin und Rasiercreme aus dem Regal genommen.
3. Ich habe meine Einkäufe zur Kasse gebracht.
4. Ich habe der Kassiererin geantwortet.
5. Ich habe nicht an meine Einkaufstasche gedacht.

Did You or Didn't You?

1. Du bist nicht ins Museum gegangen.
2. Er hat den Brief nicht geschickt.
3. Sie ist nicht zum Friseur gegangen.

4. Sie hat den Anruf nicht gemacht.
5. Wir haben den Film nicht gesehen.

Ask Questions

1. Seid ihr zum Friseur gegangen? Seid ihr nicht zum Friseur gegangen?
2. Haben sie den Hustensaft getrunken? Haben sie den Hustensaft nicht getrunken?
3. Hast du an die Einkaufstasche gedacht? Hast du nicht an die Einkaufstasche gedacht?
4. Hat Almut geraucht? Hat Almut nicht geraucht?

Chapter 25

Phone Home

1. Ich habe den Hörer abgenommen.
2. Ich habe die Münzen eingeworfen.
3. Dann habe ich die Telefonnummer gewählt.
4. Ich habe eine Nachricht hinterlassen.
5. Danach habe ich den Hörer aufgelegt.

Excuses, Excuses

1. Sie hat sich angezogen.
2. Er hat sich rasiert.
3. Wir haben uns gewaschen.
4. Sie haben sich die Zähne geputzt.
5. Er hat sich angezogen.

Chapter 26

Getting It Right

1. Ich schreibe meinem Freund einen Brief.
2. Wir lesen ein Buch.

3. Sie schreibt ihren Eltern eine Postkarte.
4. Du liest die Wohnungsanzeigen.
5. Ich lese eine Illustrierte.
6. Wolfram liest gern Kinderbücher.
7. Ihr schreibt uns jede Woche.

Would You Please?

1. Würdest du bitte oft schreiben?
2. Würdest du bitte gute Zeitungen lesen?
3. Würdest du bitte dein Medikament nehmen?
4. Ich würde gern nach Polen fahren.
5. Ich würde gern lang schlafen.
6. Ich würde gern nur bergsteigen.
7. Ich würde in die Oper gehen.
8. Ich würde mehr Milch trinken.
9. Ich würde nicht alles kaufen.

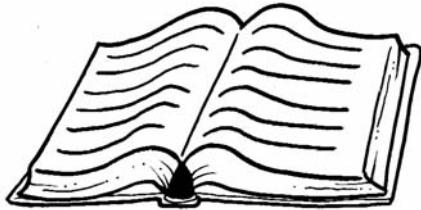
Chapter 27

Today's Plans

1. Sie werden ins Kino gehen.
2. Er wird Einkäufe machen.
3. Wir werden Tennis spielen.
4. Sie wird zum Zahnarzt gehen.
5. Ich werde Norbert anrufen.
6. Wir werden ein Buch lesen.
7. Ihr werdet radfahren.
8. Wolfram und Catharine werden viel Deutsch sprechen.

Abracadabra, You Have Three Wishes

1. Ich hätte am liebsten ein Schloss.
2. Ich hätte am liebsten ein Stück Schwarzwälder Kirschtorte.
3. Ich hätte am liebsten viel Geld.
4. Ich hätte am liebsten ein Haus in den Alpen.
5. Ich hätte am liebsten ein großes Bier.
6. Ich hätte am liebsten viele schöne Blumen.



Glossary: Linguistic Terms and Definitions

adverbs Words used to modify verbs or adjectives.

cardinal numbers Numbers used in counting.

cases The form nouns, pronouns, adjectives, and prepositions take in a sentence depending on their function.

cognates Words in German that are similar to (near cognates) or exactly like (perfect cognates) their English counterparts.

comparative form The “more” form adjectives and adverbs take when compared to something else.

compound verbs Verbs that are formed by adding a prefix to the stem verb. German has two principal types of compound verbs: those with separable prefixes and those with inseparable prefixes.

conjugation The changes of the verb that occur to indicate who or what is performing the action (or undergoing the state of being) of the verb and when the action (or state of being) of the verb is occurring: in the present, the past, or the future.

consonants All the letters in the alphabet other than *a, e, i, o, and u*.

contraction A single word made out of two words. German contractions do not use apostrophes.

declension The pattern of changes occurring in nouns, pronouns, articles, adjectives, and prepositions in each of the four cases.

definite article The masculine (*der*), feminine (*die*), or neuter (*das*) article that precedes German nouns and corresponds to “the” in English. Unlike the English *the*, German articles show the gender and number of a noun.

demonstrative pronouns Pronouns such as *dieser* (this) and *jener* (that) that allow you to point out a specific someone or something.

diphthongs Combinations of vowels that begin with one vowel sound and end with a different vowel sound in the same syllable.

direct object At whom or what the action of the verb is being directed.

future tense To form the future tense, use the present tense of the auxiliary verb *werden* with the infinitive of the verb.

genitive -s This method of showing possession can be used with family members and proper names. To say “Stephanie’s father,” you would say *Stephanies Vater* (*ste-fah-nees fah-tuhR*). To say “father’s daughter,” you would say *Vaters Tochter* (*fah-tuhRs toH-tuhR*).

idiomatic expression Speech form or expression that cannot be understood by literal translation.

imperative form The form a verb takes to indicate a command. In the imperative form, the understood subject is always *you*.

indefinite article Articles used when you are speaking about a noun in general, and not about a specific noun.

indirect object The object for whose benefit or in whose interest the action of the verb is being performed.

infinitive form The unconjugated form of a verb. In German, the infinitive form of verbs end in *-en*, or in some cases, simply *-n*. Verbs are listed in the dictionary in the infinitive form.

intransitive verbs Verbs that do not have an object.

inversion Reversing the word order of the subject noun or pronoun and the conjugated form of the verb to make a statement a question.

modal verbs A verb used with another verb to alter or modify its meaning. The six principal modal verbs in German are *sollen*, *müssen*, *dürfen*, *können*, *wollen*, and *mögen*.

noun marker Any of a variety of articles, such as *der*, *die*, *das*, or *die* (the equivalent of “the” for plural nouns); *ein*, the equivalent of “a” for masculine or neuter nouns; or *eine*, the equivalent of “a” for feminine nouns.

ordinal numbers Numbers that refer to a specific number in a series and answer the question, “Which one?”

positive form The form in which adverbs or adjectives appear normally, before they have taken any endings.

possessive adjectives The adjectives *mein*, *dein*, *sein*, *ihr*, and *unser* show that something belongs to someone.

prefix In German a prefix is a word form that modifies the meaning of the basic word.

prepositions Words that show the relation of a noun to another word in a sentence.

present tense The form a verb takes to indicate that the action is occurring in the present.

reflexive pronoun The pronoun that forms a part of a reflexive verb where the action refers back to the subject.

reflexive verb Verbs that always take reflexive pronouns because the action of the verb reflects back on the subject of the sentence.

separable prefix Verbal complements that are placed at the end of the sentence when the verb is conjugated.

stem The part of a verb you are left with after removing the ending *-en* from the infinitive. The stem of the verb *tanzen* (*tAn-suhn*) for example, is *tanz-*.

stem vowel The vowel in the stem (diphthongs are considered single vowels).

stress The emphasis placed on one or more syllables of a word when you pronounce it.

strong verbs Verbs whose stem vowel undergoes a change or a modification when conjugated in the past tense. Only some strong verbs undergo a vowel modification in the present tense.

subject The noun or pronoun performing the action of the verb.

superlative form The “most” form adjectives and adverbs take when they are compared.

transitive verbs Verbs that have an object.

umlaut The term for the two dots that can be placed over the vowels *a*, *o*, and *u*.

vowel *A*, *e*, *i*, *o*, and *u* are vowels.

word order The position of words in a sentence.

Index

A

a, long and short, modified vowels, 25
umlauts, 25
vowel sounds, 21-22
abbreviations
 addresses, 186
 countries, 188-189
 dictionaries, 12
 international, 186
academics, German, 5-9
accents, 18-19
accessories, housing, 348-349
accusative cases, 128-139, 162, 227-237
 definite articles, 86-87
 direct objects, 84, 227-229
feminine nouns, 88
indefinite articles, 89
masculine nouns, 87-88
neuter nouns, 88
noun phrases, 230-232
personal pronouns, 230-232
plural nouns, 88
prepositions, 153-156, 203-204
pronouns, 90, 230-232, 311-312
subject, 85
verbs, 212-213, 258
action verbs, 322
activities, 273-275
 concerts, 276
movies, 275
opinions, 276-277
television, 275

adjectives, 12, 75, 84, 230-236, 277-278
articles, 70-75
cognates, 41-42
 near, 45-48
 perfect, 42-45
comparative forms, 296-299
comparisons, 296-299
declensions, 86-91
descriptions, 141
endings, 136-139
false friends, 50-51
listings, 139-140
nouns, 135-139
opposites, 139-140
ordinal numbers, 178-180
positive forms, 296-299
possessive, 130-131, 287
pronunciations, 139-140
superlative forms, 296-299
adverbs, 12, 212-213, 277-281
 comparative forms, 296-299
 comparisons, 296-299
 false friends, 50-51
 positions, 280
 positive forms, 296-299
practice exercises, 281-282
qualitative, 277
rules, 278
superlative forms, 296-299
time expressions, 169-172
agentive suffixes, 120
ai, diphthongs, 27

airlines
 advice, 144-147
German, 146-147
information signs, 146-147
pronunciations, 144-147
security, 146-147
signs, 146-147
traveling, 144-147
vocabulary, 144-147
airmail, post offices, 338-339
alphabets, 19
answer keys, practice exercises, 363-385
answering machines, 327-328
answering questions, practice exercises, 108
apartments
 furniture and accessories, 348-349
 renting, 345-348
approximations, 191
architecture, German, 5
articles, 84
 adjectives, 70-75
 declensions, 86-91
 definite, 202-203, 296-298
 declensions, 86-88
 feminine, 69-75
 masculine, 69-75
 near cognates, 45-48
 neuter, 69-75
 perfect cognates, 42-45
 plural, 69-75
 singular, 70-75
indefinite, 70-75, 89
near cognates, 45-48
perfect cognates, 42-45

articulations, 31
arts, 5
asking questions
 food shops, 250-251
 German, 122
 groceries, 250-251
 supermarkets, 250-251
ATMs, money exchange, 189-190
au diphthongs, 27-28
äu diphthongs, 28
auf, 148-150
Austria, weather, 205
Autobahn, 360
automobiles, 160
auxiliary verbs, 213-220, 316-322, 328-331

B

b, consonant sounds, 36-37
banks, 356-358
 money exchange, 189-190
 transactions, 358-359
bathrooms, 177
beer, 246-247
 pronunciations, 246-247
 selections, 246-247
 terminology, 246-247
beverages, 264
bidets, 177
bilingual dictionaries, 12-13
biological gender, cognates
 near, 45-48
 perfect, 42-45
body parts, 301-302
 sicknesses, 306-307
 symptoms, 303-305
books (children), German, 7
booths, money exchange, 189-190
brauchen, 258
breads, 240-246
Bundesrepublik, 4
buses, transportation, 160
businesspersons, German, 5

buying
 furniture, 349
 houses, 347-348

C

c, consonant sounds, 34
calendars, 201-207
 dates, 206-207
 days of the week, 202-203
 months of the year, 203-204
 seasons, 205
calls, long-distance, 186-188
camera shops, problem situations, 294
capitalizing nouns, 20
cardinal numbers, 166-168
cards, addressing, 186
cars
 features, 164-166
 pronunciations, 164-166
 renting, 164-166
 registering, 360
 transportation, 164-166
cases, 84
 accusative, 84-85
 dative, 84-85
 declensions, 86-91
 genitive, 84-86
 nominative, 84-85
categories, wines, 246-247
Celsius, 197-198
 temperature, 199-200
 weather maps, 199
ch, consonant sounds, 32-34
changes, umlauts, 19
checks (traveler's), money exchange, 189-190
cheese, 265
children books, 7
class IV verbs, 316-317
clauses, separable prefixes, 182-183
clerical questions, dialogue and responses, 250-251
clothing, 225-226
cognates, 41-42
 near, 45-48
 perfect, 42-45
 verbs, 48-50
coining, 14
colloquial expressions, 189-190
colloquial time, 169-172
colors, 227-229
commands, 191-192
 imperatives, 151-152
 reflexive verbs, 313
communication
 expressions, 186-188
 German, 3-7
comparative forms, 296-299
comparisons, 296-299
compound adjectives, 227-229
compound nouns, 75, 130-131
compound numbers, 166-168
compound verbs, conjugating, 182-184
compound words, 14
computers, pronunciations, 331-332
concerts, 276
conjugating verbs, 97, 150-151, 133-135, 164, 212-216, 230-232, 246-247, 316-321, 328, 339-343
 action, 97-102
auxiliary verbs (modal), 216-219
compound verbs, 182
 inseparable prefixes, 183-184
 separable prefixes, 182-183
endings, weak verbs, 99-101
haben, 352
imperative forms, 95-96
kennen, 180-182
modal auxiliary verbs, 216-219
mögen, 270-273

strong verbs, 102-105
 weak verbs, 98-101
wissen, 180-182

consonants, 30
ch, chs, h, j, 32-34
 fricatives, 32
kn, ps, pf, ph, qu, 35
 plosives, 30-32
 pronunciation guides, 30-39
r, 35-36
s, ß, sch, st, tsch, 36-37
 symbols, 30-37
v and *w*, 37
z and *c*, 34

contractions, 148-150, 240-246
 months of the year, 203-204
 seasons, 205

conversations
 idiosyncrasies, 115-119
 practicing, 133
 talking, 133-135

correspondence, addresses, 186

costs, traveling, 160

counting
 kilograms, 248-250
 metric system, 248-250
 numbers, 166-168
 pounds, 248-250

countries, 186-189

credit cards, 356

culture, German, 9-11

culture shock, 114-119

currency, Marks, 190-191

D

dairy products, 240-246
 das, 86-89, 148-150, 315-316
 dates, 201-207
 dative cases, 135-139, 160-162, 229-236, 240-246
 definite articles, 86-87
 direct objects, 229
 feminine nouns, 88

indefinite articles, 89
 indirect object, 84
 masculine nouns, 87-88
 neuter nouns, 88
 noun phrases, 234
 plural nouns, 88-89
 personal pronouns, 230-232, 257-258
 prepositions, 153-156, 203-204
 pronouns, 90, 230-232, 257-258, 311-312
 subject, 85
 verbs, 212-213, 257-258

days of the week, 202-203

declensions, 86-91, 136-139, 162, 235-237
 adjectives, 86-91
 articles, 86-91
 definite, 86-88
 indefinite, 89

cases, 86-91
 definite articles, 86-88
 indefinite articles, 89
 nouns, 86-91
 plurals, 86-91
 possessive adjectives, 128-131
 pronouns, 86-91

definite articles, 69-75, 127-131, 136-139, 161-162, 202-203, 235-246, 296-298
 accusative cases, 86-87
 dative cases, 86-87
 declensions, 86-88
 feminine articles, 69-75
 gender, 86-88
 genitive cases, 86-87
 masculine articles, 69-75
 near cognates, 45-48
 neuter articles, 69-71, 75
 nominative cases, 86-87
 perfect cognates, 42-45
 plural articles, 69-71, 75
 singular articles, 70, 75

definitions, 12-13
 dem, 148
 demonstrative adjectives, 235-237

demonstrative pronouns, 237
 den, 148
 dependent infinitives, 216-220
 der, 86-89
 feminine nouns, 88
 masculine nouns, 87-88
 neuter nouns, 88
 plural nouns, 88-89

describing clothing
 materials, 229
 patterns, 227-229
 pronunciations, 227-229

descriptions (adjectives), 141

desserts, 263-264

dialogue
 clerical questions, 250-251
 grocery shopping, 250-251

Dichter und Denker, 3

ictionaries
 abbreviations, 12
 bilingual, 12-13
 German, 12-13
 translations, 12-13
 verbs, 50

die, 86-89, 148-150
 feminine nouns, 88
 masculine nouns, 87-88
 neuter nouns, 88
 plural nouns, 88-89

diets, special, 261-262

dining out, 255-266

diphthongs, 19-21, 26-27
ai, 27
au, 27-28
äu, 28
ei, 27
eu, 28

direct objects, 84, 230-237, 320-321
 accusative case, 84-85, 227-229
 dative case, 229
 pronouns, 234

directions, 61-62, 150

directory assistance, 186-188

disabilities, special needs items, 309

doctors

- body parts, 301-302
- practice exercises, 307
- sicknesses, 306-308
- symptoms, 303-305
- doggie bags, 264-265
- dots (umlauts), 18-19
- drinking, 254, 264
- drugstore items, 308-310
- dry cleaners, problem situations, 289-290
- du, 91-93

E

e, vowel sounds, 22

eating utensils, 255-258

ei, diphthongs, 27

elevators, ordinal numbers, 177-180

endings

adjectives, 136-139

verbs, 97-105, 317-320

English, 41-42

alphabet, 19

cognates

near, 45-48

perfect, 42-45

verbs, 48-50

expressions, 66

false friends, 50-51

language, 14-15

pronunciation guides, 38-39

vocabulary, 14-15

entertainment, 273-275

concerts, 276

movies, 275

opinions, 276-277

televisions, 275

er, 92-93

es, 92-93

eu, diphthongs, 28

Eurodollars, 240-246

European countries, 188-189

examples

information signs, 146-147

practices, 79-82

exchanges, money, 189-190

excuses (subjunctive), 272

exercises, 40

adverbs, 281-282

answer keys, 363-385

answering questions, 108

conjugations

strong verbs, 103-105

weak verbs, 99-101

direction expressions, 61

directions, 62

doctors, 307

drugstore items, 310

expressing feelings and opinions, 63-66

future tense, 351

idiomatic expressions, 60-61

locations, 61-62

mögen conjugations, 273

near cognates, 47-48

ordinal numbers, 180

perfect cognates, 44-45

physical condition

expressions, 65-66

questions, 106-108

reflexive verbs, 312-314

subjunctive mood, 352-353

time expressions, 60-61

transportation, 59

verb cognates, 49-50

expanding vocabulary, 120-122

exports, German, 5

expressions, 66, 156, 197.

See also phrases

approximations, 191

colloquial, 189-190

communication, 186-188

confusion, 156

dates, 206-207

days of the week, 202-203

directions, 61-62

feelings, 64-66

future tense, 350-351

grammatical, 136-139

haben, 134-135

idiomatic, 56-61

illness symptoms, 303-305

locations, 61-62

Marks, 190-191

months of the year, 203-204

opinions, 62-64, 236-237

physical conditions, 64-66

pronunciations, 219-221

seasons, 205

shopping, 236-237

sicknesses, 306-308

sightseeing, 212-213

subjunctive, mögen, 270-273

time, 59-61, 208

transportation, 58-59

verbs, 341-343

F

f. *See* feminine nouns

Fahrenheit, 200

false friends, 50-51

family members, 126-127

Fasching, 204

faux pas, 120-121

faxes, 331-332

fear, German language, 7-8

features, cars, 164-166

Federal Republic of Germany, 5

feelings, expressions, 64-66

fehlen, 257-258

feminine, 69-71, 81

articles, 69-75

definite, 86-87

indefinite, 89

nouns, 12, 71-74, 88

accusative cases, 88

dative cases, 88

genitive cases, 88

nominative cases, 88

festivals (music), Germany, 5
fish, 240-246
food
 measurements, 248-250
 pronunciations, 239-246
 questions, 250-251
 restaurants, 254
 ordering, 255-266
 reservations, 254-255
 shops, 239-251
 supermarkets, 239-251
 terminology, 239-251
forecasts, weather, 197-198
 maps, 199
 newspapers, 200-201
 temperature, 199-200
formal greetings, 114-119
formal introductions, 131-132
formal pronouns, sie, 91-93
formal pronunciations, 117
formal salutations, 114-119
formations
 past participles, 317-320
 perfect tense, 316-317
 verbs, 317-320
 weak tense, 317-320
forming questions, 321-322
forms (verbs)
 imperative, 95-96
 infinitive, 48-50, 216-220
Freud, Sigmund, 6
fricatives, consonants, 32
fruits, 240-246
functions, grammatical, 136-139
furniture, 348-349
future tense, 349-351

G

games, sports, 267-270
gender, 127-131, 141, 161-162, 230-236
 adjectives, 178-180
 biological cognates, 42-47
 declensions
 definite articles, 86-88
 indefinite articles, 89
feminine, 69-71, 81
grammatical cognates, 42-47
masculine, 69-71, 81
nouns, 71-74, 135-139
pronunciations, 81
verbs, 212-213
genitive cases, 127-131, 135-139, 162, 235-236, 388
 adjectives, 127-131
 declensions, 127-131
 definite articles, 86-87
 feminine nouns, 88
 indefinite articles, 89
 masculine nouns, 87-88
 neuter nouns, 88
 plural nouns, 88
 possession, 84-86
 pronouns, 90
 subject, 86
German, 41-42
 academics, 9
 accents, 18-19
 addresses, 186
 airlines, 146-147
 alphabet, 19
 approximations, 191
 architecture, 5
 arts, 5
 banks, 356-359
 bathrooms, 177
 businesspersons, 5
 car registration, 360
 cases, 84
 accusative, 85
 dative, 85
 genitive, 86
 nominative, 84-85
children books, 7
cognates
 near, 45-48
 perfect, 42-45
 verbs, 48-50
commands, imperatives, 151-152
communicating, 3-7
compound words, 14
consonants, 30
 ch, chs, h, j, 32-34
 fricatives, 32
kn, ps, pf, ph, qu, 35
plosives, 30-32
r, 35-36
s, β, sch, st, tsch, 36-37
v and w, 37
z and c, 34
conversation openers, 114-119
countries, 188-189
culture, 9-11
dates, 201-207
days of the week, 202-203
dictionaries, 12-13
doctors
 body parts, 301-302
 practice exercises, 307
 sicknesses, 306-308
 symptoms, 303-305
drugstore items, 308-310
eating, 254-258
English pronunciations, 76-81
entertainment, 273-275
 concerts, 276
 movies, 275
 opinions, 276-277
 televisions, 275
exports, 5
expressions, colloquial, 189-190
expressions, 66
 directions and locations, 61-62
 idiomatic, 56-61
 opinions, 62-64
 physical conditions, 64-66
 time, 59-61, 208
 transportation, 58-59
false friends, 50-51
giving directions, 150
grammar
 adverbs, 277-282
 cases, 84-86
 comparisons (adjectives and adverbs), 296-299
 future tense, 349-351
 objects, 230-234

G

games, sports, 267-270
gender, 127-131, 141,
161-162, 230-236
adjectives, 178-180
biological cognates, 42-47
declensions
 definite articles, 86-88
 indefinite articles, 89

reflexive pronouns, 310-312
reflexive verbs, 310-314
subjunctive mood, 270-273, 351-353
greetings, 114-119
hotels, 173-177
housing, 345-347
 buying versus renting, 347-348
 furniture and accessories, 348-349
imperatives, 151-152
information questions, 120-122
introductions
 family members, 126-127
 pronunciations, 131-132
language, 3-19
laws, Sunday, 203
liberal arts, 5
mail, 335-340
medical words, 11
money
 colloquial expressions, 189-190
 Eurodollars, 190-191
 Marks, 190-191
months of the year, 203-204
motives, 11
movies, 6
newspapers, 6-7
nouns, 69-75
 capitalizing, 20
 plurals, 76
 pronunciations, 76-81
numbers, 166-172
 cardinal, 166-168
 ordinal, 177-180
 practice exercises, 180
personal care, 285-288
phrases, 156
poetry, 6-7, 10-11
prepositions, 153-156
problem situations, 289-293

camera shops, 294
dry cleaners, 289-290
jewelers, 293-294
laundromats, 290-291
lost items, 295
optometrists, 292-293
shoemakers, 291-292
pronunciation guides, 38-39
pronunciations, 19, 76-81
 information questions, 120-122
 practice exercises, 40
question asking, 120-122
radio stations, 6
residency, 359-360
restaurants, 258
 ordering, 255-266
 reservations, 254-255
salutations, 114-119
scientific words, 11
seasons, 205
shopping, 223-229, 296-298
spelling, 19
sports, 267-270
studying, 4-6
subjects, 95-96
superlatives, 220-221
syllables, stress, 18
telephone numbers, 186-188
television, 6
translations, 4-7, 12-13
umlauts, 18-19
verbs, 97-102
 compound, 182-184
 kennen, 180-182
 pronunciations, 150
 strong, 101-105
 weak, 98-101
 wissen, 180-182
vocabulary, 14-15
vowels, 18
 sounds, 20-28
 umlauts, 19
weather, 197-198
 maps, 199
 newspapers, 200-201
 temperature, 199-200

Germany
 industrial countries, 5
 museums, 5
 music festivals, 5
 opera houses, 5
 orchestras, 5
 rolled *r*, 36
 world trade, 5
gibt es, 149
Goethe, 3
grammar. *See also* language
 accusative cases, 84-85
 adjectives
 comparisons, 296-299
 numbers, 178-180
 adverbs, 277-281
 comparisons, 296-299
 positions, 280
 practice exercises, 281-282
 cases, 84-86
 dative cases, 84-85
 declensions, 86-91
 definite articles, 86-88
 indefinite articles, 89
 expressions, 136-139
 functions, 136-139
 future tense, 349-351
 gender cognates, 42-47
 genitive cases, 84-86
 nominative cases, 84-85
 pronouns, formal versus informal, 91-93
 reflexive pronouns, 310-312
 reflexive verbs, 310-314
 subjunctive, 270-273, 351-353
 umlauts, 18-19
 verbs, 97, 212-213
 action, 97-102
 modals, 213-220
 strong, 101-105
 weak, 98-101
greetings, 114-119, 131-132
Grimm, Jacob, 15
Grimm's law, 15
grocery shopping, 239-251
guides, pronunciation, 21-28, 30-39

H

h, consonant sounds, 32-34
 haben, 306, 319-320
 conjugations, 352
 expressions, 134-135
 verbs, 133-135
 hair care, 285-288
 hairdressers, 286-288
 helping out, 289-293
 camera shops, 294
 dry cleaners, 289-290
 jewelers, 293-294
 Laundromats, 290-291
 lost items, 295
 optometrists, 292-293
 shoemakers, 291-292
 helping verbs, 316-317
 hotels, 173-177
 floor numbers, 177-180
 housekeeping, 176-177
 houses
 buying, 347-348
 furniture and accessories, 348-349
 numbers, 186
 renting, 345-348
 hunger, restaurants, 254-266
 ordering, 255-266
 reservations, 254-255
Hypochondier, poem, 10

I

i, vowel sounds, 23
 ich, 95-96
 idiomatic expressions, 56-61, 134-135, 160
 idioms, 56-61
 idiosyncrasies, conversations, 115-119
 -*ig*, suffixes, 32
 illnesses, 303-308
 imperative mood, 95-96, 151-152, 191-192
 commands, 151-152
 separable prefixes, 152

indefinite articles, 70-75, 128-131, 136-139
 accusative cases, 89
 dative cases, 89
 declensions, 89
 gender, 89
 genitive cases, 89
 nominative cases, 89
 indifferences (subjunctive), mögen, 272-273
 indirect objects, 84, 230-234
 dative cases, 84-85
 pronouns, 230-234
 individual nouns, 75
 industrial countries,
 Germany, 5
 infinitive verbs, 48-50, 191-192, 216-220, 318-319, 341-343
 dependents, 216-220
 phrases, 134-135
 pronunciations, 318-320
 inflections, 76, 106
 informal greetings, 115-119
 informal introductions, 131-132
 informal pronouns, 91-93
 informal pronunciations, 117
 informal salutations, 115-119
 information calls, 327-328
 information signs, 146-147
 ingredients, shopping lists, 249-250
 inseparable prefixes, 183-184
 instruments, 276
 international
 abbreviations, 186
 phone calls, 326-329
 trade, 5
 Internet, 331-332
 interrogative pronouns, 120-121, 162-163, 237
 intonations, 321-322
 intransitive verbs, 12, 319-320

introductions, 131-132
 family members, 126-127
 phrases, 131-132
 inversions, 107
 invitations (subjunctives), mögen, 271-272
 irregular verbs, 117, 133, 298-299
 kennen, 180-182
 sein, 117
 wissen, 180-182

J

j, consonant sounds, 32-34
 jewelers, problem situations, 293-294
 Jung, Carl, 6

K

Karneval, 204
 kennen, 180-182
 kilograms, 248-250
kn, consonant sounds, 35
 kommen, 115-119

L

l, consonant sounds, 31
 Langenscheidt, 6
 language. *See also* grammar
 English, 14-15, 41-42
 false friends, 50-51
 near cognates, 45-48
 perfect cognates, 42-45
 verb cognates, 48-50
 expressions, 66
 directions and locations, 61-62
 feelings, 64-66
 idiomatic, 56-61
 opinions, 62-64
 physical conditions, 64-66
 time, 59-61
 transportation, 58-59

German, 3-7, 9-11, 14-15, 41-42
dictionaries, 12-13
false friends, 50-51
fear, 7-8
near cognates, 45-48
perfect cognates, 42-45
pronunciation and spelling, 19
verb cognates, 48-50
imperatives, 191-192
nouns, 20
sources, 207
vowels, 19-28
laundromats, problem situations, 290-291
laws, German, 203
leftovers, 264-265
Lent, 204
lesen, verb, 339-340
letters
 consonants, 30
 ch, chs, h, j, 32-34
 fricatives, 32
 kn, ps, pf, ph, qu, 35
 plosives, 30-32
 r, 35-36
 s, β, sch, st, tsch, 36-37
 v and w, 37
 z and c, 34
nouns, capitalizing, 20
pronunciation guides, 38-39
lexical changes, umlauts, 19
lexical morphology, 117
liberal arts, German, 5
linguistics, 15-19
listings, adjectives, 139-140
local phone calls, 326-329
locations, expressions, 61-62
long vowels
 a
 modified vowels, 25
 umlauts, 25
 vowel sounds, 21-22
 e, vowel sounds, 22
 i, vowel sounds, 23
 o
 modified vowels, 25
 umlauts, 25
 vowel sounds, 23-24

 u
 modified vowels, 26
 umlauts, 26
 vowel sounds, 24
long-distance phone calls, 186-188, 326-330

M

m. *See* masculine nouns, 12
machines, 331-332
mail, 335-340
maps, weather, 199-201
markers (nouns), rules, 71
markets, shopping, 249-250
Marks, 190-191
masculine, 69-71, 81
 articles, 69-75
 definite, 69-75, 86-87
 indefinite, 89
 cases, 87-88
 nouns, 12, 71-74, 87-88
materials, describing clothing, 229
meanings, expressions
 directions and locations, 61-62
 feelings, 64-66
 idiomatic, 56-61
 opinions, 62-64
 physical conditions, 64-66
 time, 59-61
 transportation, 58-59
meats, 240-246, 259
medical words, 11
metric system numbers, 248-250
military time, 169-172
mixed verbs, 97-102, 318-319
modal auxiliary verbs, 213-229
 conjugations, 213-219
 pronunciations, 216-219
modems, 331-332
modified vowels, 18-24
 long a, 25

long o, 25
long u, 26
short a, 25
short o, 25
short u, 26
umlauts, 18-19
mögen, conjugating, 270-273
money
 colloquial expressions, 189-190
 Eurodollars, 190-191
 exchanges, 189-190
 Marks, 190-191
months of the year, 203-204
mood, subjuctive, 270-273, 351-352
motions, verbs, 97-102
motives, German, 11
movies, 6, 275
Munich
 Oktoberfest, 4
 weather, 205
muscles (tongue), training, 18-19
museums, 5
music festivals, 5
musical instruments, 276
mutated vowels, 18-19

N

n. *See* neuter nouns, 12
native languages, 4
near cognates, 45-48
nehmen, verbs, 160-161
neuter
 articles, 69-75
 definite, 86-87
 indefinite, 89
 cases, 88, 128-131, 136-139
 nouns, 12, 71-74, 88, 127-131, 230-234
newspapers
 German, 6-7
 weather, 200-201
nicht, 281
nicht wahr, 106

nominative cases, 128-131, 135-139, 161-162, 230-232, 235-237
 definite articles, 86-87
 feminine nouns, 88
 indefinite articles, 89
 masculine nouns, 87-88
 neuter nouns, 88
 plural nouns, 88-89
 pronouns, 90
 subject, 84-85
 nouns, 76, 84, 91-93, 127-131, 141, 152-156, 160-162, 207, 230-236, 317-321
 adjectives, 135-139
 capitalizing, 20
 cognates, 41-42
 compound, 75, 130-131
 cognates
 near, 45-48
 perfect, 42-45
 declensions, 86-91
 feminine, 12, 71-81, 88
 forming plurals, 76-81
 gender, 71-74, 135-139
 German, 69-81
 markers, 70-71, 75
 masculine, 12, 71-81, 88
 neuter, 12, 76-88, 127-131, 230-234
 nominative cases, 84-85
 plurals, 12, 76-78, 80-82, 88-89, 126-131
 pronunciations, 71-74
 rules, 82
 sex changes, 71-74
 singular, 71-81
 subjects, 95-96
 numbers, 166
 cardinal, 166-168
 counting, 166-168
 German, 166-172
 kilograms, 248-250
 metric system, 248-250
 ordinal, 177-180
 pounds, 248-250
 pronunciations, 166-168
 telephone, 186-188

O

o, long and short
 umlauts, 25
 vowel sounds, 23-25
 objects, direct and indirect, 84-85
 object pronouns, 230-234
 offices, post, 189-190
 official stamps, 359
 official time, 169-172
 Oktoberfest, 4
 opera houses, 5
 operator dialogue, phone calls, 328-330
 operator-assisted calls, 326-329
 opinions
 entertainment, 276-277
 expressions, 62-64
 opposites, adjectives, 139-140
 optometrists, problem situations, 292-293
 orchestras, 5
 ordering, restaurants, 255-266
 ordinal numbers, 177-180

P

paradigms, 86-89, 136-139, 162
 parts of speech, 13
 parts of the body, 301-302
 sicknesses, 306-307
 symptoms, 303-305
 past participles, 320-322, 328, 341-343
 formations, 317-320
 pronunciations, 318-319
 verbs, 319-320
 weak verbs, 317-320
 past tenses, 315-316, 321-322, 328-331, 339-340
 das Perfekt, 315-316
 verbs, 318-321
 conjugating, 102-105
 strong verbs, 101-104
 pastries, 240-246
 patterns, describing clothing, 227-229
 perfect cognates, 42-45
 perfect tenses, 316-320
 permits
 residence, 359-360
 work, 359-360
 permutations, strong verbs, 102-105
 personal dative pronouns, 257-258
pf, consonant sounds, 35
ph, consonant sounds, 35
 pharmacies, special needs items, 309
 phone booths, 326-329
 phone calls
 answering machines, 327-328
 dialogue, 329-330
 information calls, 327-328
 international calls, 326-329
 local, 326-329
 long-distance, 326-330
 operator dialogue, 329-330
 operator questions, 328
 phone booths, 326-329
 phone cards, 326-329
 postal service, 329-330
 problems, 329-330
 pronunciations, 326-329
 vocabulary, 327-330
 phone cards, 326-329
 phone numbers, 186-188
 phrases, 156, 197. *See also* expressions
 banking transactions, 358-359
 dates, 206-207
 days of the week, 202-203
 entertainment, 273-275
 concerts, 276
 movies, 275
 opinions, 276-277
 television, 275
 expressing confusion, 156
 expressing incomprehension, 156

furniture and accessories, 349
future tense, 350-351
German, 156
hair care, 286-288
hotels, 173-177
housing, 347-348
illness symptoms, 303-305
months of the year, 203-204
prepositional, 212-213
problem situations, 289-293
camera shops, 294
dry cleaners, 289-290
jewelers, 293-294
laundromats, 290-291
lost items, 295
optometrists, 292-293
shoemakers, 291-292
restaurants, 258-266
missing utensils, 257-258
ordering, 255-257
reservations, 254-255
seasons, 205
sicknesses, 306-308
sports, 267-270
subjunctive mood, *haben*, 352
weather, 197-198
newspapers, 200-201
temperature, 199-200
physical conditions, expressions, 64-66
pl. *See plural nouns*
plosive consonants, 30-32
plurals, 76-81
articles, 137-131
definite, 86-87
indefinite, 89
cases, 88
declensions, 86-91
future tenses, *werden*, 350-351
imperatives, 151-152
nouns, 12, 69-75, 79-82, 88-89, 126-131
pronunciations, 79-82
reflexive verbs, 310
strong verbs, 102-105
subjunctives, *mögen*, 270-271
verbs
kennen, 180-182
reflexive, 310
strong verbs, 102-105
weak verbs, 98-101
wissen, 180-182
weak verbs, 98-101
poems, *Hypochondre*, 10
poetry
German, 6-7
translations, 10-11
politeness, rules, 90
positions, adverbs, 280
positive forms, 296-299
possessives
adjectives, 127-131, 287
construction, 127-131
declensions, 128-131
genitive cases, 84, 86
post offices, 186-188, 329-330, 335-340
airmail, 338-339
money exchange, 189-190
rates, 337-338
services, 186-188, 329-330
pounds, counting, 248-250
practice exercises, 40, 79-82, 117
adverbs, 281-282
answer keys, 363-385
answering questions, 108
conjugations
strong verbs, 103-105
weak verbs, 99-101
conversing, 133
descriptions, 141
direction expressions, 61
directions, 62
doctors, 307
drugstore items, 310
expressing feelings, 65-66
expressing opinions, 63-64
future tense, 351
idiomatic expressions, 60-61
information signs, 146-147
interrogative pronouns, 237
location expressions, 61
locations, 62
mögen conjugations, 273
near cognates, 47-48
ordinal numbers, 180
perfect cognates, 44-45
physical condition expressions, 65-66
plurals, 79-82
prepositions, 153-156
pronunciations, 79-82
questions, 106-108
reading, 341
reflexive verbs, 312-314
subjunctive mood, 352-353
time expressions, 60-61
transportation expressions, 59
two-way propositions, 153-156
verbs, 160-161, 321
cognates, 49-50
tragen, 226-227
writing, 341
prefixes, 150-152, 227-229, 317-320, 328
compound verbs, 182-184
inseparable, 183-184
separable, 328
most common, 150-151
prep. *See prepositions*
prepositional phrases, 152-156, 212-213, 230-232, 240-246
prepositions, 12, 148-156, 160-163, 202-203
accusative cases, 153-156, 203-204
dative cases, 153-156, 203-204

German, 153-156
 practice exercises, 153-156
 pronouns, 120-121
 pronunciations, 152-156
 two-way, 153-156
 present perfect tenses, 319-320, 330-331
 present tenses, 101-105
 problems, 289-293
 camera shops, 294
 dry cleaners, 289-290
 jewelers, 293-294
 Laundromats, 290-291
 lost items, 295
 optometrists, 292-293
 restaurants, 262
 shoemakers, 291-292
 professions, 117
 pronouns, 84, 91-93, 120-121, 151-156, 162, 191-192, 230-234, 317-321
 accusative cases, 90, 311-312
 dative cases, 90, 257-258, 311-312
 declensions, 86-91
 du, 91-93
 genitive cases, 90
 ich, 95-96
 interrogative, 120-121, 162-163
 nominative cases, 84-85, 90
 objects, 233-234
 prepositions, 120-121
 reflexives, 310-312, 330-331
 sie, 91-96
 subjects, 95-96
 pronunciations, 71-74
 adjectives, 139-140, 296-299
 adverbs, 279-281, 296-299
 airlines, 144-147
 approximations, 191
 banks, 356-359
 beer, 246-247
 body parts, 301-302
 breads, 240-246
 cardinal numbers, 166-168
 cars, 164-166
 clothing, 225-229
 colors, 227-229
 communication, 186-188
 computers, 331-332
 consonants, 30
 ch, chs, h, j, z, s, β, sch, st, tsch, 32-34
 fricatives, 32
 kn, ps, pf, ph, qu, 35
 plosives, 30-32
 r, v, z, 35-36
 s, β, sch, st, tsch, 36-37
 v and w, 37
 z and c, 34
 countries, 188-189
 dairy products, 240-246
 dates, 206-207
 days of the week, 202-203
 drugstore items, 308-309
 entertainment, 273-274
 movies, 275
 musical instruments, 276
 opinions, 276-277
 television, 275
 expressions, 66
 directions and locations, 61-62
 feelings, 64-66
 idiomatic, 56-61
 opinions, 62-64, 236-237
 physical conditions, 64-66
 responses, 219-221
 time, 59-61, 208
 transportation, 58-59
 false friends, 50-51
 family members, 126-127
 faxes, 331-332
 feminine nouns, 88
 fish, 240-246
 food measurements, 248-249
 food shops, 239-246
 foods, 239-246
 formal, 117
 fruits, 240-246
 gender, 81
 greetings, 114-119
 groceries, 239-246
 guides, 26, 38-39
 hair care, 286-288
 hotels, 173-177
 housekeeping, 176-177
 housing, 345-349
 idiomatic expressions, 134-135
 infinitives, 318-320
 informal, 117
 Internet, 331-332
 introductions, 131-132
 invitations, 271-273
 machines, 331-332
 mail, 335-338
 masculine nouns, 87-88
 materials, 229
 meats, 240-246
 mixed verbs, 318-319
 modal auxiliary verbs, 216-219
 modems, 331-332
 money
 colloquial expressions, 189-190
 Marks, 190-191
 months of the year, 203-204
 near cognates, 45-48
 neuter nouns, 88
 nouns, 71-74
 numbers
 cardinal, 166-168
 ordinal, 177-180
 past participles, 318-319
 pastries, 240-246
 perfect cognates, 42-45
 phone calls, 326-329
 plural nouns, 88
 post offices, 335-338
 prepositions, 152-156
 professions, 117
 pronouns
 formal, 91-93
 informal, 91-93
 interrogative, 163

reading materials, 340
salutations, 114-119
seasons, 205
services, 337-338
shopping, 225-226
sicknesses, 306-307
special needs items, 309
sports, 267-270
stress, 18
strong verbs, 316-317
suggestions, 219-221
superlatives, 220-221
symptoms, 305
technologies, 331-332
telephones, 326-329
telling time, 169-172
time expressions, 169-172
transportation, 160, 162
vegetables, 240-246
verb cognates, 48-50
vocabulary
vowels, 20-21
diphthongs, 26-28
long *a*, 21-22
long *e*, 22
long *i*, 23
long *o*, 23-24
long *u*, 24
modified, 24-26
short *a*, 21-22
short *i*, 23
short *o*, 23-24
short stressed *e*, 22
short *u*, 24
umlauts, 24-26
unstressed *e*, 22
weak verbs, 317-320
weather, 197-201
weight measurements,
248-249
wines, 246-247
ps, consonant sounds, 35

Q

qu, consonant sounds, 35
qualitative adverbs, 277
questions
answering, exercises, 108
foods, 250-251

forming, 321-322
practice exercises,
106-108
inflection, 106
inversions, 107
nicht wahr, 106
traveling, 149, 163
word orders, 293

R

r
consonant sounds, 35-36
rolled, 36
radio stations, 6
reading materials
exercises, 341
pronunciations, 340
words, 340
ref. See reflexive verbs
reflexive pronouns, 310-312,
330-331
reflexive verbs, 12, 310-314,
330-331
registering cars, 360
religious holidays, 337-338
rentals
apartments, 345-348
cars, 164-166
furniture, 349
houses, 345-348
reservations, restaurants,
254-255
residence permits, 359-360
responses
clerks' questions, 250-251
grocery shopping,
250-251
suggestions, 218-221
restaurants
ordering, 255-266
reservations, 254-255
rolled *r*, 36
rules
adjective superlatives, 297
adverbs, 278
noun, 82
noun markers, 71
politeness, 90

stress, 18
studieren, 101
vowels, stem changes,
106
weak verbs
conjugation, 98-99
endings, 99-101

S

s, consonant sounds, 36-37
salons, 285-288
salutations, 136-139
formal, 114-119
German, 114-119
informal, 115-119
sch, consonant sounds,
36-37
schwach (weak verbs),
97-102
schwark, mixed verbs, 97,
102
scientific words, 11
seasons, 203, 205
sehen, verbs, 212-213
sehr stark, 101-104
sein, 117, 319-320
seit, 169-172
selections
beers, 246-247
wines, 246-247
sending telegrams, 339
sentences
nouns, capitalizing, 20
practice exercises, 40
weather maps, 199
word order, 191-192, 304
separable prefixes, 150-152,
182-183, 328
imperatives, 152
verbs, 150-152
services, 337-338
postal, 186-188
telephone, 186-188
shoemakers, problem situations,
291-292
shopping, 296
comparisons, 296-298
expressing opinions,
236-237

markets, 249-250
 merchandise, 223-226
 phrases, 235
 pronunciations, 225-226
 questions, 250-251
 responses, 250-251
 situations, 235
 stores, 223-226
shopping lists
 groceries, 249-250
 ingredients, 249-250
 translations, 249-250
short vowels
a
 modified vowels, 25
 umlauts, 25
 vowel sounds, 21-22
e (stressed), vowel sounds, 22
i, vowel sounds, 23
o
 modified vowels, 25
 umlauts, 25
 vowel sounds, 23-24
u
 modified vowels, 26
 umlauts, 26
 vowel sounds, 24
sich, reflexive verb, 310-312
sicknesses, 306-308
sie, 91-96, 313
signs, airlines, 146-147
silverware, 255-258
singular
 future tenses, werden, 350-351
 nouns, 71-74
 reflexive verbs, 310
 subjunctive, mögen, 270-271
 verbs
 kennen, 180-182
 weak, 98-101
 wissen, 180-182
situations, shopping, 235
sounds, vowels, 20-21
 diphthongs, 26-28
 long *a*, 21-22
 long *e*, 22
 long *i*, 23
 long *o*, 23-24
 long *u*, 24
 modified vowels, 24-26
 short *a*, 21-22
 short *i*, 23
 short *o*, 23-24
 short stressed *e*, 22
 short *u*, 24
 umlauts, 19, 24-26
 unstressed *e*, 22
soups, 259
sources, languages, 207
special diets, 261-262
special needs items, 309
speech
 idiomatic expressions, 56-61
 inflection, 106
spelling, 19
spices, 261
sports, 267-270
st, consonant sounds, 36-37
stamps, official, 359
stark, strong verbs, 97-105
state of being verbs, 97-102
stations, radio, 6
stem vowels
 rule changes, 106
 verbs, 97-102
 strong, 101-105
 weak, 98-99
stores, shopping, 223-226
streets, 186
stress, vowels, 18
strong verbs, 97-102, 117, 133, 160-164, 317-320, 339-343
 permutations, 102-105
 pronunciations, 316-317
stark, 97-105
vowels, 316-317
studieren, 101
studying German, 4-6
subjects, 84, 95-96
 accusative cases, 85
 dative cases, 85
 genitive cases, 86
 nominative cases, 84-85
nouns, 95-96
pronouns, 95-96
subjunctive verbs, 270-273, 341-343, 351-352
haben, 352
practice exercises, 352-353
suffixes, 32, 317-320
suggestions
 modal verbs, 216-220
 pronunciations, 219-221
 responses, 218-221
Sunday, German laws, 203
superlatives
 adjective rules, 297
 forms, 296-299
 irregulars, 298-299
 pronunciations, 220-221
supermarkets
 asking questions, 250-251
 food shops, 239-246, 250-251
superscript S, 150-151
Switzerland, weather, 205
syllables, stress, 18
symbols
 consonants, 30
ch, chs, h, j, 32-34
 fricatives, 32
kn, ps, pf, ph, qu, 35
 plosives, 30-32
r, 35-36
s, ß, sch, st, tsch, 36-37
v and *w*, 37
z and *c*, 34
 pronunciation guides, 38-39
 vowels, 18, 20-28
symptoms, 303-305

T

table settings, dining out, 255-258
tables
 false friends, 50-51
 near cognates, 45-48
 perfect cognates, 42-45
 verb cognates, 48-50

talking, conversations, 133-135
taxis, 160
technologies, 331-332
telegrams, 339
telephones
 dialogue, 329-330
 numbers, 186-188
 problems, 329-330
 pronunciations, 326-329
television, 6, 275
telling time, 169-172
temperature, weather, 199-200
tenses
 future, 349-351
 past, 101-105
 present, 101-105
terminology, 186, 201-204.
See also translations, vocabulary
 banks, 356-359
 beer, 246-247
 body parts, 301-302
 cardinal numbers, 166-168
 colors, 227-229
 dates, 206-207
 days of the week, 202-203
 drinking, 254, 264
 drugstore items, 308-309
 eating, 254-266
 entertainment, 273-275
 concerts, 276
 movies, 275
 opinions, 276-277
 television, 275
 family members, 126-127
 foods, 239-251
 hair care, 286-288
 hotels, 173-177
 housing, 345-349
 materials, 229
 months of the year, 203-204
 ordinal numbers, 177-180
 post offices, 335-340
 restaurants, 254-266
 seasons, 205

shopping, 223-226
sicknesses, 306-307
special needs items, 309
sports, 267-270
symptoms, 305
time, 208
weather, 197-198
 maps, 199
 newspapers, 200-201
 temperature, 199-200
wines, 246-247
time
 colloquial, 169
 dates, 206-207
 expressions, 59-61, 169-172, 208
 military, 169-172
 official, 169-172
 seit, 169-172
Tolle Tage, 204
tongues (training), accents, 18-19
trading, international, 5
tragen, verb, 226-227
trains, 160
transactions (banking), 358-359
transitive verbs, 12, 319-320
translation
 colors, 227-229
 materials, 229
translations. *See also* terminology, vocabulary
 compound words, 14
 dictionaries, 12-13
 expressions, 66
 directions and locations, 61-62
 feelings, 64-66
 idiomatic, 56-61
 opinions, 62-64
 physical conditions, 64-66
 time, 59-61
 transportation, 58-59
food measurements, 249-250
German, 4-7
grocery shopping, 249-250
ingredients, 249-250

U

u, long and short
 modified vowels, 26
umlauts, 26
 vowel sounds, 24
um, 170-171
umlauts, 18-19
 äiu, 28
 grammatical changes, 19
 lexical changes, 19
 modified vowels, 19
 vowel sounds, 24
 long *a*, 25
 long *o*, 25
 long *u*, 26
 short *a*, 25
 short *o*, 25
 short *u*, 26

unconjugated verbs. *See*
infinitive forms
unstressed *e*, vowel sounds,
22
utensils, eating, 255-258

V

v, consonant sounds, 37
v.i. (intransitive verbs), 12
v.t. (transitive verbs), 12
vegetables, 240-246
verbs, 75, 84, 97, 117,
135-139, 147-161, 230-232,
240-246, 329-330, 339-340
accusative cases, 85, 258
action, 97-102, 322
auxiliary verbs, 213-220,
316-322, 328-331
brauchen, 258
class IV, 316-317
cognates, 48-50
compound, 182-184
conjugating, 133-135,
147-151, 164, 212-213,
230-232, 246-247,
316-321, 328, 339-343
action, 97-102
weak, 98-101
dative cases, 85, 257-258
dictionaries, 50
endings, 97-102, 317-320
strong verbs, 101-105
weak verbs, 98-101
expressions, 341-343
fahren, 147-148, 150
false friends, 50-51
fehlen, 257-258
formations, 317-320
future tenses, 349-351
gehen, 147-150
genitive cases, 86
haben, 133-135
helping, 316-317
imperative forms, 95-96
infinitive forms, 48-50,
191-192
intransitive, 12, 319-320

irregular, 133
kennen, 180-182
wissen, 180-182
kommen, 115-119
lesen, 339-340
mixed, 97-102, 318-319
modals, 213-220, 227-229
motions, 97, 102
nehmen, 160-161
nominative cases, 84-85
past participles, 319-320
past tenses, 318-321
plurals, weak verbs,
98-101
practice exercises, 117,
160-161, 321
pronunciations
German, 150
lesen, 339-340
reflexive, 12, 310-314,
330-331
schwach, 97-102
schwark, 97-102
sehen, 212-213
sein, 117
separable prefixes,
150-152
singular, weak verbs,
98-101
stark, 97-105
states of being, 97-102
stem vowels, 97-102
strong, 101-105
weak, 98-99
strong, 97-104, 133,
160-164, 317-320,
339-343
conjugating, 102-105
permutations, 102-105
stark, 97-105
subjunctive, 341-343
tragen, 226-227
transitive, 12, 319-320
traveling, 147-150
unconjugated, 341-343
vocabulary, 329-330
weak, 97-102, 317-320
conjugating, 98-99
endings, 99-101
schwach, 97-102
vocabulary, 143-147, 186.
See also terminology, trans-
lations
airlines, 144-147
approximations, 191
banks, 356-35
body parts, 301-302
cardinal numbers,
166-168
clothing, 225-226
communication, 186-188
compound words, 14
countries, 188-189
drinking, 254, 264
drugstore items, 308-309
eating, 254-266
English, 14-15
entertainment, 273-275
concerts, 276
movies, 275
opinions, 276-277
television, 275
family members, 126-127
German, 14-15
hair care, 286-288
hotels, 173-177
housing, 345-349
money
colloquial expressions,
189-190
Marks, 190-191
ordinal numbers, 177-180
phone calls, 329-330
post office, 335-340
restaurants, 254-266
sending telegrams, 339
shopping, 223-226
sicknesses, 306-307
special needs items, 309
sports, 267-270
symptoms, 305
telegrams, 339
verbs, 329-330
wearing clothing,
226-227
voices, inflection, 106
vowels, 18, 133, 160-161,
339-340

diphthongs, 26-27
 ai, 27
 au, 27-28
 äu, 28
 ei, 27
 eu, 28
modal verbs, 213-219
modified, 18, 20-24
 long *a*, 25
 long *o*, 25
 long *u*, 26
 short *a*, 25
 short *o*, 25
 short *u*, 26
 umlauts, 18-19
mutated, 18-19
pronunciation guides, 26, 38-39
sounds, 20-21
 diphthongs, 26-28
 long *a*, 21-22
 long *e*, 22
 long *i*, 23
 long *o*, 23-24
 long *u*, 24
 modified vowels, 24-26
 short *a*, 21-22
 short *i*, 23
 short *o*, 23-24
 short stressed *e*, 22
 short *u*, 24
 unstressed *e*, 22
stem, 97-102, 106
 strong verbs, 101-105
 weak verbs, 98-101
stress, 18
strong verbs, 101-105, 316-317
symbols, 18, 20-28
umlauts, 18-19, 24
 long *a*, 25
 long *o*, 25
 long *u*, 26
 short *a*, 25
 short *o*, 25
 short *u*, 26
weak verbs, 317-320

W-X

w, consonant sounds, 37
walking, 160
water, 254
weak tenses, formations, 317-320
weak verbs, 97-102, 317-320
 conjugation, 98-101
 past participles, 317-320
 pronunciations, 317-318, 320
 schwach, 97-102
 tenses, formations, 317-320
 vowels, 317-320
wearing clothing, 226-227
weather, 197-198
 Austria, 205
 maps, 199
 newspapers, 200-201
 Switzerland, 205
 temperature, 199-200
weeks, 202-203
weh tun, 304
weight measurements, 248-250
werden, 350-351
Wiener Schnitzel, 4
wines, 246-247
 categories, 246-247
 pronunciations, 246-247
 selections, 246-247
 terminology, 246-247
wissen, 180-182
word order, 85
 questions, 293
 sentences, 304
words
 cognates, 41-42
 near, 45-48
 perfect, 42-45
 verbs, 48-50
 compound, 14
 false friends, 50-51
 inversions, 107
 medical, 11
 nouns, capitalizing, 20
 order, 85, 293, 304

reading materials, 340
scientific, 11
work permits, 359-360
world trade, 5
writing
 addresses, 186
 practice exercises, 341

Y

years
 months, 203-204
 seasons, 205

Z

z, consonant sounds, 34
zip codes, 186
zum, 148-150